



**Documaker**

# **Documaker Server System Reference**

version 11.2

**Skywire Software, L.L.C.**  
**3000 Internet Boulevard**  
**Suite 200**  
**Frisco, Texas 75034**  
**www.skywiresoftware.com**

**Phone: (U. S.) 972.377.1110**  
**(EMEA) +44 (0) 1372 366 200**  
**FAX: (U. S.) 972.377.1109**  
**(EMEA) +44 (0) 1372 366 201**  
**Support: (U. S.) 866.4SKYWIRE**  
**(EMEA) +44 (0) 1372 366 222**  
**support@skywiresoftware.com**

## **PUBLICATION COPYRIGHT NOTICE**

Copyright © 2008 Skywire Software, L.L.C. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America.

This publication contains proprietary information which is the property of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries. This publication may also be protected under the copyright and trade secret laws of other countries.

## **TRADEMARKS**

Skywire® is a registered trademark of Skywire Software, L.L.C.

Docucorp®, its products (Docucreate™, Documaker™, Docupresentation™, Docusave®, Documanage™, Poweroffice®, Docutoolbox™, and Transall™), and its logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries.

The Docucorp product modules (Commcommander™, Docuflex®, Documerge®, Docugraph™, Docusolve®, Docuword™, Dynacomp®, DWSD™, DBL™, Freeform®, Grafxc commander™, Imagecreate™, I.R.I.S.™, MARS/NT™, Powermapping™, Printcommander®, Rulecommander™, Shuttle™, VLAM®, Virtual Library Access Method™, Template Technology™, and X/HP™ are trademarks of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries.

Skywire Software (or its subsidiaries) and Mynd Corporation are joint owners of the DAP™ and Document Automation Platform™ product trademarks.

Docuflex is based in part on the work of Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler.

Docuflex is based in part on the work of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphic, Inc.

Copyright © 1988-1997 Sam Leffler.

Copyright © 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Docuflex is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

The Graphic Interchange Format© is the Copyright property of CompuServe Incorporated. GIF<sup>SM</sup> is a Service Mark property of CompuServe Incorporated.

Docuflex is based in part on the work of Graphics Server Technologies, L.P.

Copyright © 1988-2002 Graphics Server Technologies, L.P.

All other trademarks, registered trademarks, and service marks mentioned within this publication or its associated software are property of their respective owners.

## **SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT NOTICE AND COPY LIMITATIONS**

Your license agreement with Skywire Software or its subsidiaries, authorizes the number of copies that can be made, if any, and the computer systems on which the software may be used. Any duplication or use of any Skywire Software (or its subsidiaries) software in whole or in part, other than as authorized in the license agreement, must be authorized in writing by an officer of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries.

## **PUBLICATION COPY LIMITATIONS**

Licensed users of the Skywire Software (or its subsidiaries) software described in this publication are authorized to make additional hard copies of this publication, for internal use only, as long as the total number of copies does not exceed the total number of seats or licenses of the software purchased, and the licensee or customer complies with the terms and conditions of the License Agreement in effect for the software. Otherwise, no part of this publication may be copied, distributed, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any human or computer language, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, manual, or otherwise, without permission in writing by an officer of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries.

## **DISCLAIMER**

The contents of this publication and the computer software it represents are subject to change without notice. Publication of this manual is not a commitment by Skywire Software or its subsidiaries to provide the features described. Neither Skywire Software nor its subsidiaries assume responsibility or liability for errors that may appear herein. Skywire Software and its subsidiaries reserve the right to revise this publication and to make changes in it from time to time without obligation of Skywire Software or its subsidiaries to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes.

The screens and other illustrations in this publication are meant to be representative, not exact duplicates, of those that appear on your monitor or printer.

# Contents

## Chapter 1, Introduction

---

- 2 System Overview
- 3 Rules Publishing Solution Overview
- 4 Document Automation Evolution
  - 4 Stage 1 - paper automation
  - 5 Stage 2 - workflow automation
  - 6 Stage 3 - paperless information automation
- 6 Document Automation Goals
- 8 System Benefits

## Chapter 2, Understanding the System

---

- 10 Processing Overview
- 13 Processing Options
- 14 Using Banner Processing
  - 14 Enabling banner processing
  - 15 Specifying banner forms and scripts
  - 16 Processing logic
  - 17 DAL functions
  - 17 Banner processing example
- 19 Multi-step Processing
  - 19 Creating Transaction Records
    - 20 File Summary
  - 21 Processing Transactions
    - 22 Output Files for GenPrint
    - 22 Output Files for GenWIP
    - 22 Output Files for GenArc
    - 23 File Summary
  - 25 Creating Print Spool Files
    - 26 File Summary
  - 27 Sending Incomplete Transactions to WIP
    - 28 File Summary

29	Archiving Transactions
30	File Summary
30	Rules Used in Multi-Step Processing
31	Restarting the GenData Program
31	RULCheckTransaction rule
32	RestartJob rule
32	INI options
33	Controlling GenTrn Processing
35	Single-step Processing
35	Creating and Processing Transaction Records
36	System Settings and Resources
37	Creating Print Files
38	File Summary
39	MultiFilePrint callback function
40	Mapping Fields with XPath
41	Running Archive in Single-Step Processing
41	Running WIP in Single-step Processing
41	Rules Used in Single-step Processing
42	Archive
42	BatchingByRecipINI
42	BatchByPageCount
42	BuildMasterFormList
42	ConvertWIP
43	InitArchive
43	InitConvertWIP
43	InitPrint
43	InitSetRecipCache
43	NoGenTrnTransactionProc
43	PageBatchStage1InitTerm
43	PaginateAndPropagate
43	PrintFormset
44	ProcessQueue
44	StandardFieldProc
44	StandardImageProc
44	WriteNAFile
44	WriteOutput
44	WriteRCBWithPageCount
45	Single-step Processing Example
45	Base rules
46	Base form set rules

46	Base image rules
46	Base field rules
47	Using IDS to Run Documaker
48	Writing Unique Data into Recipient Batch Records
49	Optional formatting information
50	Example
52	BANNER.DAL
55	Using Class Recipients
57	Running Documaker Using XML Job Tickets
58	Handling 2-up Printing
58	2-up printing with single-page forms
59	2-up printing with multi-page forms
59	Changing the INI File
60	Creating the TWOUP control group
61	Creating the Added_Fonts control group
61	Changing the Recipient Batch DFD File
62	Rules Used for 2-up Printing
62	AddLine
62	AddTextLabel
62	ForceNoImages
62	GetRCBRec
62	InitMerge
62	InitPageBatchedJob
63	MergeAFP
63	ParseCommentExample
63	PrintData
63	ProcessRecord
64	Placing the 2-up Rules in the JDT File
65	2-up Processing Example
65	2upbycnt.bat
65	2upstep1.ini
65	2upstep2.ini
65	2upstep3.ini
66	Running the GenData Program
66	Step 1 - Using the AFGJOB1.JDT file
67	Step 2 - Using the AFGJOB2.JDT file
68	Step 3 - Using the AFGJOB3.JDT file
69	Splitting Recipient Batch Print Streams
69	Splitting batches by sheet count

	70	Creating PDF output
	70	DAL functions
	71	DeviceName
	71	SetDeviceName
	71	BreakBatch
	72	UniqueString
72		Using DAL to Manipulate File Names
	73	FileDrive
	73	FilePath
	73	FileName
	73	FileExt
	74	FullFileName
75		Controlling WIP Field Assignments
78		Multi-mail Processing
	78	Changing the RCPDFDFL.DAT and TRNDFDFL.DAT Files
	79	Setting Up the FSISYS.INI File for Multi-mail Processing
81		Adding and Removing Pages
	81	Using Custom Code
	81	Adding pages
	81	Removing pages
	81	Using DAL Scripts
	81	Adding pages
	82	Removing pages
	83	Using IDS
	83	Adding pages
	83	Removing pages
84		Adding Indexes and Tables of Contents
85		Run-Time Options
	85	GenData Command Line Options
	85	GenPrint Command Line Options
	86	GenTrn Command Line Options
	86	Debugging Options
	87	Noting font IDs of zero
	88	Grouping Print Batches
89		Using INI Built-In Functions
	89	~GetEnv
	90	~Platform
	90	~OS

91	~DALRUN
	~DALVAR
91	~Encrypted
92	~ProcessID
93	~WIPField
93	Accessing WIP Fields
	94 Formatting arguments
	96 Specifying locales
	97 Using the ~Field function
98	Using XML Files
	98 Handling Overflow
	99 Triggering Forms and Images
100	Using XPath
	100 XPath Syntax
	100 Axes
	101 Symbols
	101 Functions
	102 Expressions
103	Using the XPath Testing Utility
	103 Example 1
	104 Example 2
	104 Example 3
	104 Example 4
	104 Example 5
	105 Example 6
	105 Example 7
	105 Example 8
	106 Example 9
	106 Example 10
107	Example XML File
108	

## Chapter 3, Implementing Your System

---

110	Why Use a Methodology?
	111 Phase 1 - Define the requirements
	111 Phase 2 - Create the detail forms requirements
	111 Phase 3 - Build the Master Resource Library
	111 Phase 4 - Install and configure the system

- 111 Phase 5 - Test the system
- 111 Phase 6 - Go live
- 112 Gathering Information
  - 112 Understanding Your Niche
  - 112 Understanding Your Organization
- 113 Roles and Responsibilities

## Chapter 4, Setting Recipients and Copy Counts

---

- 116 Concepts
- 117 Key Files
  - 117 Transaction Trigger Table
    - 117 Trigger Levels
  - 117 Form Set Definition Table
- 118 Trigger Table Record Format
- 120 Specifying the Transaction Trigger Table
- 121 How Transaction Triggering Works
  - 122 Image Level Triggers
- 124 Form Level Triggers
- 127 Master and Subordinate Images
  - 127 Marking Subordinate Images
  - 128 Marking Master Forms
- 129 Examples
  - 130 Specifying Copy Counts and Images
    - 131 FORM.DAT file
    - 131 SETRCPTB.DAT file
    - 131 POL file
  - 132 Using Transaction Codes
    - 132 FORM.DAT file
    - 132 SETRCPTB.DAT file
    - 132 POL file
  - 133 Setting Up Search Mask and Images
    - 133 FORM.DAT file
    - 133 SETRCPTB.DAT file
    - 134 POL File
  - 135 Using the RECIPIF Rule

	135	FORM.DAT file
	135	SETRCPTB.DAT file
	136	POL file
137		Using Automatic Overflow
	137	FORM.DAT file
	137	SETRCPTB.DAT file
	137	POL file
139		Using Forced Overflow
	139	FORM.DAT file
	139	SETRCPTB.DAT file
	139	POL file
140		Setting Search Masks and Recipients
	140	FORM.DAT file
	140	SETRCPTB.DAT file
	140	POL file
141		Using the Set Recipient Table and Extract Files
142		Formatting Search Masks
	142	Spaces
	142	Commas
	142	Tildes
	143	Parentheses
	143	Using the OR condition
	143	Using the NOT condition
	143	Using AND and OR conditions
144		Sorting Forms by Recipient
	145	INI files
	145	Sort tables
146		Summary

## Chapter 5, Working with Fonts

---

150		Understanding Font Concepts
	150	Font Terminology
	151	National language terminology
153		How Characters are Represented
	153	Bitmap Fonts
	153	Scalable Fonts
	154	TrueType
	154	PostScript

154	How Computers and Printers Use Fonts
156	Using Code Pages
157	ASCII Code Pages
159	EBCDIC Code Pages
160	Character Sets
160	Determining Characters Used in a Printer Font
162	Code Page Names
165	Types of Fonts
165	Using Screen Fonts
165	Font Substitution in Windows
166	Installing Screen Fonts in Windows
166	Using Printer Fonts
166	AFP
166	Coded fonts
166	Code pages
166	Character sets
166	Metacode
167	PCL
167	PostScript Fonts
167	TrueType Fonts
167	Adding Printer Fonts to a Font Cross-reference File
168	Using System Fonts
169	Font Cross-reference Files for Monotype Fonts
169	HPINTL.FXR, HPINTLSM.FXR
169	REL95.FXR, REL95SM.FXR
169	REL102.FXR, REL102SM.FXR
169	REL103.FXR, REL103SM.FXR
171	Using Custom Fonts
172	On AFP printers
173	On Xerox Metacode printers
173	On PCL printers
173	On PostScript printers
174	Using Font Cross-Reference Files
175	How FXR Settings Affect Display and Print Quality
176	Maintaining FXR Files
176	Choosing a Font Cross-reference File
178	International Language Support
178	Using the ANSI Code Page for PC Platforms

179	Using Code Page 37 for EBCDIC Platforms
180	Using International Characters
181	Converting Text Files from one Code Page to Another
182	Setting Up PostScript Fonts
185	Fonts for PDF Files
186	Font Naming Conventions
187	Using Font Manager
187	Starting Font Manager
187	From Image Editor
187	From Docucreate
188	Working with the Font List
188	Selecting Fonts
189	Deselecting Fonts
189	Filtering the List of Fonts
190	Adding Fonts to a Font Set
192	Description tab
195	Dimensions tab
197	Printers tab
201	Other tab
201	Copying Font Information
202	Editing Font Information
203	Converting Fonts
205	Converting fonts from other vendors
205	Working with multiple printers
208	Deleting Fonts
208	Inserting Fonts
210	Inserting bitmap fonts and FXR files
211	Inserting PostScript and TrueType Fonts
214	Choosing Screen Fonts
216	Generating Files using Font Manager
216	Generating an FNT File
217	Generating an XRF File
217	Generating PFM Files from an FXR file
220	Mapping Fonts for File Conversions

## Chapter 6, Setting Up Printers

---

222	AFP Printers
222	AFP INI Options
226	Printing highlight colors
227	AFP Printer Resources
227	FormDef
227	Fonts
227	Monotype fonts
227	Overlays
227	Page segments
227	AFP 2-up support
228	AFP Troubleshooting
228	Floating image limitations
228	Objects extending beyond the edges
228	Conflicts between page and form orientation
229	Multi-page FAP limitation
229	Printing rotated variable fields
229	AFP 240 dpi print problems
231	Including Documerge Form-level Comment Records
232	Metacode Printers
232	Required JSL INI Options
233	JDLName
233	JDEName
234	DJDEIden, DJDEOffset, and DJDESkip
234	JDLCode
234	JDLData
234	JDLHost
235	Additional Required INI Options
235	OutMode
235	ImageOpt
235	CompressMode
236	CompileInStream
236	Device
237	RelativeScan
237	Specifying Installable Functions
237	Optional INI Options
237	Setting the end of the report
237	Starting new pages
238	Jogging pages
239	Specifying spot color
239	Chart performance and print quality
239	Optimizing Metacode print streams

240	Using a common font list
241	Setting a default paper size
242	Inline graphic logo performance and print quality
242	Adding color to charts
242	Using named paper trays
242	Specifying the printer model
242	Specifying the resolution
242	Displaying console messages
243	Stapling forms
243	Duplex switching
244	Using VSAM to store resources
244	PrintViewOnly
244	Caching files to improve performance
245	Using the loader
246	Using the Class option
246	Adding user-defined DJDE statements
247	Using third-party software to read Metacode files
248	Metacode Printer Resources
248	Fonts
248	Forms
248	Images
248	Logos
248	Metacode Limitations
248	Xerox images
248	HMI support
248	Changing the paper size on the 4235 printer
248	Xerox forms
249	Metacode Troubleshooting
249	Unexpected color output
249	Unexpected black and white output
250	Highlight color should match the PrinterInk option
250	Logo orientation
250	Output catching up with the input
250	Printing rotated variables
251	Multi-page images
252	Operator command, FEED, causes duplex problems
252	Line density errors
253	Output data length validation
253	Using Xerox Forms (FRMs)
254	BARRWRAP
255	Transferring Files from Xerox Format Floppies

256	PCL Printers
256	PCL INI Options
259	Using PCL 6
260	Printing Under Windows
260	Using High-Capacity Trays 3 and 4 on HP 5SI Printers
262	Using a staple attachment
262	Using Simple Color Mode
262	Marking objects to print in color
263	Specifying the highlight color to use
263	Printing on different types of printers
263	Creating Compressed PCL Files
264	Adding Printer Job Level Comments
264	Adding Data for Imaging Systems
265	PCL Printer Resources
265	Fonts
265	Overlays
266	PostScript Printers
266	PostScript INI Options
269	Printing under Windows
269	Generating PostScript Files on OS/390
269	Adding DSC Comments
270	Stapling Forms
272	PostScript Printer Resources
272	Fonts
272	Overlays
272	PostScript Printer Definition (PPD) Files
273	Using the GDI Print Driver
273	How it works
274	The GDI driver and GenPrint
275	GDI Printer Driver INI Options
277	Avoiding Problems with FAX Drivers
278	Using Pass-through Printing
280	Creating PDF Files
281	Creating RTF Files
281	Generating separate files
282	Adding or removing frames
282	Creating form fields
283	Setting margins
283	Removing the contents of headers and footers

284	Emailing a Print File
284	Creating EPTLIB print files for Documaker Workstation
285	Creating EPTLIB print files for Documaker Server
287	Creating PDF print files
287	Overriding attached files
287	Using email aliases
288	Choosing the Paper Size
289	US Standard Sizes
290	ISO Sizes
290	ISO A sizes
291	ISO B sizes
292	ISO C sizes
293	Japanese Standard Sizes
294	Printer Support for Paper Sizes
298	Paper Sizes for AFP Printers
300	Creating Print Streams for Docusave
300	Archiving AFP Print Streams
301	Archiving Metacode Print Streams
302	Archiving PCL Print Streams
302	Using DAL Functions
304	Adding TLE Records
305	Handling Multiple Paper Trays
305	For PCL printers
305	For PostScript printers
306	For GDI printers
307	For AFP printers
307	For Metacode printers
307	Including Tray Selections in a Print Stream Batch

## Chapter 7, Setting Up Error Messages and Log Files

---

310	Overview
311	Configuring the Message System
311	Enabling and Disabling Messages
312	Logging INI Files and Options Used
312	Clearing Messages
312	Defining the Output Message Files

	313	Initializing the Output Message Files
	314	Turning Off Date Stamps
	314	Controlling the Translation Process
	315	DBLib Trace Messages
316		Creating Messages
	316	Using the RPErrProc and RPLogProc Functions
	316	RP Struct
	316	Message Types
	317	Message Number
	317	Assigning numbers to custom messages
318		Using Message Tokens
319		Setting Up Message Text
	320	Message examples
	320	Undefined tokens
	320	Adding a new line
	321	Determining where the message originated
322		Using the Message Token File

## Chapter 8, Archiving and Retrieving Information

---

326		Terminology
	326	Files and tables
	326	Commit
	326	Rollback
	326	GenArc
	326	AFEMAIN
	326	CARFILE
	326	APPIDX
	326	TEMPIDX
	327	CATALOG
	327	RESTART
	327	DFD
328		System Scenarios
	328	Scenarios for OS/390 (MVS)
	328	Scenarios for Windows 32-bit
	329	Scenarios for UNIX
330		Archive and Retrieval Features
331		Processing Overview

	331	DBASE IV
	331	DB2
	331	SQL server
	331	Oracle
331		Files GenArc Uses
	331	Input files
	331	Output files
331		How the GenArc Program Works
334		Running GenArc
	334	Logging archived transactions
	334	Archiving to a database
	335	Sorting records in a database
	335	Preparing SQL
335		Command Line Options
	335	INI
	335	JOBID
	335	DPASSWD
	335	DUSERID
	336	OPASSWD
	336	OUSERID
	336	RESTART
	336	SQLID
	336	STOPREC
	337	Using the Restart Option
339		Using GenArc with Documanager
	341	Forcing folder updates
	341	FSIUSER.INI sample
	343	APPIDX.DFD sample
	345	CARFILE.DFD sample
	346	Using the Oracle ODBC Driver
	346	CARFILE DFD
	348	Creating the Database and Tables
	351	Resolving Errors
352		Viewing Archives in Documanager
353		Using Multiple Simultaneous ODBC Connections
355		Using WIP and the Archive Index File
356		Formatting Archive Fields
	356	Converting the case of key fields
	356	Reformatting dates
	357	Storing a constant value

- 358 Retrieving Archived Forms
  - 358 Files the Archive Module Uses
    - 358 Input files
    - 358 Output files
  - 358 Using the Archive Module
    - 359 Retrieval Options
- 361 Working with Documanager
  - 361 Using Documanager Data Type Support
  - 362 Setting Up Automatic Category Overrides

## Appendix A, Setting Up Archive/Retrieval Configurations

---

- 364 DB2 Server on OS/390 —Windows Client
  - 364 Configuring the Server
    - 364 Getting the DB2 location name and LUNAME
    - 365 Defining the SNA server's APPC LU in VTAM
    - 365 Defining the DB2 Application Major Node in VTAM
    - 365 Setting Up the Windows 2000 Server (Middle Tier)
    - 365 Installing and configuring Microsoft's SNA Server
    - 367 Installing and Configuring Microsoft's SNA Server
    - 368 Configuring SNA Server 4.0 SP3
    - 370 Setting Up DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server
    - 370 Installing DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server
    - 370 Configure the DB2 instance
    - 370 Defining an OS/390 node
    - 371 Defining a system database entry
    - 371 Updating TCP/IP values on the Windows 2000 server
    - 371 Defining a database connection services entry
    - 371 Installing and Configuring DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server
    - 371 Defining an OS/390 system
    - 371 Defining a DB2 instance
    - 371 Defining an OS/390 database
    - 371 Setting Up Universal Database on Windows 2000
    - 371 Installing Universal Database
    - 372 Configuring Universal Database
    - 372 Updating TCP/IP-related Values on a Windows 2000 Server
  - 373 Common DB2 Errors
  - 373 Setting Up Clients
    - 373 Defining a DB2/2000 node

	374	Defining a system database entry
	374	Updating TCP/IP-related values on a Windows client
	374	Setting Up the INI Options for the DB2 Driver
376		DB2 Server on Windows — Windows Client
	376	Setting up a DB2 Database on the Server
	377	Setting Up a Client for DB2 VERSION 6.1
	377	Archiving to a remote DB2 database using an ODBC driver
	377	Setting up an ODBC data source
	378	Setting up INI options for the ODBC driver
	379	Archiving to a Remote DB2 Database Using the Native DB2 Driver
	379	Setting up a DB2 database
	379	Setting up the INI options for the DB2 driver
381		DB2 Server and Client on Windows
	381	Setting Up a DB2 Database
	381	Setting up an ODBC data source
	381	Setting up INI options for ODBC
	383	Archiving to a Local DB2 Database Using the Native DB2 Driver
	383	Setting up the DB2 database
	383	Setting up the INI options for the DB2 driver
385		SQL Server on Windows — ODBC Client on Windows
	385	Setting Up a Client
	385	Setting up the INI options for ODBC
387		IDS on Windows —DB2 Archive on OS/390
	389	Setting Up the DB2 Archive on OS/390
390		Creating an OS/390 Database
	390	Updating TCP/IP Values on a Windows 2000 Server

## Appendix B, System Files

---

394	Overview
396	Types of Files
	396 BCH files
	396 CAR files
	396 DAT files
	396 DBF files
	396 DDT files

397	DFD files
397	Error files
397	Extract files
398	FAP files
398	Initialization files
398	JDT files
398	Log files
398	LOG files
398	MDX files
398	Transaction files
399	Resource Files
399	FSISYS.INI file
399	FSIUSER.INI file
399	FAPCOMP.INI
399	FORM.DAT file
402	SETRCPTB.DAT file
404	DFD files
405	TRNDFDFL.DFD file
405	RCBDFDFL.DFD file
405	APPIDX.DFD
406	.DDT files
407	.JDT files
407	Extract files
409	DFD File Format
409	Fields Group
410	Field Description Group
412	Files Created by the GenTrn Program
412	Transaction files
412	Error files
412	Log files
413	Files Created by the GenData Program
413	NAFILE.DAT file
413	POLFILE.DAT file
414	NEWTRN.DAT file
414	Batch files
414	MANUAL.BCH file
414	Error batch
414	Updated log, error, and message files
415	Files Created by the GenPrint Program
415	Spool files

- 415 Updated log and error files
- 416 Files Created by the GenWIP Program
  - 416 WIP.DBF file
  - 416 WIP.MDX file
  - 416 ooooooooo1.DAT file
  - 416 ooooooooo1.POL file
  - 416 UNIQUE.DBF file
- 417 Files Used by the GenArc Program
  - 417 APPIDX.DBF file
  - 417 APPIDX.DFD file
  - 417 ARCHIVE.CAR file
  - 417 APPIDX.MDX file
  - 417 APPIDX.DFD file

## Glossary

---

- 419 ooooooooo1.DAT File
- 419 ooooooooo1.POL File
- 420 AFP
- 420 ARCHIVE.CAR File
- 420 ARCHIVE.DBF File
- 420 ARCHIVE.DFD File
- 420 Base Product
- 420 .BCH Files
- 420 Batch Files
- 420 .CAR Files
- 421 Custom Solution
- 421 DAL
- 421 .DAT Files
- 421 .DBF Files
- 421 DDT Files
- 422 DESKJET.FXR File
- 422 .DFD Files
- 422 Distributed Resource Library
- 422 Duplex
- 422 ERRFILE.DAT
- 422 Error Batch

422 Error Files  
423 External Database Editor  
423 Extract Files  
423 .FAP Files  
423 FDB.DBF File  
423 fetype  
424 Field Database Editor  
424 Fixed Data  
424 Font Manager  
424 Form  
424 Form Set  
424 Form Set Manager  
425 FORM.DAT File  
425 FSISYS.INI File  
425 FSIUSER.INI File  
425 .FXR Files  
425 GenArc Program  
426 GenData Program  
426 GenPrint Program  
426 GenTrn Program  
426 GenWIP Program  
426 Help Editor  
427 Image  
427 Image Editor  
427 .INI Files  
427 INTL.FXR  
427 INTLSM.FXR  
427 .JDT Files  
427 Library Manager  
428 Log Files  
428 .LOG Files  
428 Logo Manager  
428 MANUAL.BCH File  
428 Master Resource Library  
428 Metacode  
428 .MDX Files  
428 NAFILE.DAT File

429	NEWTRN.DAT File
429	Objects
429	Overflow
429	Page
429	PCL
429	POLFILE.DAT File
429	PostScript
429	SETRCPTB.DAT File
430	Simplex
430	System Releases
430	System Patches
430	Table Editor
430	Transaction List
430	.TRN Files
430	TRNDFDFL.DFD File
430	UFSTSM.FXR File
430	UNIQUE.DBF File
431	Variable Data
431	WIP.DBF File
431	WIP.MDX
431	xBase

## 433 Index



## CHAPTER 1

# Introduction

Welcome to the Skywire Software's rules-based publishing solution. This Skywire Software product consists of a complete set of tools which provide solutions for all your form and document processing needs. The system includes these major components:

- Docucreate
- Documaker Workstation
- Documaker Server

This manual serves as a reference to Documaker Server. This chapter discusses the following topics:

- [System Overview on page 2](#)
- [Rules Publishing Solution Overview on page 3](#)
- [Document Automation Evolution on page 4](#)
- [System Benefits on page 8](#)

## SYSTEM OVERVIEW

Documaker Server is part of the Skywire Software's Rules Publishing Solution, which also includes Docucreate, Documaker, and reusable resource libraries.

Documaker Server uses resources you create using Docucreate to process information and forms. This processing includes merging external data onto forms, processing data according to rules you set up, creating print-ready files, archiving data and forms, and, if applicable, sending incomplete forms to Documaker for completion by a user.

Forms can be completed using Documaker when user input is required or, if all of your information can be extracted from external data sources, you can set up Documaker Server to process forms without requiring user input.

Documaker Server can create print-ready files for a variety of printer languages including, AFP, PostScript, PCL, and Xerox Metacode printers. In addition, using Docupresentation, the system can produce output in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

The following topic discusses the entire Skywire Software Rules Publishing Solution, its purpose, its underlying concepts and how it all works together to provide you with an enterprise-level solution to meet your document creation, processing, and storage needs.

**RULES  
PUBLISHING  
SOLUTION  
OVERVIEW**

Document automation is the basic concept underlying the system. An understanding of document automation helps you understand the purpose of the Skywire Software's Rules Publishing Solution.

Document automation replaces paper documents with electronic media. Generally, document automation is an integrated process within enterprise information systems.

The greatest challenge that document intensive industries face is the efficient processing of forms and documents. Moving toward the era of electronic information means finding workable solutions for the paper-to-electronic media replacement process. New business directions include developing ways to automate document handling processes, which extend beyond simply creating electronic output or print.

Document automation is rapidly becoming an integral part of today's business environment. The Rules Publishing Solution creates a total business solution which lets you automate both paper document processing and electronic document management.

Let's examine document automation outside the Rules Publishing Solution to build a knowledge base applicable to unique platforms. Then we can apply the basic concepts to the Rules Publishing Solution.

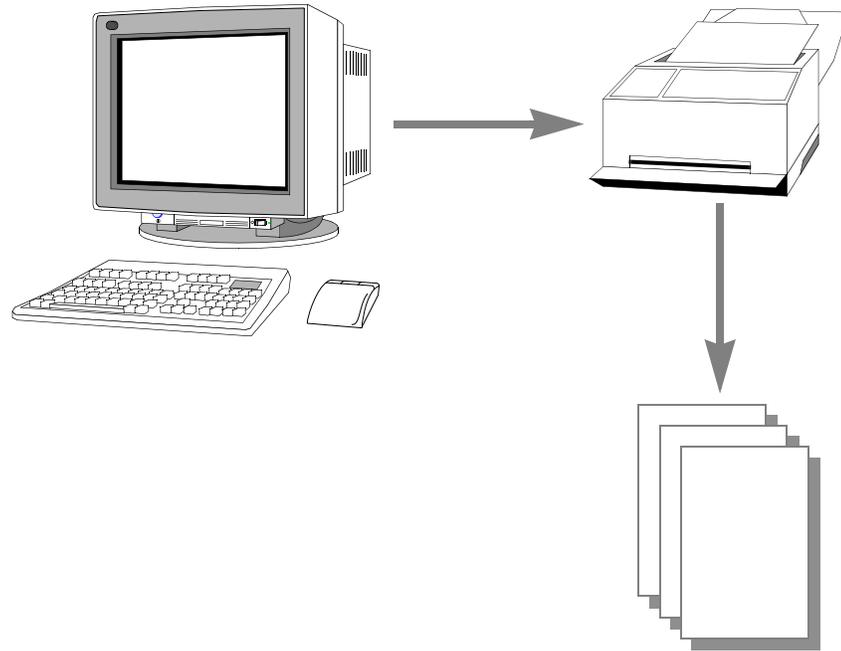
## DOCUMENT AUTOMATION EVOLUTION

Through the years, document automation has moved in concert with technological evolution. The technological evolution has progressed from initial ideas and applications about forms processing, to the integrated management of electronic documents. The distinction between merely automating paper production and permanently integrating electronic processing and management is critical to understanding the technological evolution. This table shows the progression of document automation in the current environment.

Stage	Type of Automation	Components
1	Paper Automation	Business correspondence Forms processing Document assembly
2	Workflow Automation	Electronic mail Electronic data interchange Electronic funds transfer Integrated facsimile
3	Paperless Information Automation	Cooperative processing Enterprise indexing Integrated image processing Multimedia

### Stage 1 - paper automation

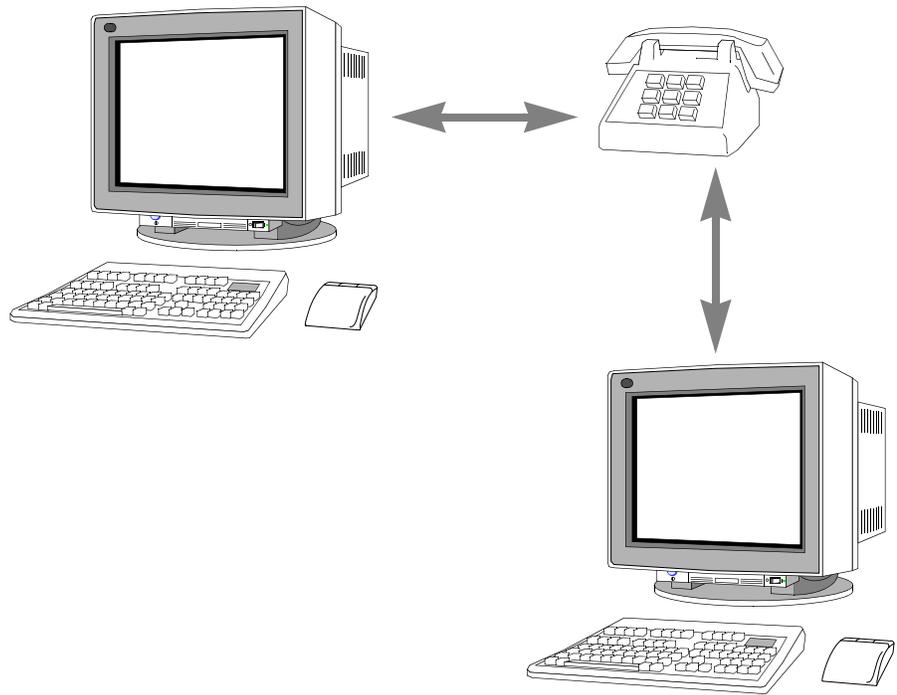
Paper automation, enabled by the advent of computers and laser printers, is the first stage of the document automation evolution. Most people think of the processing and assembly of business correspondence and forms by computers as document automation. While the computer does perform some information processing, this stage of document automation evolution is still very paper intensive. It does not extend to associated automated document workflow and procedures.



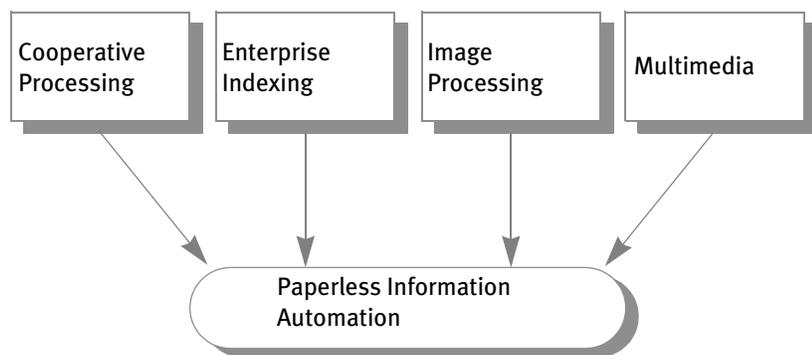
**Stage 2 - workflow automation**

Workflow automation, enabled by the proliferation of personal computers, communication standards, Local Area Networks (LANs), Wide Area Networks (WANs), and integrated FAX machines, is the second stage in the document automation evolution. Workflow automation goes beyond information processing to the transfer of digitized information across telecommunication lines. It eliminates many manual procedures, often clerical in nature, from the workflow process.

Stage 3 - paperless  
information automation



Paperless information automation combines multiple technologies across multiple organizations, enterprises, and government entities. Information elements from various sources are shared and are readily available in flexible electronic formats. Paperless information automation enables you to reuse the information contained in the documents. Electronic documents are much easier to track, maintain, update, route, file, and retrieve.



### DOCUMENT AUTOMATION GOALS

Document automation combines many elements of the evolutionary stages previously discussed to accomplish these primary objectives:

- Eliminate paper

Paper consumes enormous resources. Document automation decreases the costs associated with paper documents, and decreases the requirements for both long term and short term storage, retrieval, and document distribution.

- Automate manual procedures

Automating manual procedures associated with document automation increases efficiency, increases accuracy, and reduces costs. Repetitive and unnecessary procedures are identified and eliminated.

- Automate system interfaces

Interfaces which allow exchange of data between automated systems eliminate the need to manually enter data. Automated system interfaces also eliminate the need to supplement automated processes with manual functions. Automated system interfaces reduce errors, increase efficiency, and simplify the workflow.

As you can see, document automation encompasses many different technologies which merge in a variety of ways. In the current business environment, there are many single technologies and partial solutions which mimic document automation at first glance. Keep in mind, a single solution using one technology is not document automation. Document automation involves multiple technologies which help you manage forms and documents, workflow, procedures, and other electronic media, based on the needs and requirements of each individual organization or enterprise.

## SYSTEM BENEFITS

The system's cohesive design results in many benefits to the user. The system provides a seamless interface to your existing systems by integrating document automation technology with your current systems, and by offering you a customized computer system with reusable resources. You can select modules to meet your specifications.

The system also provides you with the following advantages in your document automation processing:

- **Functional** - The system's configuration meets a wide variety of document processing needs. The system's expandable architecture utilizes technological innovations to meet changing processing needs.
- **Portable** - The system's architecture allows core processing modules to operate on multiple hardware platforms and in multiple operating environments. This design gives the user control of the system configuration in order to meet individual needs.
- **Modular** - The system's configuration lets you select modules to customize your system. The modular design eases maintenance by segregating functions in independent modules. A change in one module does not necessitate multiple changes throughout the system. This modular design also improves performance by eliminating unnecessary processing.
- **Reusable** - The biggest advantage in using the system is the reusability of resources. Libraries are composed of customizable resource units such as images and rules, which can be reused. Reusing resources increases efficiency and promotes consistency throughout your system and product.
- **Easy to use** - System components have a graphical user interface common to all components. The system's seamless system interface provides transparent print and data merge capabilities.

## CHAPTER 2

# Understanding the System

In Chapter 1, you were introduced to the system as a whole. This chapter provides an overview of Documaker Server.

As you review this chapter you will learn about the programs that make up Documaker Server. Following the overview, you will learn about the files used and created by the system programs in both the multi- and single-step processes.

This chapter contains the following topics:

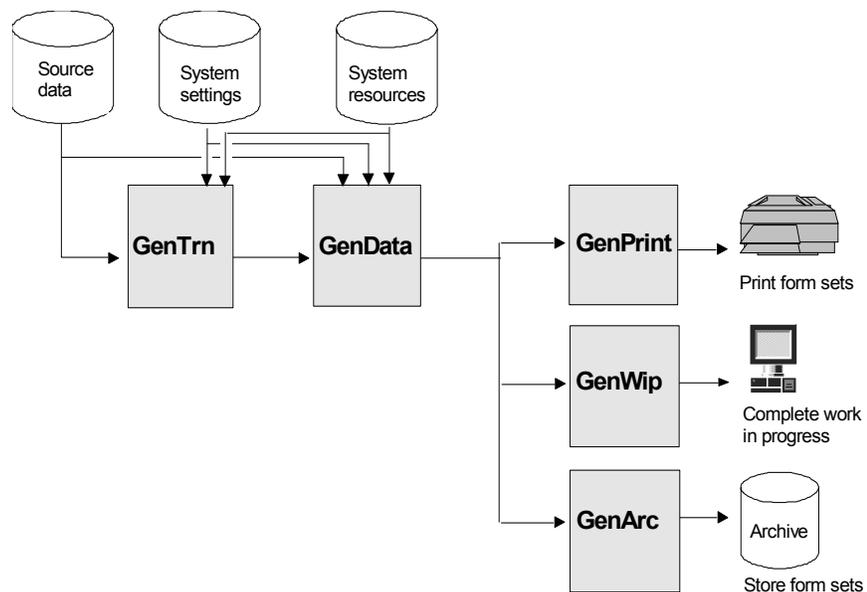
- [Processing Overview on page 10](#)
- [Processing Options on page 13](#)
- [Using Banner Processing on page 14](#)
- [Multi-step Processing on page 19](#)
- [Restarting the GenData Program on page 31](#)
- [Controlling GenTrn Processing on page 33](#)
- [Single-step Processing on page 35](#)
- [Using IDS to Run Documaker on page 47](#)
- [Writing Unique Data into Recipient Batch Records on page 48](#)
- [Running Documaker Using XML Job Tickets on page 57](#)
- [Handling 2-up Printing on page 58](#)
- [Controlling WIP Field Assignments on page 75](#)
- [Multi-mail Processing on page 78](#)
- [Adding and Removing Pages on page 81](#)
- [Adding Indexes and Tables of Contents on page 84](#)
- [Run-Time Options on page 85](#)
- [Using INI Built-In Functions on page 89](#)
- [Using XML Files on page 98](#)
- [Using XPath on page 100](#)

## PROCESSING OVERVIEW

Documaker Server is designed to gather source data, process that data by applying rules you define, merge the data onto pre-designed forms, and print the result. In addition, Documaker Server can automatically check for incomplete data and send that data to Documaker for completion. Documaker Server can also automatically archive completed transactions which you can later view as needed.

The following illustration shows a high level view of Documaker Server:

**NOTE:** This illustration and the other illustrations in this chapter show a typical, workstation-based system flow. Your system may be set up differently. Furthermore, the system can be customized in many ways and can run on a variety of platforms. For instance, if your source data is properly formatted, you can bypass the GenTrn program. Or, you may choose to run the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint programs on a host machine and then download the information and use a system utility (FIXOFFS) to prepare it for use by the GenWIP and GenArc programs running on a workstation. You could also run the GenArc program on the host and only run the GenWIP program on a workstation.



This illustration shows the main programs which make up Documaker Server and an overall view of the processing cycle.

- GenTrn. The GenTrn program reads source data and uses system settings to create transaction records. The source data is stored in extract files. Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as *GENTNW32.EXE* for 32-bit Windows environments.
- GenData. The GenData program takes the transaction records created by the GenTrn program and uses system settings and resources to apply processing rules to those transactions.

The GenData program creates output files the GenPrint program can use. It also creates files with incomplete transactions which the GenWIP program can use. The GenWIP program creates from these files, output you can display and complete using the WIP module of Documaker Workstation.

The output from the GenData program is also used by the GenArc program to archive data. Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as *GENDAW32.EXE* for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

**NOTE:** The illustration on the preceding page and this overview discuss the standard or multi-step processing flow of the system. By using specific rules you can have the GenData program execute both the functions of GenTrn and GenPrint. This is called *single-step processing* and can improve performance. To learn more, see [Single-step Processing on page 35](#).

---

- GenPrint. The GenPrint program takes information produced by the GenData program and creates printer spool files for use with PCL, AFP, Metacode, and PostScript compatible printers. In addition, if you have purchased Skywire Software's Internet Document Server, the GenPrint program can also produce a Portable Document File or PDF (Acrobat) output. Depending on the operating system, this program has various names such as *GENPTW32.EXE* for 32-bit Windows environments.
- GenWIP. The GenWIP program receives information about incomplete transactions from the GenData program and processes that information so you can use the WIP module of Documaker to display the form and fill in the missing information. Once completed, you can print, archive, print and archive, delete, or change the status of form sets using Documaker. Depending on the operating system, this program has various names such as *GENWPW32.EXE* for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

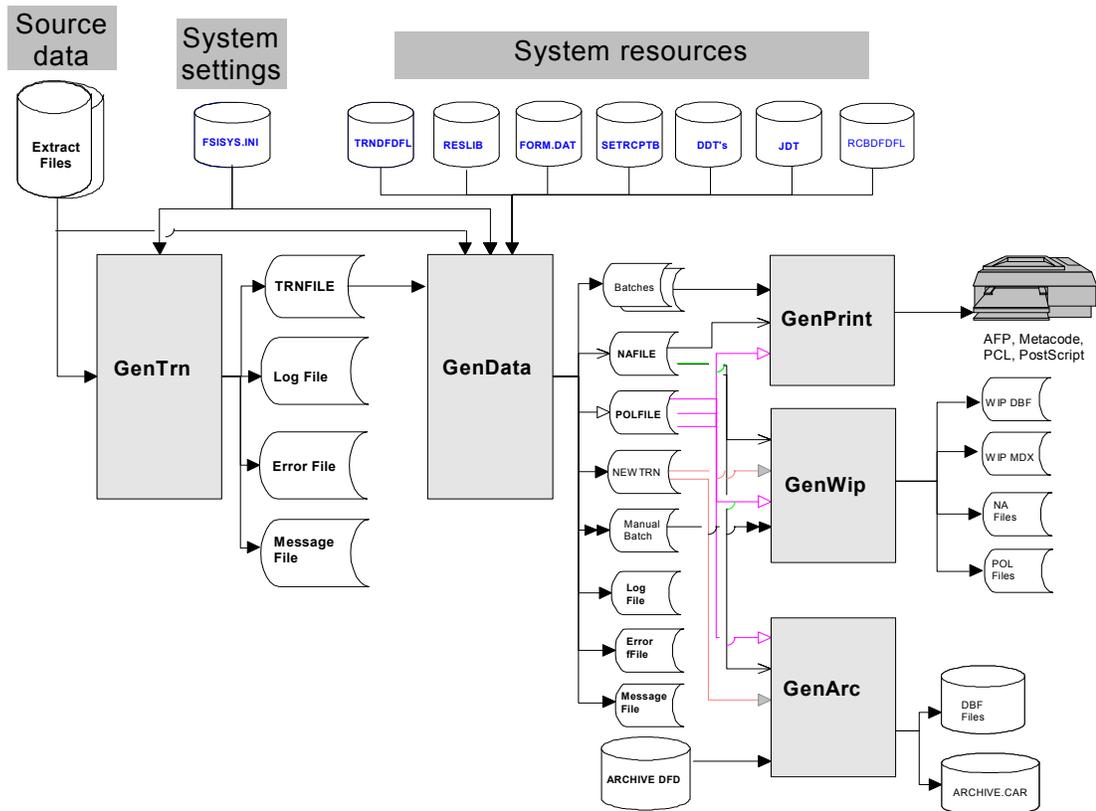
**NOTE:** When using Documaker Server, a transaction may be placed in WIP for completion by a data entry operator. In these cases, you would first complete the transaction before it is archived.

---

- GenArc. The GenArc program archives data so you can store the information efficiently and retrieve it quickly. This program receives information from the GenData program. Depending on the operating system, this program has various names such as *GENACW32.EXE* for 32-bit Windows environments.

The previous illustration showed a high level view of Documaker Server which shows you the main programs in the system and its processing cycle. These programs create and use several types of files as they process information. The following illustration shows this processing flow in greater detail, though not every possible system file is included.

Understanding how the information flows from one program to another and which files are used and created is key to understanding Documaker Server. Here you can see all of the files the system uses and creates during its processing cycle.



You can find information about all these files and programs in the Glossary. You can also find examples of certain files in Appendix B, [System Files on page 393](#). Let's first look at the GenTrn program and the files it uses and creates.

## PROCESSING OPTIONS

You can run Documaker Server as a multi- or single-step process. Variations of these processes provide additional options such as AFP 2-up printing and multi-mail sorting.

Chapter 2 begins with a general overview of the system. From this point forward, we will review specific processing options. The following topic discusses running the system using the multi-step process. This topic is followed by a discussion of running the system using the single-step processes. The remainder of the chapter provides brief explanations of 2-up and multi-mail printing.

**NOTE:** To gain a complete understanding of the different features of the multi- and single-step processes, it is important to read through both sections. Certain information that is common to both processes is only described in the multi-step section.

To help determine which option is best suited for a particular need, a brief description of the run-time options and related processes are provided in the table below:

Process	Description
2-Up Printing	Two-up printing is a two-step process which passes input through GenData three (3) times with a different JDT file each pass. This process is similar to the single-step process in that GenData performs the work, but the three passes through GenData actually represent two steps of the multi-step process: processing the transactions and printing the transactions. Two-up printing is AFP printer-specific. For more information, see <a href="#">Handling 2-up Printing on page 58</a> .
Banner	The system lets you process banners at several points in the processing cycle. Doing this involves using a simplified AFGJOB.JDT file. For more information, see <a href="#">Using Banner Processing on page 14</a> .
Multi-mail	GenData groups transactions with the same multi-mail code into selected print batches to be sorted and delivered to the same location. For more information, see <a href="#">Multi-mail Processing on page 78</a> .
Multi-step	The system programs, GenTrn, GenData and GenPrint, each perform a set of steps to read data, create output files and print. GenWIP and GenArc are optional programs to complete incomplete transactions and archive data for retrieval. For more information, see <a href="#">Multi-step Processing on page 19</a> .
Restarting the system	You can set up the GenData program to restart itself at a particular transaction if it encounters a failure. For more information, see <a href="#">Restarting the GenData Program on page 31</a> .
Single-step	To enhance system performance, the steps of the GenTrn, GenData and GenPrint programs are performed in one step by GenData. The GenWIP and GenArc programs function the same as in the multi-step process. For more information, see <a href="#">Single-step Processing on page 35</a> .

## USING BANNER PROCESSING

The system includes support for banner processing. Banner processing is supported at these points in the processing cycle:

- Beginning of a batch
  - Before a transaction is processed
  - After a transaction is processed
- End of a batch

Banner processing is optional at each point. Banner processing can optionally include FAP forms processing and DAL script processing.

You specify the FAP forms for banner processing in this manner:

```
;key1;key2;form name;
```

The forms must appear in the FORM.DAT file in DefLib. The associated images for those forms and must reside in FormLib.

You can set up banner forms and scripts at a global level so they can be used by all print batches. Individual recipient print batches can specify local forms or scripts to override the global forms and scripts.

Keep in mind these limitations:

- This enhancement only affects the GenPrint program. Documaker Workstation has a separate banner handling method, and does not support this method of banner processing.
- Only the standard printer drivers, such as AFP, Metacode, PCL, and Postscript, support batch banner processing. Avoid batch banner processing if you are using another print driver.
- Banner pages are printed at the group level. As a result, this bypasses the custom callback function named in the CallbackFunc option of the Print control group since it is a form set-level callback.

---

**NOTE:** Version 10.1 added batch-level banner processing to multi-step mode. Version 10.2 added batch-level banner processing to single-step processing — printing via GenData using the PrintFormset rule.

Banner processing is not recommended for use with multifile print, since banner pages are not applicable. It is, however, still supported since you may have reasons to gain control and execute DAL scripts before or after batches or transactions are processed.

---

### Enabling banner processing

For performance reasons banner processing is, by default, disabled. You must enable it using one or both of these INI options:

```
< Printer >  
  EnableTransBanner = True  
  EnableBatchBanner = True
```

Omitting either option disables the associated level of batch banner processing. Once enabled, banner processing is in effect for the entire GenPrint run. You can, however, disable banner processing for individual batches by specifying forms and scripts with blank names.

## Specifying banner forms and scripts

You can globally specify forms and scripts for all batches, or locally for specific batches. Use these INI options to specify global batch forms and scripts:

```
< Printer >
  BatchBannerBeginForm   = form name
  BatchBannerBeginScript = script name
  BatchBannerEndForm     = form name
  BatchBannerEndScript   = script name
  TransBannerBeginForm   = form name
  TransBannerBeginScript = script name
  TransBannerEndForm     = form name
  TransBannerEndScript   = script name
```

Specify form names as follows:

```
;KEY1;KEY2;Form name;
```

You must have an associated form line in the FORM.DAT file to match the specified form. The images (FAP files) for the forms are specified in the form lines in the FORM.DAT file. You must include these FAP files in FormLib.

Store the banner forms in a separate and unique banner form group, defined by a combination of *Key1* and *Key2*. You can use the AddForm DAL function in a DAL script to insert additional forms for banner processing. Place these additional forms and images in the same group as the initial banner form. Each form is printed separately and after all banner forms are printed, the entire banner group is removed from the document set. For these reasons, it is critical that you isolate the banner forms from the rest of the transaction document set by specifying a *Key1/Key2* combination that does not otherwise occur within the document.

The FAP files assigned to the form (on the form line in the FORM.DAT file) must have the recipient *BANNER* with a copy count of at least one. When banner forms are printed, only images assigned to the recipient *BANNER* with a non-zero copy count are printed.

Specify the DAL script names without a path or extension. For best results, store the DAL scripts in your DAL libraries because they are easier to maintain. The system automatically loads DAL libraries if you include these INI options:

```
< DALLibraries >
  LIB = library1
  LIB = library2
```

The DAL script libraries or files must reside in DefLib.

You can specify forms and scripts at the recipient batch level to override the global specification. Here is an example of how you do this:

```
< Print_Batches >
  BATCH1 = BATCH1.BCH
  BATCH2 = BATCH2.BCH
< Batch1 >
  BatchBannerBeginForm   = form name
  BatchBannerBeginScript = script name
  BatchBannerEndForm     = form name
  BatchBannerEndScript   = script name
  TransBannerBeginForm   = form name
  TransBannerBeginScript = script name
  TransBannerEndForm     = form name
  TransBannerEndScript   = script name
```

You can specify some, none, or all of the forms and scripts for local override of the default global forms and scripts.

An individual batch can completely or partially disable banner processing if the forms, script names, or both are blank, as shown here:

```
< Batch1 >
  BatchBannerBeginForm   =
  BatchBannerBeginScript =
  BatchBannerEndForm     =
  BatchBannerEndScript   =
  TransBannerBeginForm   =
  TransBannerBeginScript =
  TransBannerEndForm     =
  TransBannerEndScript   =
```

### Processing logic

Banner processing functions are part of the base system and are primarily located in GenLib. The GenPrint program, however, first routes the processing to CusLib. This lets you use the exit points in CusLib to create additional customized processing before, after, or in place of, the calls to GenLib routines.

The processing sequence for banner processing (at any level) is as follows:

- 1 If a banner form is specified, it is created in the form set and the FAP files are loaded.
- 2 If a banner DAL script is specified, it is executed.
- 3 For any banner form specified in step 1 or created during step 2, the following steps take place:
  - any variable fields in the banner form that are still empty are updated, first from matching GVM variables, such as fields in the recipient batch record, then from matching DAL variables.
  - the form is printed.
- 4 If there were banner forms to process, after updating the fields and printing the forms, the entire banner form group is removed from the form set.

---

**NOTE:** You can suppress the printing of the banner page by using the SuppressBanner DAL function. This is useful when you need to combine several transactions within the same transaction banner pages.

If there are registered *comment record* functions, each banner form in the form group receives its own set of comment records. If the additional forms should not receive their own comment records, add the images for those forms to the original form—do not add them as separate forms.

---

**DAL functions** You can also use these DAL functions with banner processing. See the [DAL Reference](#) for more information.

- **RecipName.** Returns the name, such as INSURED, AGENT, COMPANY, and so on, of the recipient batch record of the transaction currently being printed.
- **RecipBatch.** Returns the name, such as BATCH1, BATCH2, ERROR, MANUAL, and so on, of the recipient batch file being processed.
- **SuppressBanner.** Suppresses the current banner from printing. You can use this function when you want to combine several transactions inside one set of banner pages, based on a flag that the DAL script checks.

### Banner processing example

Assume you have these FAP files in your forms library (FormLib).

- btchbannr
- btctrail
- trnbannr
- trntrail

Here is an excerpt from the FSISYS.INI file:

```
< Printer >
  PrtType = PCL
  EnableTransBanner = TRUE
  EnableBatchBanner = TRUE
  BatchBannerBeginScript = PreBatch
  TransBannerBeginScript = PreTrans
  BatchBannerEndScript = PstBatch
  TransBannerEndScript = PstTrans
  BatchBannerBeginForm = ;BANNER;BATCH;BATCH BANNER;
  BatchBannerEndForm = ;BANNER;BATCH;BATCH TRAILER;
  TransBannerBeginForm = ;BANNER;TRANSACTION;TRANS HEADER;
  TransBannerEndForm = ;BANNER;TRANSACTION;TRANS TRAILER;
< DALLibraries >
  LIB = Banner
```

Here is an excerpt from the FORM.DAT file:

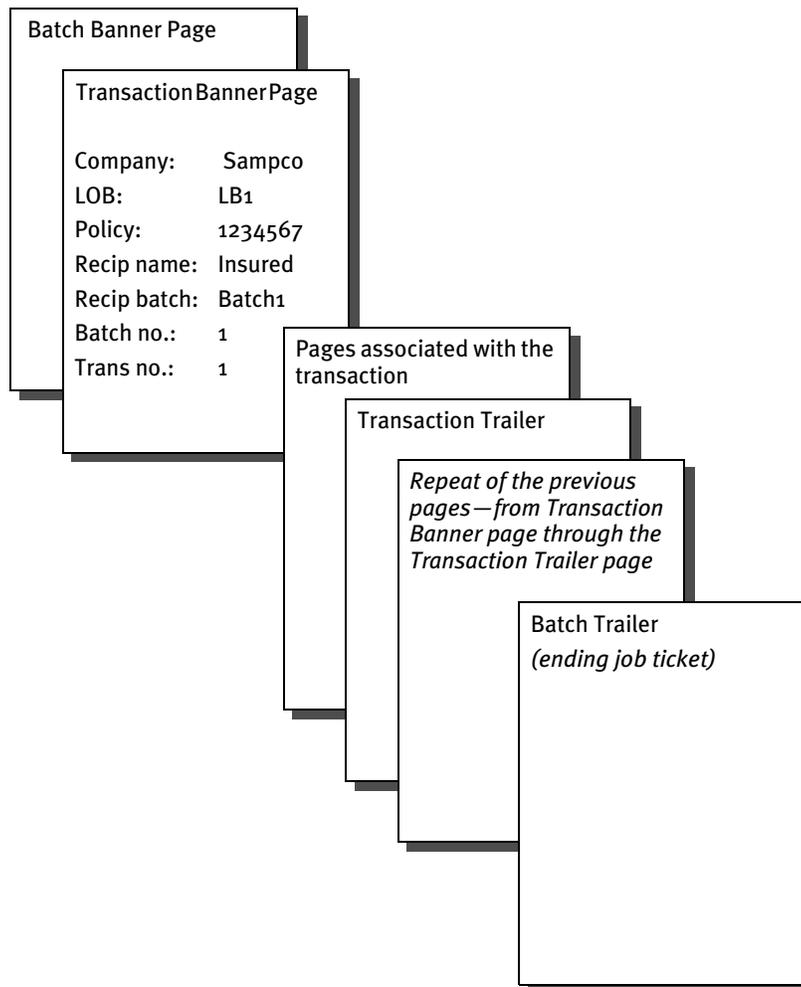
```
;BANNER;BATCH;Batch Banner;Batch Banner (Job\
Ticker);N;;btcbannr|D<BANNER(1)>;
;BANNER;BATCH;Batch Trailer;Batch Trailer (End\
Ticket);N;;btctrail|<BANNER(1)>;
;BANNER;TRANSACTION;Trans Trailer;Transaction Trailer (End\
Ticket);N;;trntrail|D<BANNER(1)>;
;BANNER;TRANSACTION;Trans Header;Transaction Banner\
Page;N;;trnbannr|D<BANNER(1)>;
```

Here is an example of the BANNER.DAL file in DefLib:

```
BeginSub PreBatch
  #batch += 1
  #trans = 0
  rb = RecipBatch()
  rn = RecipName()
EndSub

BeginSub PreTrans
  #trans += 1
  rb = RecipBatch()
  rn = RecipName()
EndSub
```

These additions to the FORM.DAT and FSISYS.INI files plus file additions to the FormLib and DefLib sub-directory would cause the following pages to be added to each batch:



## MULTI-STEP PROCESSING

This topic describes the standard, multi-step approach to processing. In a multi-step processing scenario, the system takes these steps:

- Create the transaction records
- Process the transactions
- Create print spool files
- Send incomplete transactions to work-in-progress (WIP)
- Archive transactions

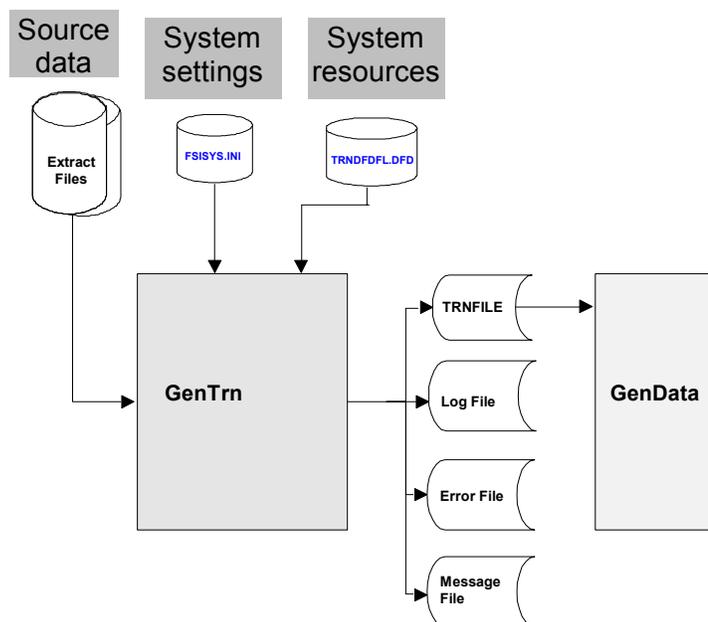
---

**NOTE:** Be sure to carefully read this topic even if you are using single-step processing.

---

## CREATING TRANSACTION RECORDS

This illustration shows the files used and created by the GenTrn program as it creates transaction records:



The GenTrn program takes the source data, which is stored in extract files, and creates a list of the transactions, which is stored in the TRNFILE, or transaction file. This transaction list is then used by the GenData program as it processes the transactions.

The GenTrn program uses settings in the FSISYS.INI and TRNDFDFL.DFD files to determine how to process the transactions. These files provide the GenTrn program with information about the format and structure of the extract file, such as how to determine where each new record starts.

The GenTrn program also produces a log file of its activities, a message file, and an error file which you can use to resolve any errors that occur.

## File Summary

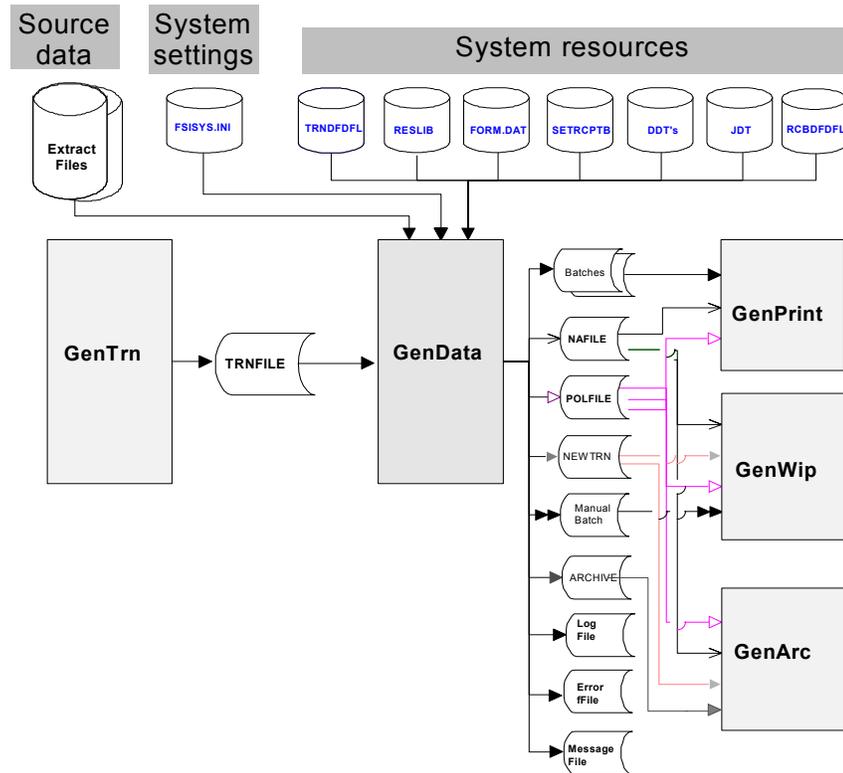
This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenTrn program:

**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input and all of the output files.

	File Name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	Extract files	.DAT	text	Contains the data you want to process.
	FSISYS	.INI	text	Initialization file which includes system settings.
	TRNDFDFL	.DFD	text	Defines the attributes of the variable fields in the TRNFILE.DAT file.
Output	TRNFILE	.DAT	text	Serves as an index to the individual transactions. Used by the GenData program as it processes the source data in the extract file.
	Log file	.DAT	text	Serves as a processing log for the GenTrn program. The system records the information by transaction.
	Error file	.DAT	text	Notes any errors and warnings encountered by the GenTrn program as it created the TRNFILE.DAT file. The system records the information by transaction.
	Message file	.DAT	text	Contains errors and warnings.

## PROCESSING TRANSACTIONS

The following illustration shows the files used and created by the GenData program as it processes transactions:



The GenData program uses the transaction list (TRNFILE) created by the GenTrn program as it processes the source data stored in the extract files. The FSISYS.INI file provides system setting information, such as whether or not it should stop processing if it encounters errors, how to identify key fields in extract files, whether or not it should check the output data size against the defined field length, and so on.

The files listed under *System resources* provide additional information such as:

- How to read the transaction file (TRNDFDFL.DFD)
- The forms, logos, and other resources to use when creating the form sets (RESLIB)
- What forms to use (FORM.DAT)
- Who to send the forms to (SETRCPTB.DAT)
- What processing rules to apply to the data (DDTs)
- What processing rules to apply to this job (JDTs)
- How the batch files are defined (RCBDFDFL.DFD)

---

**NOTE:** You can learn more about these files in Appendix B, [System Files on page 393](#).

---

### Output Files for GenPrint

The output files created by the GenData program include three types of files used by the GenPrint program: Batch files, NAFILEs, and POLFILEs. Batch files list the transactions which should be included in each batch print job. NAFILEs store image and variable field information. POLFILEs define the form set the GenPrint program should use for each transaction it processes.

### Output Files for GenWIP

The GenWIP program also uses the NAFILE and POLFILE to store image and variable field information and to define the form sets. In addition, the GenData program creates manual batch files specifically for the GenWIP program.

The GenData program creates manual batch files if it is unable to complete the processing of a form set. Typically, this occurs if the form set is missing information. The GenWIP program uses this file to create separate transactions which can then be completed manually using the Entry module of Documaker Workstation. The data for the separate transactions are stored in files with the extension *DAT*, such as 0000001.DAT, 0000002.DAT, and so on.

### Output Files for GenArc

The GenArc program also uses the NAFILE and POLFILE to store image and variable field information and to define the form sets. In addition, the GenArc program uses the NEWTRN files to tell it where to find data in the NAFILEs and which forms to use in the POLFILEs.

## File Summary

This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenData program:

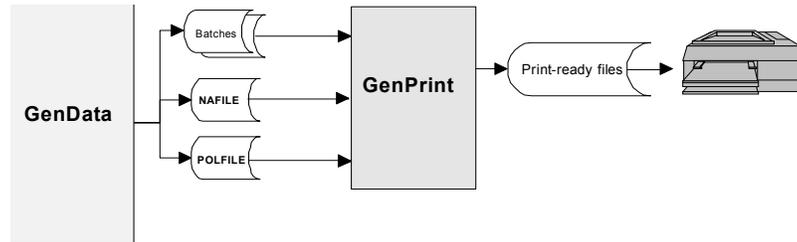
**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input and all of the output files.

	File name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	Extract files		text	Contains the data you want to process.
	FSISYS	INI	text	Initialization file which includes system settings.
	TRNFILE	DAT	text	Used as an index to the individual transactions stored in the extract file.
	TRNDFDFL	DFD	text	Tells GenData how to read the TRNFILE.
	FORM	DAT	text	Defines the forms in a form set.
	SETRCPTB	DAT	text	Defines the recipients of a form set.
	DDT files	DDT	text	Contains the rules GenData applies to the data.
	JDT files	JDT	text	Contains the rules GenData follows when processing the job.
	RCBDFDFL	DFD	text	Defines the attributes of the variable fields in a batch file.
	Resources	(various)	(various)	Includes logos (.LOG), font cross reference files (.FXR), images (.FAP), and so on.
Output	Batch files	BCH	text	Indicates which transactions should be included in a given batch job. Used by the GenPrint program.
	NAFILE	DAT	text	Contains image and variable field information. Used by the GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc programs.
	POLFILE	DAT	text	Defines the forms to use for each batch. Used by the GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc programs.
	NEWTRN	DAT	text	Tells the GenArc program where to find data in the NAFILE and which forms to use in the POLFILE.

File name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Manual batch files	BCH	text	Created if the form is incomplete. Used by GenWIP to allow an operator to complete the form in the Entry module of Documaker.
Error batch files	.BCH	text	Created if the system spots an error, such as if the system spots an error and the form is marked as host required. In contrast to manual batch files, you cannot correct these errors using the GenWIP program. Instead, you must correct the error in the extract file, change the flag to operator required, or change the FAP file and then process the transaction again.
ARCHIVE	DFD	text	Tells the GenArc program how to store archived data.
Log file	DAT	text	Serves as a processing log. Created by the GenTrn program, the GenData program adds information to this file.
Error file	DAT	text	Notes any errors encountered by the GenData program. Created by the GenTrn program, the GenData program adds information to this file (as do the GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc programs).
Message file	.DAT	text	Contains errors and warnings.

## CREATING PRINT SPOOL FILES

The following illustration shows the files used and created by the GenPrint program as it creates print-ready files:



The GenPrint program receives batch files from the GenData program which tell it what transactions to print, NAFILEs which tell it what data to print, and POLFILEs which tell it which forms to print.

With this information, the GenPrint program creates print-ready files for AFP, Xerox Metacode, PCL, or PostScript compatible printers. The GenPrint program serves as the print engine for the system.

---

**NOTE:** In addition, the GenPrint program can also create PDF (Acrobat) if you have purchased Skywire Software's PDF Print Driver. For more information about this product, contact your sales representative.

---

## File Summary

This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenPrint program:

---

**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input and all of the output files.

---

	File name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	Batch files	BCH	text	Indicates which transactions should be printed in a given batch. Used as trigger files by the GenPrint program.
	NAFILE	DAT	text	Contains image and variable field information.
	POLFILE	DAT	text	Defines the forms to use for each batch.
	RCBDFDFL	DFD	text	Defines the attributes of the variable fields in a batch file.
Output	Print-ready files	AFP, PCL, XER, PST, PDF*	AFP, PCL, MetaCode, PostScript, or PDF*	Printer spool files which can be printed on the printer of your choice.

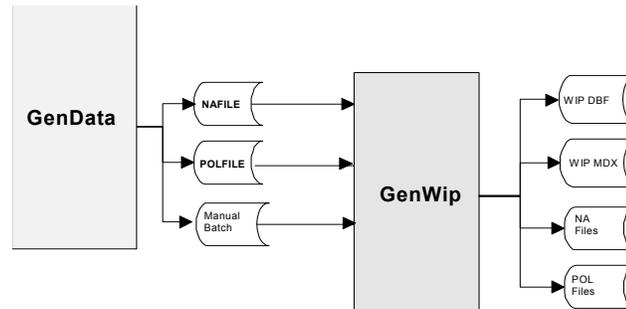
---

\* To produce PDF files, you must also have Skywire Software's Internet Document Server.

---

## SENDING INCOMPLETE TRANSACTIONS TO WIP

The following illustration shows the files used and created by the GenWIP program as it processes incomplete transactions:



The GenWIP program receives information from the GenData program about incomplete transactions the GenData program found during its processing cycle. With this information, the GenWIP program creates files the WIP module of Documaker can read. Through the WIP module, data entry operators can complete the transactions by entering the missing information.

The manual batch file tells the GenWIP program which transactions are incomplete and should be included in work-in-progress (WIP).

Using the information in the manual batch files, the GenWIP program extracts the information it needs from the NAFILE and POLFILE. With this information, it then creates individual NA and POL files for each incomplete transaction. The GenWIP also creates a WIP.DBF (database) file which contains information about the incomplete transactions. The WIP.MDX file serves as an index to this file. Both the WIP.DBF and WIP.MDX files are used by the WIP module of Documaker Workstation.

## File Summary

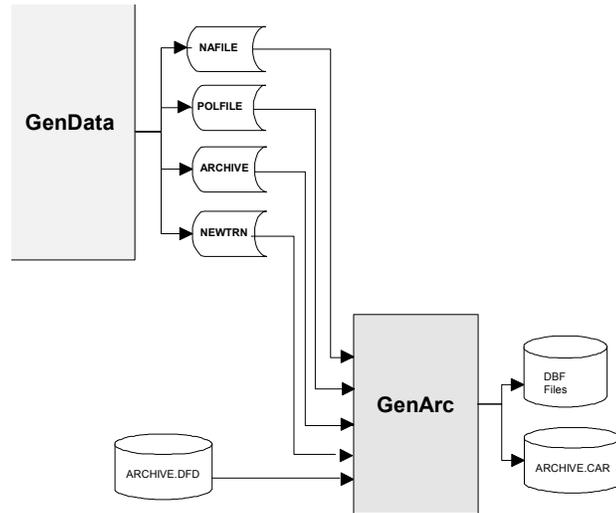
This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenWIP program:

**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input and all of the output files.

	File Name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	NAFILE	DAT	text	Contains image and variable field information.
	POLFILE	DAT	text	Defines the forms to use for each batch.
	RCBDFDFL	DFD	text	Defines the attributes of the variable fields in the batch files.
	Manual batch	BCH	text	Indicates which transactions should be included.
Output	WIP	DBF		Contains information about the incomplete transactions extracted from the NAFILE and POLFILE.
	WIP	MDX		Serves as an index to the WIP.DBF file.
	NA Files	DAT	text	Contains the data (image and variable field information) for a specific transaction. These files are named numerically and each file has a corresponding POL file.
	POL Files	POL	text	Defines the forms to use for a specific transaction. These files are named numerically and each file has a corresponding NA file.

## ARCHIVING TRANSACTIONS

The following illustration shows the files used and created by the GenArc program as it archives completed transactions:



The GenArc program receives information from the GenData program, using many of the same files used by the GenWIP and GenPrint programs, such as the NAFILE and POLFILE. These two files identify the data to archive. The NEWTRN file tells the GenArc program where to find data in the NAFILE, which is created by the GenArc program.

In addition, the GenArc program also uses the ARCHIVE.DFD file which tells it how to store the data.

With this information, the GenArc program creates DBF and CAR files. The DBF files serve as an index to the CAR files, where the archived information is actually stored. You can have multiple CAR files.

## File Summary

This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenArc program:

---

**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input and all of the output files.

---

	File Name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	NAFILE	DAT	text	Contains image and variable field information.
	POLFILE	DAT	text	Defines the forms to use for each batch.
	NEWTRN	DAT	text	Tells the GenArc program where to find data in the NAFILE and which forms to use in the POLFILE.
	APPIDX	DFD	text	Tells the GenArc program how to store the data.
Output	DBF files	DBF	text	Serves as an index to the archived data in the CAR files.
	ARCHIVE	CAR	CAR	Contains the archived forms.

## RULES USED IN MULTI-STEP PROCESSING

Several rules are used to execute the programs of the multi-step process. For a complete listing and description of these and other rules, see the [Rules Reference](#).

## RESTARTING THE GENDATA PROGRAM

You can set up the GenData program to restart itself at a particular transaction if it encounters a failure. To accomplish this, the system uses a restart file. You use INI options to set up the restart file.

---

**NOTE:** This feature does not apply if you are using single-step processing.

---

The restart file stores checkpoint information at specified intervals. If an error is encountered, the program resets itself and then checks each transaction until it isolates the transaction causing the error.

The restart file is removed at the end of a successful run. If the file exists at the start of a GenData run, the system assumes a restart is necessary and will open and read the file. The checkpoint information lets the system set internal pointers and output files in such a way that it can begin at that transaction.

These rules are used to handle restarting the GenData program:

- RULCheckTransaction
- RestartJob

### RULCheckTransaction rule

The RULCheckTransaction rule is always the first base form set rule. It saves the EXTRFILE offset, TRNFILE offset, NEWTRN offset, NAFILE offset, POLFILE offset, and batch file offsets into a restart (RSTFILE) file.

These offsets are updated in the post process after a specific number of transactions. You specify the number of transactions using the CheckCount option. You define the Restart file and the and check count in the Restart control group:

```
< Restart >
  RstFile =
  CheckCount =
```

Option	Description
RstFile	Enter the name of the restart file. If you omit this option, the system uses RSTFILE.RST (DD:RSTFILE for MVS) as the file name. The system uses the DataPath option in the Data control group to determine where to create the restart file. The default location is the current working directory.
CheckCount	Enter a number to specify the number of transactions to process before updating the offsets. For instance, if you specify two hundred (200), the system processes two hundred transactions, updates the offsets, processes two hundred more transactions, and so on. The default is 100. You can also use the <i>/cnt</i> command line option with the GenData program to override the CheckCount option. Here is an example:  <code>gendaw32 /cnt=10</code>

Here is an example:

```
;RULCheckTransaction;2;Always the first form set rule;
```

**RestartJob rule** The RestartJob is always the first base rule. This rule opens the restart file (RSTFILE) and resets the EXTRFILE, TRNFILE, NEWTRN, NAFILE, POLFILE, and batch files at the broken transaction if the restart file exists. If the restart file does not exist, the RestartJob rule is skipped.

---

**NOTE:** For more information on these rules, see the [Rules Reference](#). You can also set up the GenArc program to restart itself. For more information, see [Using the Restart Option on page 337](#).

---

Here is an example:

```
;RestartJob;1;Always the first base rule;
```

**INI options** To use the restart feature, you should also set the following INI options:

```
< GenDataStopOn >
  BaseErrors          = Yes
  TransactionErrors   = Yes
  ImageErrors         = Yes
  FieldErrors         = Yes
```

## CONTROLLING GENTRN PROCESSING

Include the following control group and option in the FSISYS.INI file when you want the GenTrn program to continue processing transactions when errors occur. By default, the GenTrn program halts when it encounters an error.

**NOTE:** This control group and option is typically used if you are using XML extract files and you do not want the GenTrn program to stop every time it encounters an error. For any type of extract file, using this option detects missing Key1, Key2, or Key3 information.

Here is an example of the control group and option:

```
< GenTrnStopOn >
TransactionErrors = Parameter1;Parameter2;Parameter3;
```

Parameter	Description
Parameter1	Enter No to turn the GenTrnStopOn option off. The default is Yes.
Parameter2	Enter the name of the transaction file. To write out the error transaction, enter the name of the file where you want the extract file records written. If you omit the path, the system uses the DataPath option in the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to determine where to locate this file.
Parameter3	The system only looks at this parameter if you entered a file name for Parameter2. Enter Yes to tell the system to append the error transactions accumulated during this processing run to the file created in a prior run. Enter No to tell the system to overwrite any existing file. If Parameter2 exists and you omit this parameter, the system defaults to No. If you enter Yes, you must remove the file when necessary. Keep in mind that over a series of processing runs, this file will expand in size.

Separate the parameters with semicolons (;).

The system records all errors and warnings it encounters during a processing run in the ERRORFILE.DAT file. In addition, it writes the extract file records of the transaction in error to the file you specify in Parameter2. This lets you inspect those transactions and determine the best way to proceed.

Here are some examples. This option:

```
TransactionErrors = No;..\Extracts\ErrorTransaction.dat;No;
```

Is the same as:

```
TransactionErrors = No;..\Extracts\ErrorTransaction.dat;;
```

Both let the GenTrn program continue processing subsequent transactions when errors occur. These options tell the GenTrn program to write the error transaction to a file named ERRORTRANSACTION.DAT, stored in the \Extracts directory.

```
TransactionErrors = No; ErrorTransaction.dat;Yes;
```

This option lets the GenTrn program continue processing subsequent transactions when errors occur. Since the path of the error transaction file was omitted, the system uses the DataPath option in the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to find the file so it can append any error transactions to the existing error transaction file.

```
TransactionErrors = No;;;
```

This option lets the GenTrn program continue processing subsequent transactions when errors occur. It does not, however, write out error transactions.

When using this option, you may encounter these errors:

- **Problem in loading the XML file. Syntax error.**

```
GenTrn

Transaction Error Report - System timestamp: Mon Dec 16 13:42:27 2002
DM12041: Error: FAP library error: Transaction:<111111111>,
area:<DXMLoadXMLRecs>
  code1:<48>, code2:<0>
  msg:<XML Parse Error: The 15 chars before error=< <Key1>Comp1<>,
the 8 chars starting at error=</Key1c>
>>.
DM12041: Error : FAP library error: Transaction:<111111111>,
area:<DXMLoadXMLRecs>
  code1:<48>, code2:<0>
  msg:<mismatched tag at line 3 column 16>.
DM10293: Error: Error in <BuildTrnRecs>: Unable to
<DXMLoadXMLRecs()>.
  Skip Transaction# <2>.
Warning: the specific info you see may not be the info for the error
transaction. It may be the info on the last complete transaction.

==> Warning count:    0
==> Error   count:    3
```

- **No problem in loading the file, however, Key1 is omitted in the transaction.**

```
GenTrn

Transaction Error Report - System timestamp: Fri Dec 13 13:52:13 2002
DM1002: Error: Required INI definition omitted.
Cannot locate INI group <Key1Table> with value = defined.
DM15062: Error in BuildTrnRecs(): Unable to GENGetDocSetNames(pRPS).
Skip Transaction# <3>.

==> Warning count:    0
==> Error   count:    2
```

## SINGLE-STEP PROCESSING

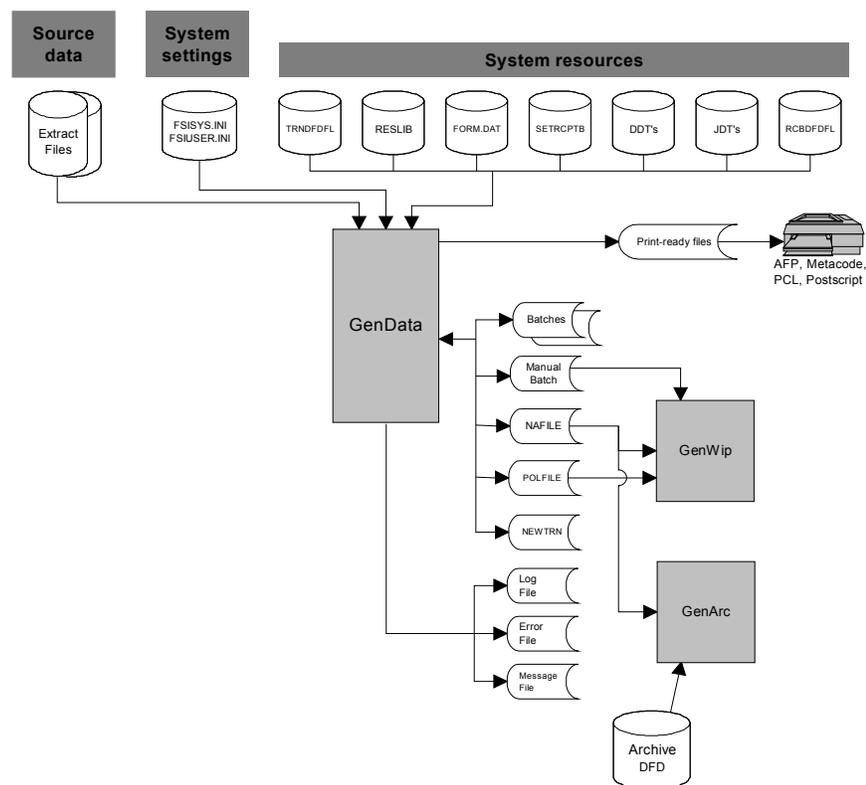
The single-step process improves the performance of your system by combining the functions of GenTrn, GenData and GenPrint into one step performed by GenData. This process is used when no intermediate steps are necessary.

The GenWIP and GenArc options are performed the same as in the multi-step process. See [Sending Incomplete Transactions to WIP on page 27](#) and [Archiving Transactions on page 29](#) for more information on the functions of the GenWIP and GenArc programs.

**NOTE:** When running in single-step mode, you can only produce a single print stream. For instance, the most common method of print batching is to batch by recipient, in single-step processing, however, you cannot produce separate print streams for each recipient batch.

## CREATING AND PROCESSING TRANSACTION RECORDS

In the multi-step process, the GenTrn program creates transaction records that are sent to the GenData program for processing. In the single-step process, the GenData program performs both of these actions in one step.



As shown in the illustration above, the GenData program processes transaction records, originated from the source data, and creates various output files for print, WIP or GenArc. By combining the functions of GenTrn and GenPrint into GenData, you reduce the number of times the system needs to open and close files, thus enhancing the overall performance of your system.

### System Settings and Resources

The FSI SYS.INI and the FSI USER.INI file provide system setting information, such as whether or not it should stop processing if it encounters errors, how to identify key fields in extract files, whether or not it should check the output data size against the defined field length, and so on.

The files listed under system resources provide additional information such as:

- How to read the transaction file (TRNDFDFL.DFD)
- The forms, logos, and other resources to use when creating the form sets (RESLIB)
- What forms to use (FORM.DAT)
- Who to send the forms to (SETRCPTB.DAT)
- What processing rules to apply to the data (DDTs)
- What processing rules to apply to this job (JDTs)
- How the batch files are defined (RCBDFDFL.DFD)

---

**NOTE:** You can learn more about these files in Appendix B, [System Files on page 393](#).

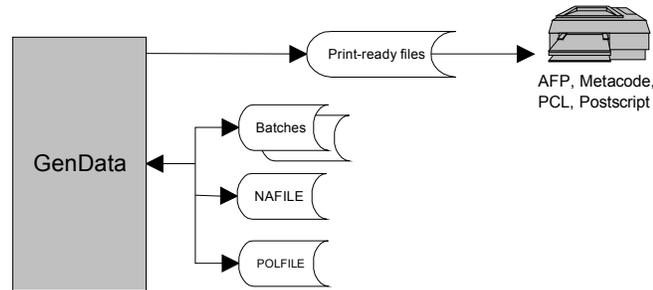
---

The advantage of single-step processing is the improvement to performance. The disadvantage is that it is much more difficult to correct errors because the system does not create batch files at the end of each step. These batch files tell you what occurred and help you spot and correct errors.

---

## CREATING PRINT FILES

With the placement of specific rules, you can make the GenData program perform the functions of the GenTrn and GenPrint programs. In other words, when GenData is processing transactions files, it is also producing the print-ready files necessary to print on AFP, Metacode, PCL, or Postscript printers.



As in the multi-step process, the GenData program creates these types of files:

- Batch files - list the transactions which should be included in each batch print job
- NAFILEs - store image and variable field information
- POLFILEs - define the form set the GenPrint program should use for each transaction it processes

---

**NOTE:** When using single-step processing, you should clear all messages before each processing run. For information on how to do this, see [Clearing Messages on page 312](#).

---

## File Summary

This table summarizes the files used to supply information (input) and the files created by (output) the GenData program:

**NOTE:** You can use the Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file to specify the names and extensions for all other input files and all of the output files.

	File name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Input	Extract files		text	Contains the data you want to process.
	FSISYS	INI	text	Initialization file which includes system settings.
	TRNDFDFL	DFD	text	Tells GenData how to read and write the TRNFILE.
	FORM	DAT	text	Defines the forms in a form set.
	SETRCPTB	DAT	text	Defines the recipients of a form set.
	DDT files	DDT	text	Contains the rules GenData applies to the data.
	JDT files	JDT	text	Contains the rules GenData follows when processing the job.
	RCBDFDFL	DFD	text	Defines the attributes of the variable fields in a batch file.
	Resources	(various)	(various)	Includes logos (LOG), font cross reference files (FXR), images (FAP), and so on.
Output	Batch files	BCH	text	Indicates which transactions should be included in a given batch job.
	NAFILE	DAT	text	Contains image and variable field information. Used by the, GenWIP, and GenArc programs.
	POLFILE	DAT	text	Defines the forms to use for each batch. Used by the GenWIP and GenArc programs.
	NEWTRN	DAT	text	Tells the GenArc program where to find data in the NAFILE and which forms to use in the POLFILE.
	Manual batch files	BCH	text	Created if the form is incomplete. Used by GenWIP to allow an operator to complete the form in the Entry module.

File name or Type	Default Extension	File Format	Description
Error batch files	.BCH	text	Created if the system spots an error, such as if the system spots an error and the form is marked as host required. In contrast to manual batch files, you cannot correct these errors using the GenWIP program. Instead, you must correct the error in the extract file, change the flag to operator required, or change the FAP file and then process the transaction again.
ARCHIVE	DFD	text	Tells the GenArc program how to store archived data.
Log file	DAT	text	Serves as a processing log. Created by the GenData program in the single-step process.
Error file	DAT	text	Notes any errors encountered by the GenData program. Created by the GenData program in the single-step process.
Message file	.DAT	text	Intermediate file which contains log and error messages. These messages are then translated and written to either the LOGFILE.DAT or ERRFILE.DAT files.

### MultiFilePrint callback function

The system includes a MultiFilePrint callback function designed for running the GenData program in single-step mode. The log file is either a semicolon delimited text file—the same as the file created by MultiFilePrint—or an XML file.

The layout of the XML file is as follows:

```

-
-
.\data\BATCH1.BCH
SAMPCO
LB1
1234567
T1
INSUREDS COPY
DATA\0rDcP7WxytE82ECp5jexhWXVqkjV840Vw_F-GykT_VMfd.PDF
-
.\data\BATCH2.BCH
SAMPCO
LB1
1234567
T1
COMPANY COPY
DATA\0v317pBdVqHceoRL5hf2xqjJ7WAMxiRVO9U70iFiXIcne.PDF

```

You can use the INI options in the DocSetNames control group to determine which XML elements are created. The values are the same as those written to a recipient batch or transaction file.

The MultiFilePrint callback function should only be used with the PDF, RTF, HTML, and XML print drivers.

## MAPPING FIELDS WITH XPATH

The GenTrn program and the NoGenTrnTransactionProc rule let you use the TRN\_Fields control group to map all of your fields with XPath. To let the system know you are using the XML file, set the XMLTrnFields option in the TRN\_File control group to Yes and also set the XMLEExtract option in the RunMode control group to Yes.

Here is an example:

```
< RunMode >
  XMLEExtract = Yes
< TRN_File >
  XMLTrnFields= Yes
< TRN_Fields >
  Company      = !/Forms/Key1
  LOB          = !/Forms/Key2
  PolicyNum    = !/Forms/PolicyNum
  RunDate      = !/Forms/RunDate;DM-4;D4
```

---

**NOTE:** Use this format for the Trn\_Fields control group options:

*(Field in the Transaction DFD File) = XPath;Field Format*

---

Be sure to include the leading exclamation mark (!). This tells the system to use an XML path search but is not part of the actual search routine. Do not specify whether a field is a key. The system does not support multiple (search) keys with the XML implementation.

If you are selectively excluding transactions, in your exclude file, instead of an offset and SearchMask, replace it with the XPath. Here is an example:

```
!/Forms[PolicyType="OLD"]
```

## RUNNING ARCHIVE IN SINGLE-STEP PROCESSING

Using rules developed for archiving via IDS, you can run the GenArc program as part of single-step processing.

Use the InitArchive rule to check the INI options in the Trigger2Archive control group, initialize the database, open the APPIDX.DFD and CAR files, and perform other steps to initialize archive.

The Archive rule then unloads the current form set and converts field data for archive using the INI options in the Trigger2Archive control group.

Here is an example:

```
< Base Rules >
;InitArchive;1;;
< Base Form Set Rules >
;Archive;2;;
```

---

**NOTE:** For more information on these rules, see the [Rules Reference](#).

---

## RUNNING WIP IN SINGLE-STEP PROCESSING

You can use the InitConvertWIP and ConvertWIP rules to run the GenWIP program in single-step mode.

Use the InitConvertWIP rule to perform the initialization necessary for the ConvertWIP rule.

Use the ConvertWIP rule to see if the current transaction is assigned to the MANUAL.BCH file. If it is, the rule adds the record to WIP and unloads the contents of the POLFILE.DAT and NAFILE.DAT files to new files with unique names.

You can then view these WIP records using Documaker Workstation or Print Preview, which is part of the Internet Document Server (IDS).

Here is an example:

```
< Base Rules >
;InitConvertWIP;1;;
< Base Form Set Rules >
;ConvertWIP;2;;
```

---

**NOTE:** For more information on these rules, see the [Rules Reference](#).

---

## RULES USED IN SINGLE-STEP PROCESSING

Specific rules are used to combine the execution and functionality of the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint programs into a single step. To begin familiarizing yourself with these rules, an alphabetical listing and brief description follows. You can find more information in the Rules Reference.

**Archive** Use this form set level (level 2) rule after the InitArchive rule to unload the current form set and convert field data for archive using the INI options in the Trigger2Archive control group.

**BatchingByRecipINI** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to send transactions to a batch you specify based on data in the extract file. To use this rule, you must include the BatchingByRecip control group in your FSISYS.INI file with options similar to those shown below:

```
< BatchingByRecip >
  Batch_Recip_Def = default;"ERROR"
  Batch_Recip_Def = 4,1234567;"BATCH1";INSURED
  Batch_Recip_Def = true;"BATCH2";INSURED
  Batch_Recip_Def = True;"BATCH3";COMPANY | true;"BATCH2";AGENT
```

You must also add the TWOUP control group and CounterTbl option to the FSISYS.INI file.

**BatchByPageCount** Use this form set level rule to send a transaction to a specific batch based on the number of pages produced by processing the transaction. The batch used is determined by the PageRange option in the Batch control group.

In the example below; transactions that produce 1 to 7 pages are send to Batch1. Transactions that produce 8 to 25 pages are send to Batch2. In addition, you must add the TWOUP control group and CounterTbl option to the FSISYS.INI file.

```
< Batches >
  Batch1      = .\data\Batch1
  Batch2      = .\data\Batch2
  Batch3      = .\data\Batch3
  Error       = .\data\Error
  Manual      = .\data\Manual

< Batch1 >
  Printer     = Batch1_PTR
  ...        .....
  PageRange   = 1,7

< Batch2 >
  Printer     = Batch2_PTR
  ...        .....
  PageRange   = 8,25
  .....

< TWOUP >
  CounterTbl  = .\data\counter.tbl
```

**BuildMasterFormList** Use this job level rule (level 1) to load the FORM.DAT file into an internal linked list within the GenData program. You must include this rule in the AFGJOB.JDT file because the RunSetRcpTbl rule is dependent on the list this rule creates.

**ConvertWIP** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to see if the current transaction is assigned to the MANUAL.BCH file. If it is, the rule adds the record to WIP and unloads the contents of the POLFILE.DAT and NAFILE.DAT files to new files with unique names. You can then view these WIP records using Documaker Workstation or Print Preview, which is part of the Internet Document Server (IDS).

<b>InitArchive</b>	Use this job level (level 1) to check the INI options in the Trigger2Archive control group, initialize the database, open the APPIDX.DFD and CAR files, and perform other steps to initialize archive.
<b>InitConvertWIP</b>	Use this job level (level 1) rule to perform the initialization necessary for the ConvertWIP rule.
<b>InitPrint</b>	Use this job level (level 1) rule to load printer and recipient batch information. This rule sets up PRTLIB data, initializes print options, and loads a table which contains page totals for recipient batch files.
<b>InitSetRecipCache</b>	Use this job level rule (level 1) to set the amount of cache the system uses to store recipient information in memory. With this rule you can tell the system the amount of memory to set aside and use for storing information in the Key1, Key2, and Key3 fields, often used to store the company, line of business, and transaction codes. You can use this rule to improve processing performance for complex forms. This rule has no affect on the processing speed for static forms.
<b>NOTE:</b> If you omit this rule, the system does not set aside memory for the Key1, Key2, and Key3 fields.	
<b>NoGenTrnTransactionProc</b>	Use this form set level rule when you use the GenData program by itself to execute the GenTrn and GenData steps. In the single-step processing environment, this rule processes the extract file and creates the information normally created in both the GenTrn and GenData steps. When combined with the InitPrint and PrintFormset rules, it creates the output files normally created during the GenPrint step.
<b>NOTE:</b> Do not use this rule if you are running the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint programs as separate processes (multi-step processing).	
<b>PageBatchStage1InitTerm</b>	Use this job level rule (level 1) to create and populate a list of records which contain page ranges and total page counts for each recipient batch file.  This rule is typically used for handling 2-up printing for AFP and compatible printers.  This rule creates a list (populated in another rule) to contain the recipient batch records for a multi-mail transaction set. The rule then writes out the recipient records for the final multi-mail transaction set and writes out the total page counts for each recipient batch. You must add the TWOUNP control group and CounterTbl option to the FSISYS.INI file, as shown here:
<pre>&lt; TwoUp &gt; CounterTbl = .\data\counter.tbl</pre>	
<b>PaginateAndPropagate</b>	Use this form set level (level 2) rule to paginate the form set and merge in or propagate field data.
<b>PrintFormset</b>	Use this form set level (level 2) rule when you run the GenData program by itself to execute GenTrn and GenPrint processes. In the single-step processing environment, this rule, when combined with the InitPrint rule, prints form sets.

---

**NOTE:** Do not use this rule if you are running the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint programs as separate processes (multi-step processing).

---

- ProcessQueue** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to process the queue you specify. This rule loops through the list of functions for the queue you specify and then frees the queue when finished.
- StandardFieldProc** This rule is a field level rule (level 4), which you must include in the AFGJOB.JDT file. This rule is used when you are using the performance mode JDT and should be the first field level rule. This rule tells the system to process each field on all of the images triggered by the SETRCPTB.DAT file. If you use the StandardFieldProc rule in your JDT, you must also include the WriteNAFile rule.
- StandardImageProc** This rule is an image level rule (level 3) which you must include in the AFGJOB.JDT file. This rule is used when you are using the performance mode JDT and should be the first image level rule. This rule tells the system to process each image triggered by the SETRCPTB.DAT file.
- WriteNAFile** Use this form set level rule (level 2) to append the NAFILE.DAT file data records for the current form set into an existing NAFILE.DAT file. When you use the NoGenTrnTransactionProc rule, which replaces the RULStandardProc rule, you must include the WriteNAFile rule to cause data (records) to be written to the NAFILE during the GenData processing step. In addition, you must also include the WriteOutput rule to cause data (records) to be written to the POLFILE.DAT and NEWTRN.DAT files during the GenData processing step.
- WriteOutput** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to append the POLFILE.DAT file data records for the current form set into an existing POLFILE.DAT file.
- You also use this rule when you are using the GenData program by itself to execute the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint processing steps.
- If you use this rule, do not use the UpdatePOLFile rule.
- WriteRCBWithPageCount** Use this form set level rule (level 2) to write page counts for each recipient. This rule is typically used for handling 2-up printing on AFP and compatible printers. To use this rule, you must update the RCBDFFL.DFD file with the following items:

```
< FIELDS >
  FIELDNAME = CurPage
  FIELDNAME = TotPage
  FIELDNAME = AccumPage
  FIELDNAME = MMFIELD
< FIELD:CurPage >
  INT_TYPE = LONG
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_LENGTH = 10
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:TotPage >
  INT_TYPE = LONG
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_LENGTH = 10
```

```

KEY = N
REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:AccumPage >
  INT_TYPE = LONG
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_LENGTH = 10
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:MMFIELD >
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 7
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_LENGTH = 6
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = N

```

## SINGLE-STEP PROCESSING EXAMPLE

As stated earlier, the single-step process is performed by combining the execution and functionality of the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint programs. This is done by placing certain rules into a specialized JDT. The earlier illustration shows the input and output files used by GenData to process transactions and print output files in one step. The following file describes the JDT used to process the job and an example of the rules used to combine the GenTrn, GenData, and GenPrint functions.

To make this happen, the NoGenTrnTransactionProc rule, along with other rules, are placed in the JDT file as seen in the following sample file. An actual sample file can be seen in the RPEX1 sample library.

### Base rules

The following base rules are designed for the performance mode.

```

;RULStandardJobProc;1;Always the first job level rule;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: BillPrint Data Generation (Base);
;SetErrHdr;1;***:;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Transaction:      ***ACCOUNTNUM***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Company Name:    ***Company***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Line of Business: ***LOB***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Run Date:       ***RunDate***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;JobInit1;;
;CreateGlbVar;1;TXTLst,PVOID;
;CreateGlbVar;1;TblLstH,PVOID;
;InitOvFlw;1;;
;SetOvFlwSym;1;SUBGROUPOVF,SUBGROUP,5;
;BuildMasterFormList;;4;
;PageBatchStage1InitTerm;;;
;InitSetrecipCache;;;

```

The following rule is required to execute GenData and GenPrint as a single step.

```

;InitPrint;;;

```

**Base form set rules** The following base form set rules causes GenTrn and GenData to be combined into a single step.

```
;NoGenTrnTransactionProc;;;
;ResetOvFlw;2;;
;BuildFormList;;;
;LoadRcpTbl;;;
;RunSetRcpTbl;;;
```

The following rules are required to execute GenData and GenPrint as a single step.

```
;PrintFormset;;;
;WriteOutput;;;
;WriteNaFile;;;
;WriteRCBWithPageCount;;;
;ProcessQueue;;PostPaginationQueue;
;PaginateAndPropogate;;;
;BatchingByRecipINI;;;
```

**Base image rules** The following base image rules apply to every image in this base.

```
;StandardImageProc;3;Always the 1st image level rule;
```

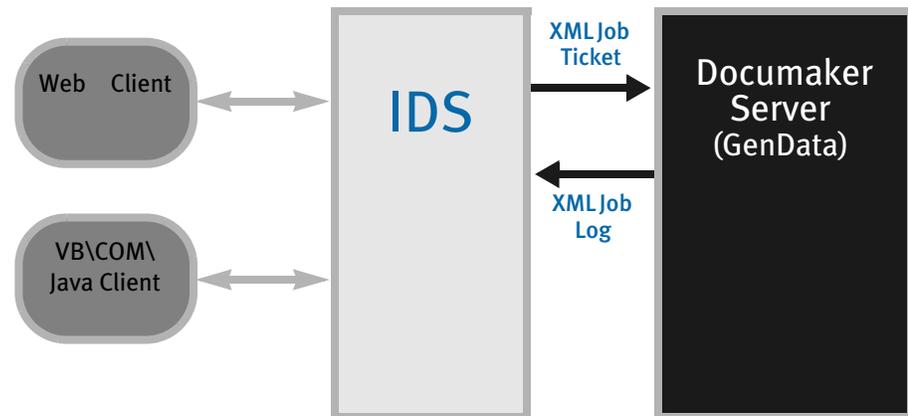
**Base field rules** The following base field rules apply to every field in this base.

```
;StandardFieldProc;4;Always the 1st field level rule;
```

## USING IDS TO RUN DOCUMAKER

If you have a license for both Documaker and the Internet Document Server (IDS), you can set up IDS to run Documaker as a subordinate process. Web clients communicate with IDS using queues. IDS communicates with Documaker via XML files called *job tickets* and *job logs*.

This diagram illustrates the process:



IDS can start or stop Documaker Server as needed, without user interaction. One IDS session controls one Documaker process. You can, however, implement multiple IDS sessions and have multiple Documaker Server processes as well.

Keep in mind these limitations:

- You can only run Documaker in single step mode.
- You must run Documaker on Windows 2000 or higher.
- Different resource setups for Documaker are supported, but Documaker processing restarts if resources are changed, eliminating the performance benefits. This should not be a problem because it is unlikely multiple Documaker Server setups will be used with a single IDS implementation. You can, however, experience problems testing a system with multiple setups.
- During processing, some INI options can be changed by the client. Since some Documaker rules use static variables and store INI values in memory, it is possible that a client will be unable to change an INI option if those Documaker rules are used. To handle these situations, you must restart Documaker.

For more information, see the [Internet Document Server Guide](#) and the [SDK Reference](#).

## WRITING UNIQUE DATA INTO RECIPIENT BATCH RECORDS

The GenData program lets you add unique data to each recipient batch record before it is written to the recipient batch files. The recipient batch record data and format is defined by the GVM variable definitions in the RCBDFFDL.DAT file.

You can use this capability if you need to add...

- Address information or other field level information to the batch record, which is typically unique for each recipient.
- Recipient information that is not handled by normal field mapping from the transaction DFD to the recipient batch DFD.
- Cumulative or calculated information not available until the document is nearly completed.

### Understanding the System

Before this feature was implemented in version 10.2, the recipient batch records were identical except for the recipient code field which contains a unique identifier assigned to a given recipient. If additional recipient data was required, you had to write a custom rule.

Use the options in the RecipMap2GVM control group to set up this capability. Data that can be added to the recipient batch record can be:

- Contents of a variable field on the specified image or form/image
- Constant value
- Data from an existing INI built-in functions, such as ~DALRun
- Data from a custom written INI function

Here is an example of the RecipMap2GVM control group:

```
< RecipMap2GVM >  
  Form      =  
  Image     =  
  Req       =  
  Opt       =
```

Option	Description
--------	-------------

Form	(optional) Enter the name of the form.
Image	Enter the name of the image. You can also enter an image name root. An image name root is the first part of a name. For instance, <i>MAILER</i> is the root name for images with names such as <i>MAILER A</i> , <i>MAILER_B</i> , or <i>MAILERS</i> .
Req *	A semicolon delimited string that contains one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- GVM variable name; variable field name; optional formatting information</li><li>- GVM variable name; blank character (space); constant value</li><li>- GVM variable name; INI built-in function</li></ul>

**Option Description**

Opt *	A semicolon delimited string that contains one of the following: - GVM variable name; variable field name; optional formatting information - GVM variable name; blank character (space); constant value - GVM variable name; INI built-in function
-------	---

\* = Repeat for each GVM variable you are setting up.

**Optional formatting information**

You can add optional formatting information as a parameter of the Opt INI option. This formatting information is comprised of four items separated by commas.

Item	Description
Input fetypes	D or d = date N or n = number
Input format mask	Date - see the FmtDate rule in the Rules Reference. Number – see the FmtNum rule in the Rules Reference.
Output fetypes	D or d = date N or n = number
Output format mask	Date - see the FmtDate rule in the Rules Reference. Number – see the FmtNum rule in the Rules Reference.

Here are some formatting examples:

d, "1/4", d, "4/4"

This converts an input date, mmddyyyy, into *month name dd, yyyy*, such as February 17, 2006.

n, nCAD, nUSD, "\$zzz,zz9.99"

This converts an input numeric value in Canadian French format into a value in United States format.

Keep in mind...

- For the Req option, if the data is missing an error occurs and the transaction is send to the error batch.
- For the Opt option, if the data is missing the system stores an empty string in the GVM variable.
- A RCB GVM variable cannot be restored to its original or default value after it has been changed using this method.
- Any RCB GVM variable not assigned using this method retains the value originally set during the transaction processing.
- Some RCB GVM variables should never be changed using this mapping technique. These include:
  - TRN\_Offset
  - NA\_Offset

- POL\_Offset
- If the image defined in the Image option in the RecipMap2GVM control group does not name an image, the feature is disabled for all transactions.
- If the image defined in the Image option is missing from the form set being processed, the GVM data is not changed. Depending on where the GVM data is mapped, this could mean data from the prior transaction will still be in the GVM variables.
- If there are multiple images with the same name in the form set, the form specified in the Form option is used to identify the image to use. If the Form option is omitted, the first image found in the current form set is used.
- The system assumes the specified image contains all of the unique data except for a constant value or data gathered from an INI built-in function.
- If more than one recipient is assigned to the image, all recipient batch records receive the same added data.

**Example** This example creates a mailer cover page for each insured, agent, and/or company recipient per transaction. The cover page is created using banner page processing which occurs during GenPrint processing. Examples of the three different mailer cover pages are as follows.

Insureds

Jill Smith  
1111 Oak Circle  
Suite 999  
Smryna, FL 12345

Suzy Smith  
Morris Fanelli  
99934 Oak Circle  
Suite 999  
Smartburg, WI  
99999

Agents

Jill Smith  
Martin Short Agent  
963 Atlantic  
Boulevard  
Suite 1250  
Miami, FL 30202

Suzy Smith  
David Miller Agent  
999 Green Dolphin  
Street  
Suite 1200  
Miami, FL 30202

Company

Suzy Smith  
Jill Smith  
Sampco, Inc.  
316 N.E. 3rd Avenue  
Pompano Beach, FL  
33333

This example assumes that the:

- Agent and company recipient batch files are sorted (agent number and company name, respectively) before the GenPrint program runs. This sorting allows for the creation of only one mailer cover page per unique agent and company.
- Unique information is contained on the form/image, Dec Page/Q1MDC1.
- The FSIUSER.INI file includes these control groups and options:

```
< RecipMap2GVM >
  Form      = Dec Page
  Image     = Q1MDC1
  Opt       = Name1;Insured Name;
  Opt       = Name2;Insured Name2;
  Opt       = Address1;Address Line1;
  Opt       = Address2;Address Line2;
  Opt       = CityCounty;prtvalue;
  Opt       = AgentName;Agent Name;
  Opt       = AgentID; Agent ID;
  Opt       = OfficeAddress;Office Address;
  Opt       = TownandState;Town And State;
< Printer >
  PrtType           = PCL
  EnableTransBanner = True
  EnableBatchBanner = False
  TransBannerBeginScript= PreTrans
  TransBannerEndScript = PstTrans
  TransBannerBeginForm = ;BANNER;TRANSACTION;TRANS HEADER;
  TransBannerEndForm   = ;BANNER;TRANSACTION;TRANS TRAILER;
< DALLibraries >
  LIB = Banner
```

## BANNER.DAL The DefLib directory contains this DAL script:

```
* This script obtains the required unique data from the recipient
* batch record and stores it on the mailer form.
```

```
BeginSub PreTrans

blank_gvm = Pad(" ",41," ")
SetGVM("NameA"      ,blank_gvm,, "C",41)
SetGVM("NameB"      ,blank_gvm,, "C",41)
SetGVM("AddressA"   ,blank_gvm,, "C",41)
SetGVM("AddressB"   ,blank_gvm,, "C",41)
SetGVM("CityCounty1",blank_gvm,, "C",41)
If Trim(RecipName()) = "INSURED" Then
  SetGVM("NameA"      ,GVM("Name1")      ,, "C",41)
  SetGVM("NameB"      ,GVM("Name2")      ,, "C",41)
  SetGVM("AddressA"   ,GVM("Address1")    ,, "C",41)
  SetGVM("AddressB"   ,GVM("Address2")    ,, "C",41)
  SetGVM("CityCounty1",GVM("CityCounty")  ,, "C",41)
GoTo exit:
End

last_agent_id = last_agent_id
If Trim(RecipName()) = "AGENT" Then
```

```

If last_agent_id != Trim(GVM("AgentID")) Then
  last_agent_id = Trim(GVM("AgentID"))
  SetGVM("NameA"      ,GVM("AgentName")      ,,"C",41)
  SetGVM("NameB"      ,GVM("OfficeAddress")  ,,"C",41)
  SetGVM("AddressA"   ,GVM("TownandState")   ,,"C",41)
  GoTo exit:
Else
  SuppressBanner()
  GoTo exit :
End
End

last_company_name = last_company_name
If Trim(RecipName()) = "COMPANY" Then
  If Trim(GVM("Company")) != last_company_name Then
    last_company_name = Trim(GVM("Company"))
    If Trim(GVM("Company")) = "SAMPCO" Then;
      SetGVM("NameA"      ,"Sampco, Inc."      ,,"C",41)
      SetGVM("NameB"      ,"316 N.E. 3rd Avenue"  ,,"C",41)
      SetGVM("AddressA"   ,"Pompano Beach, FL 33333" ,,"C",41)
      GoTo exit:
    ElseIf Trim(GVM("Company")) = "FSI"
      SetGVM("NameA"      ,"FSI Inc."      ,,"C",41)
      SetGVM("NameB"      ,"222 Newbury St."  ,,"C",41)
      SetGVM("AddressA"   ,"Northwest City, FL 99999" ,,"C",41)
      GoTo exit:
    End
  Else
    SuppressBanner()
    GoTo exit:
  End
End
exit:
EndSub

BeginSub PstTrans
EndSub

```

The RCBDNFL.DAT file contains the following GVM variable definitions which are defined in the RecipMap2GVM control group:

- Name1
- Name2
- Address1
- Address2
- CityCounty
- AgentName
- AgentID
- OfficeAddress
- TownAndState

Here are two recipient batch records from this example:

```
SAMPCOLB12234567SCOM1FLT1 B2199802232234567890 0 22560
*****001 3724 452Jill Smith Morris
11111 Oak Circle Suite 999 Smyrna,
FL 12345 Martin Short Agent 963 Main Street,
Suite 1250 Miami, FL 30202
```

```
FSI CPP4234567FSIM1WIT1 B3199802234234567890 0 30360
*****001 4667 565Suzy Smith Morris
99934 Oak Circle Suite 999 SmartBurg,
WI 99999 David Miller Agent 999 Main Street,
Suite 1200 Miami, FL 30202
```

## USING CLASS RECIPIENTS

A *class recipient* identifies a recipient that represents one or more persons or entities. For instance, in an insurance implementation, you might have a policy that has a several recipients declared as an *Additional Interest*. Instead of declaring each as a separate recipient with separate triggering logic, it is more convenient to declare a single recipient name that represents all those of the same type or class. All members of this class receive virtually identical copies of the document.

In this scenario, you do not have to do anything special to declare a class recipient in your form definitions. Merely determine the appropriate title for this class of recipients and define that name as you would a normal recipient that represents a single entity.

If you want all members of the class to receive identical copies of the document, use the trigger for the recipient to assign a copy count to each form or image — where the count equals the number of members in the class.

There are some limitations to using form copy counts to provide recipient copies. For instance, this does not let you print unique information about each member of the class recipient, as would be necessary on a mailer page, for instance.

---

**NOTE:** It is possible to handle this using trigger overflow processing to physically trigger multiple copies of each form — one for each member, but a disadvantage of this approach is that each item (form or image) triggered is physically duplicated in the form set and therefore each requires data processing. This means that if there are a large number of these duplicate recipients, the throughput performance of transactions could be affected.

---

To handle this situation, the RecipMap2GVM feature can write additional batch records for each member of a class recipient. The RecipMap2GVM feature lets you write unique recipient information to each batch record.

With this method, only a minimal amount of additional processing occurs in the form set mapping. Yet, because a separate batch record is written for each member, the system prints a separate copy of the document for each member and you can use the unique information saved in each batch record to provide a unique banner page, such as a mailer, for each member in the print output.

To use the RecipMap2GVM feature, follow these steps:

- 1 Add an image to your form set definition and assign this image the name of your class recipient. Normally, you would also flag this image as *hidden*, since you would not want it to display or print. This purpose of this image is to hold the unique information for each member of the class recipient.
- 2 Define a trigger for the image that uses overflow to generate as many copies of the image as there are members in the data. The idea is to trigger an instance of the image for each member recipient. Be sure to also declare and create the appropriate overflow variable in the AFGJOB.JDT file you will use during data mapping.
- 3 Create the image and add fields that map the data to be written to the batch record for each member. Be sure to use the appropriate overflow variable for this image in your rule mapping definitions. Also remember to assign the appropriate image level rule to increment the overflow symbol after processing each image.

- 4 Set up your RecipMap2GVM INI control group and modify your RCBDFFDL.DFD (Recipient Table DFD) file to include your unique data fields for the recipient batch records. Specify the new image as the image required in the RecipMap2GVM control group and set up each of the fields to map into your RCBDFFDL.DFD file layout.

---

**NOTE:** See [Writing Unique Data into Recipient Batch Records on page 48](#) for more information on the RecipMap2GVM control group.

---

When you run the GenData program, your new image will trigger once for each member recipient. During normal processing, the fields on each image will map (using overflow variables) the unique data for each member. Because you have multiple copies of the image triggered, the RecipMap2GVM feature creates a separate batch record for each instance of the image. Therefore, you receive a separate record representing each individual member of your class recipient.

When the GenPrint program runs, having a separate record for each class recipient in the batch causes that transaction to print once for each member. And by using banner page processing, you can take the unique information written into each batch record and map that information to a mailer page, making the final output unique to each member of the class.

## RUNNING DOCUMAKER USING XML JOB TICKETS

You can run Documaker from another application using an XML job ticket. You receive results in an XML job log file.

The layout of these files is the same as those used by IDS for running Documaker. See [Using IDS to Run Documaker on page 47](#) for more information.

The name of the job ticket is passed to the GenData program on the command line as

```
/jticket= parameter
```

The default name is *JOBTICKET.XML*.

To set this up replace the StandardJobProc rule with the TicketJobProc rule. Keep in mind you must run Documaker in single step mode, since only the GenData program is executed. See [Single-step Processing on page 35](#) for more information.

You can specify the name of the resulting job log file using this command line parameter:

```
/jlog=
```

The default is *JOBLOG.XML*.

## HANDLING 2-UP PRINTING

Two-up printing lets you print two transactions on the same page of single- and multi-page forms. 2-up printing is a two-step process which passes input through GenData three (3) times, using a different JDT file each time.

This process is similar to the single-step process in that GenData performs the work, but the three passes through GenData actually represent two steps of the multi-step process: processing the transactions and printing the transactions.

For more information and to see example JDT files, see [Single-step Processing Example on page 45](#).

---

**NOTE:** 2-up printing is only available for AFP printers.

---

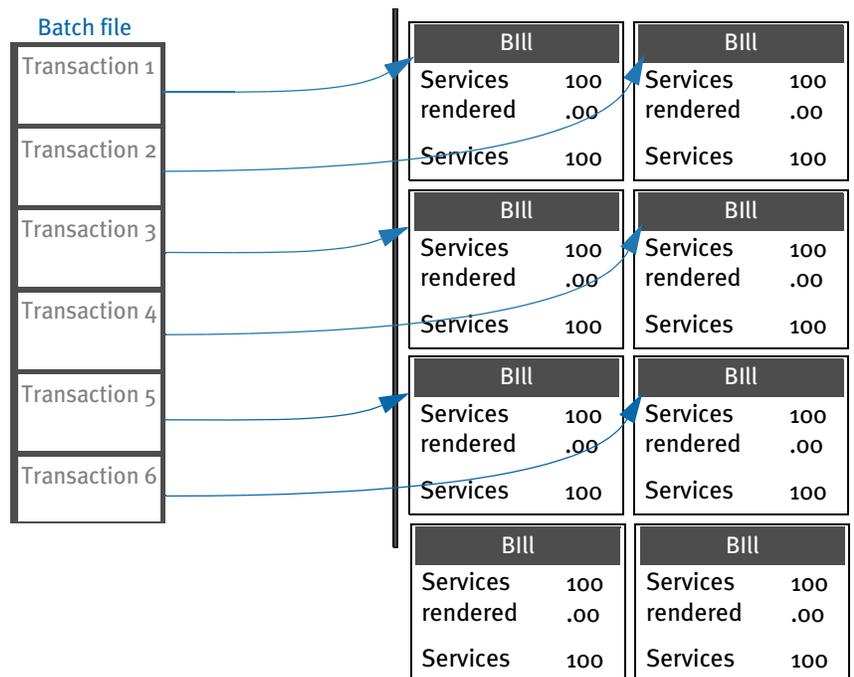
There are several scenarios in which 2-up printing applies:

- 2-up printing with single-page forms
- 2-up printing with multi-page forms

The following illustrations describe these scenarios.

### 2-up printing with single-page forms

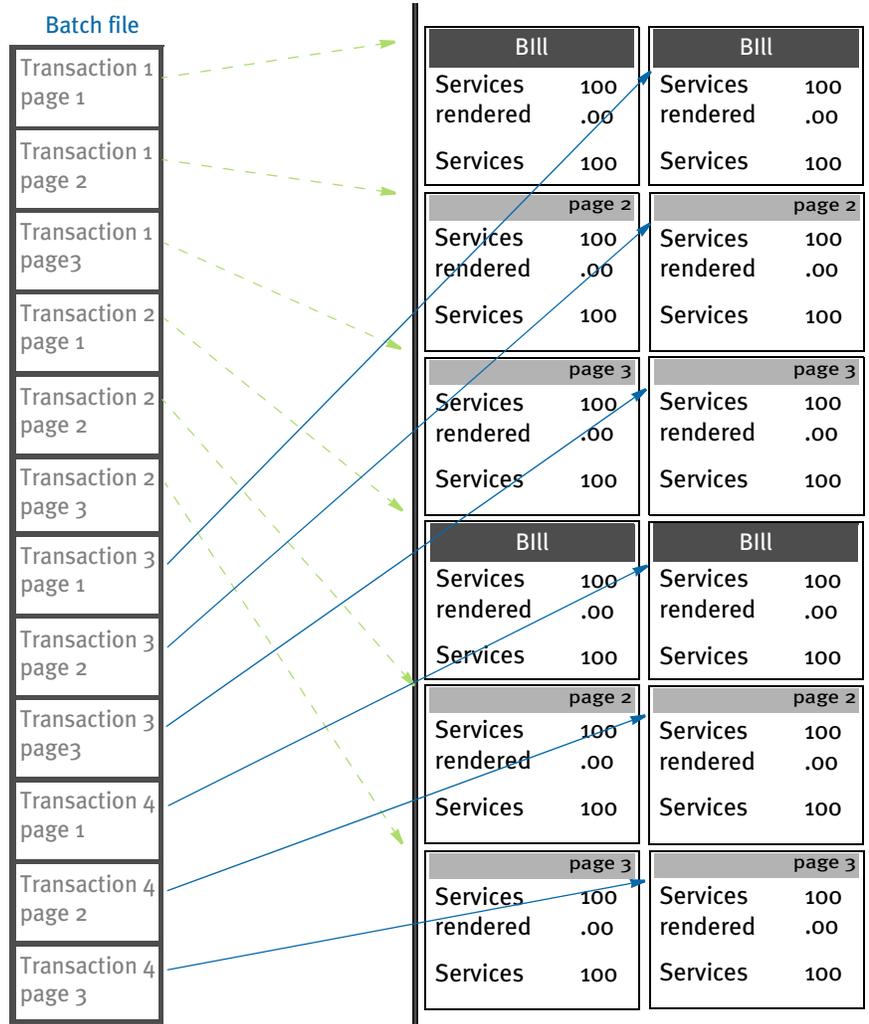
This illustration shows how 2-up printing works when you use single-page forms, such as some types of bills and statements.



In this scenario, the system merges the data for the first transaction onto the form and then prints the form.

2-up printing with multi-page forms

This illustration shows how 2-up printing works when you use multi-page forms.



### Changing the INI File

You must make the following changes in your FSISYS.INI file.

**NOTE:** Changes to the error and manual recipient batch control groups are not necessary.

- You must include a Printer option in the recipient batch control groups for each print file created. These printers must also be defined in the FSISYS.INI file.
- The recipient batch groups must have a FinalPrinter option. This option specifies the printer to use for the final, merged file. This printer must also be defined in the FSISYS.INI file.

- The recipient batch groups must have a PageRange option for page count batching. You specify this option as shown below:

```
PageRange = [min], [max]
```

If you do not specify *min*, the system uses zero (0). If you omit *max*, the system uses (unsigned)-1 (all bits on). The *min* and *max* values are inclusive.

- You can also include in the recipient batch control groups a TwoUpStart option, which can have any of these values (case is irrelevant):
  - L
  - Left
  - R
  - Right

This option specifies whether the merge process should associate the first Printer option with the left or the right side of the page. The system only checks this option when there are multiple Printer options present in the control group. If you omit this option, the file specified in the first Printer option is used for the left side of the page.

Here is an example of a recipient batch control group:

```
< Batch1 >
Printer      = Printer1
Printer      = Printer2
FinalPrinter = Printer3
PageRange    = ,1
TwoUpStart   = R
```

This splits single page transactions evenly between the files specified in the Printer1 and Printer2 control groups. The files specified in the Printer1 and Printer2 control groups will then be merged into the file specified in the Printer3 control group. The file specified in the Printer1 control group is used for the right page.

### Creating the TWOUP control group

You must create the TwoUp control group. This control group must contain the CounterTbl option, which specifies the file name for the table that contains recipient batch page counts.

The TwoUp control group can optionally contain the CounterDFD option, which specifies the name of a DFD file. See the [Rules Reference](#) for information about this DFD.

The TwoUp control group can optionally contain the LMargin, LShift, and RShift options. Records on the left page will be shifted to the right by LShift - LMargin, and records on the right page will be shifted to the right by RShift - RMargin. Amounts are in FAP units (2400 per inch). If you omit these options, the system uses these defaults:

```
LMargin = 600
LShift  = 1200
RShift  = 16800
```

```
< TwoUp >
CounterTbl = data\counter.tbl
CounterDFD = deflib\counter.dfd
LMargin    = 300
```

```

LShift = 600
RShift = 15000

```

The first two options define the location of the files shown above.

The LMargin=300 option sets the left margin to 1/4 inch. The LShift=600 option shifts the left page 1/2 inch from the left edge of the paper (1/4 inch beyond the left margin). The RShift=15000 option shifts the right page 6 1/2 inches the left edge of the paper (6 inches from the left margin).

### Creating the Added\_Fonts control group

You can optionally create the Added\_Fonts control group. The options in this group specify additional fonts to add to the AFP output file for text label records which may be added during the merge process. Each option takes the form:

```
FontName = <font name>
```

Here is an example:

```

< Added_Fonts >
  FontName = XOFATINO
  FontName = XOFAUNN8

```

This tells the system to include the fonts XoFATINo and XoFAUNN8 in the final output file, regardless of whether they are present in the input files.

### Changing the Recipient Batch DFD File

The recipient batch DFD file (RCBDFDFL.DAT) must have the following fields with the given types. You can modify the field lengths—just make sure you set the EXT\_LENGTH option large enough to represent all of the pages in a multi-mail transaction set. Also make sure you set the INT\_LENGTH option larger by one than the EXT\_LENGTH option.

Note that the field name is case sensitive. Also, for each of these fields, be sure to add a FIELDNAME= line to the <FIELDS> line in the DFD file.

```

< FIELD:CurPage >
  INT_Type   = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_Length = 5
  EXT_Type   = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_Length = 4
  Key       = N
  Required  = N
< FIELD:TotPage >
  INT_Type   = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_Length = 5
  EXT_Type   = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_Length = 4
  Key       = N
  Required  = N
< FIELD:AccumPage >
  INT_Type   = LONG
  EXT_Type   = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
  EXT_Length = 10
  Key       = N
  Required  = N

```

## RULES USED FOR 2-UP PRINTING

The following descriptions will help familiarize you with the rules that are required to perform the 2-up printing process. All of the rules listed in the topic, [Rules Used in Single-step Processing on page 41](#) are required for 2-up printing, plus these additional rules:

---

**NOTE:** You can find more information in the [Rules Reference](#).

---

<a href="#">AddLine</a>	Use this form set level (level 2) rule to add a line record, such as for OMR marks, to the AFP record list built by the MergeAFP rule.
<a href="#">AddTextLabel</a>	Use this form set level (level 2) rule to add a text label record to the AFP record list built by the MergeAFP rule.
<a href="#">ForceNoImages</a>	Use this image level rule (level 3) to return the msgNO_MORE_IMAGES message. This prevents errors if you have no image level rules.
<a href="#">GetRCBRec</a>	<p>Use this form set (level 2) level rule to set the current recipient batch file. This rule initializes the current recipient batch file, if necessary.</p> <p>This rule also sets the first printer for current batch to be the current printer and retrieves the next record from the current recipient batch file.</p>
<a href="#">InitMerge</a>	Use this job level (level 1) rule to create a list of printers, batches, and buffers for the comment (RCB) records. This rule also creates a list to hold AFP records and AFP fonts. After the system finishes running the rule, it deletes everything the rule created.
	<hr/> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The recipient batch files are not used at this stage. The batch list must be created beforehand so the system will know which print files belong together. The <i>skipping batch</i> message is an artifact of the batch file loading process.</p> <hr/>
<a href="#">InitPageBatchedJob</a>	<p>Use this job level (level 1) rule to open NA and POL files. This rule installs the image level callback function for inserting recipient batch records into the AFP print stream as AFP comment records.</p> <p>When finished, this rule restores the original callback function and closes the NA and POL files.</p>

**MergeAFP** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to initialize input files. This rule populates the AFP record list, retrieves comment (RCB) records, and terminates the input files.

This rule also initializes output files, and writes out the AFP record list, adding end page and end document records as necessary. The rule then terminates these output files.

**ParseCommentExample** Use this form set level (level 2) rule to parse comment records into the GVM variable.

**PrintData** Use this form set (level 2) rule to print the form set. This rule is used for handling 2-up printing on AFP and compatible printers.

---

**NOTE:** The image handler installed by the `InitPageBatchedJob` rule is called during the printing stage. If you want to make any modifications to the recipient batch record, you must do so before this point.

---

**ProcessRecord** Use this form set (level 2) rule to switch between print files as necessary when printing 2-up forms on an AFP printer. This rule updates the page count for current print file and loads and merges the form set.

## Placing the 2-up Rules in the JDT File

When you use the rules listed at the beginning of this topic to handle 2-up printing, you must place them in the correct places and order in the AFGJOB.JDT file. Use the following table as a guide to where to place these rules. You can insert other rules before, between, or after the 2-up rules—just keep the 2-up rules in the order indicated below with respect to one another.

Stage 1	
Job level	Insert the PageBatchStage1InitTerm rule after the RULStandardJobProc and JobInit1 rules
Form set level	List the form set level rules in this order: WriteOutput CreateRecordList BatchByPageCount PaginateAndPropagate Place these rules after the RULStandardTransactionProc rule and make sure any rule which changes page count appears before these rules.
Stage 2	
Job level	Include these rules in this order: InitPrint InitPageBatchedJob SetErrHdr <i>Do not</i> include the RULStandardJobProc or JobInit1 rules in this stage.
Form set level	Include these rules in this order: GetRCBRec ProcessRecord PrintData <i>Do not</i> include the RULStandardTransactionProc rule in this stage.
Image level	There are no regulations on the order in which you can place rules in this stage. Remember, however, that if there are no image level rules, you must include the ForceNoImages rule to avoid errors.
Stage 3	
Job level	Place the InitMerge rule anywhere after the RULStandardJobProc rule.

Form set level	Make sure the MergeAFP rule is the first rule called. Place rules which add records or determine whether a page pair should be printed after the MergeAFP rule.
Image level	There are no stipulations on the order in which you must place rules in this stage. Remember, however, that if there are no image level rules, you <i>must</i> include the ForceNoImages rule to avoid errors.

## 2-UP PROCESSING EXAMPLE

As stated earlier, 2-up printing is a two-step process which calls GenData three times with different JDT files. These file excerpts show how to set up your batch and INI files:

### 2upbycnt.bat

You can set up this batch file as follows:

```
@Echo Off
SetLocal
Echo Y|Del Data\*. * >NUL
GenDaW32.Exe -INI=2upstep1.ini
If Not ErrorLevel 5 GoTo Step1NoError
    Echo "2Up Printing Failed in Step 1."
    GoTo Exit
:Step1NoError
GenDaW32.Exe -INI=2upstep2.ini
If Not ErrorLevel 5 GoTo Step2NoError
    Echo "2Up Printing Failed in Step 2."
    GoTo Exit
:Step2NoError
GenDaW32.Exe -INI=2upstep3.ini
If Not ErrorLevel 5 GoTo Step3NoError
    Echo "2Up Printing Failed in Step 3."
:Step3NoError
EndLocal
:Exit
```

### 2upstep1.ini

You can set up this INI file as follows:

```
< Data >
    AfgJobFile      = .\Def\AfgJob1.jdt
< Environment >
    FSISYSINI      = .\fsisys.ini
```

### 2upstep2.ini

You can set up this INI file as follows:

```
< Data >
    AfgJobFile      = .\Def\AfgJob2.jdt
< Environment >
    FSISYSINI      = .\fsisys.ini
```

### 2upstep3.ini

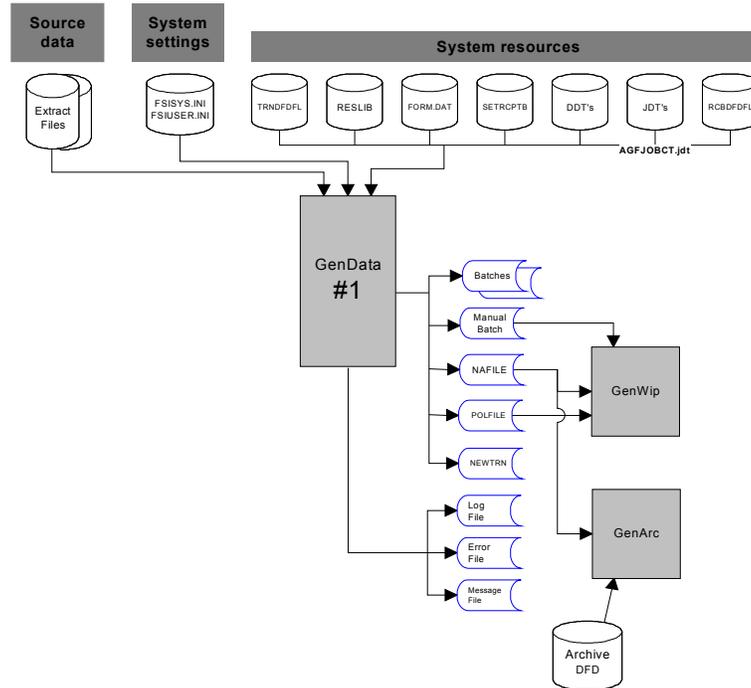
You can set up this INI file as follows:

```
< Data >
    AfgJobFile      = .\Def\AfgJob3.jdt
< Environment >
    FSISYSINI      = .\fsisys.ini
```

## RUNNING THE GENDATA PROGRAM

The following pages provide illustrations and an example files for each time the GenData program is run.

### Step 1 - Using the AFGJOB1.JDT file



The first execution of GenData uses the AFGJOB1.JDT file with the base and form set rules shown in this example to create output files shown in the illustration.

```
<Base Rules>
;RULStandardJobProc;1;;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: BillPrint Data Generation (Base);
;SetErrHdr;1;***:
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Transaction:      ***ACCOUNTNUM***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Company Name:    ***Company***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Line of Business: ***LOB***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Run Date:      ***RunDate***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;
;JobInit1;;
;CreateGlbVar;1;TXTLst,PVOID;
;CreateGlbVar;1;TblLstH,PVOID;
;InitOvFlw;1;;
;SetOvFlwSym;1;SUBGROUPOVF,SUBGROUP,5;
;BuildMasterFormList;4;
;PageBatchStage1InitTerm;;
;InitSetrecipCache;;

<Base Form Set Rules>
;NoGenTrnTransactionProc;;;
```

```

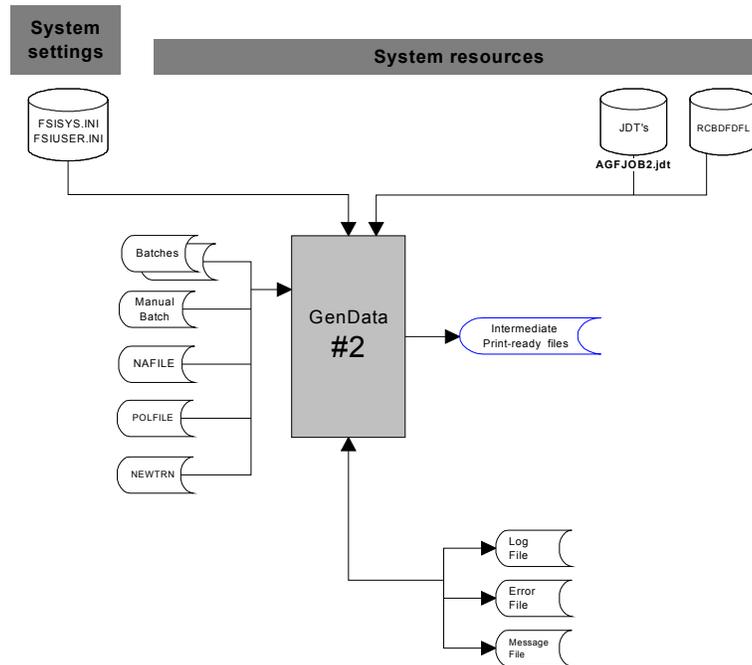
;ResetOvFlw;2;;
;BuildFormList;;;
;LoadRcpTbl;;;
;RunSetRcpTbl;;;
;WriteNaFile;;;
;WriteRCBWithPageCount;;;
;ProcessQueue;;PostPaginationQueue;
;WriteOutput;;;
;CreateRecordList;;
;BatchByPageCount;;
;PaginateAndPropogate;;;

<Base Image Rules>
;StandardImageProc;3;Always the 1st image level rule;

<Base Field Rules>
;StandardFieldProc;4;Always the 1st field level rule;

```

Step 2 - Using the AFGJOB2.JDT file



The second execution of GenData uses the AFGJOB2.JDT file. This JDT file uses the base and form set rules shown in this example to process the intermediate print files.

```

<Base Rules>
;InitPrint;;;
;InitPageBatchedJob;;;

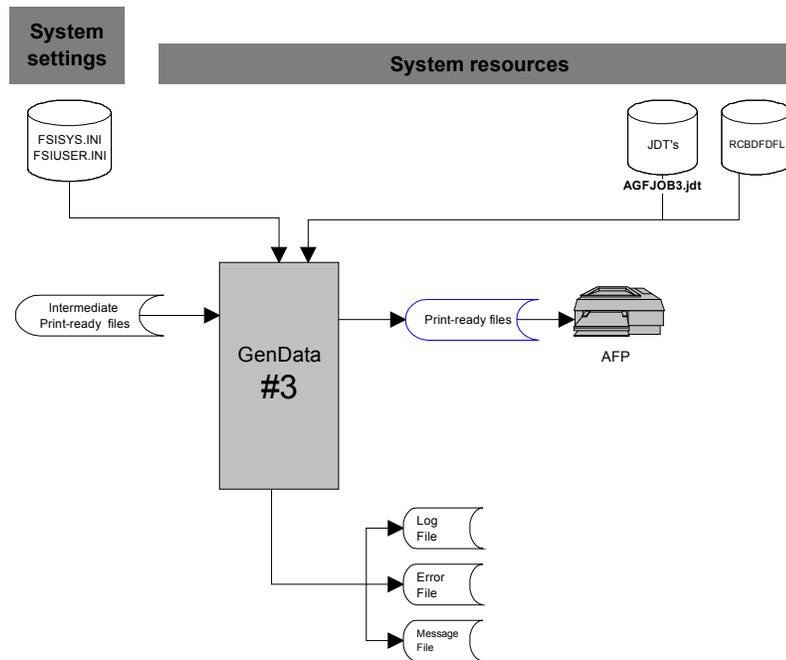
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----
;SetErrHdr;1;***: BillPrint Data Generation (Base) ;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Company Name: ***Company***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: SubCompany:***SubCompany***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Account #: ***AC-KY-BA***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----

```

```
<Base Form Set Rules>
;GetRCBRec;;;
;ProcessRecord;;;
;PrintData;;;

<Base Image Rules>
;ForceNoImages;;;
```

Step 3 - Using the AFGJOB3.JDT file



The third execution of GenData uses the AFGJOB3.JDT file. This JDT file uses base and form set rules shown in this example to merge data intermediate print-ready files into a print-ready file for an AFP printer.

```
<Base Rules>
;RULStandardJobProc;;;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: BillPrint Data Generation (Base);
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Company Name:   ***Company***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: SubCompany:    ***SubCompany***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***: Account #:     ***AC-KY-BA***;
;SetErrHdr;1;***:-----;
;InitMerge;;;

<Base Form Set Rules>
;MergeAFP;;;

<Base Image Rules>
;ForceNoImages;;;
```

## SPLITTING RECIPIENT BATCH PRINT STREAMS

The GenPrint program and the PrintFormset rule (when running in single-step mode) are designed to produce one print stream output file for each recipient batch. This print stream output file includes all of the transactions in the recipient batch.

Sometimes, however, you may want to split the print stream output into multiple print stream output files. For instance, you can use this feature to split your batches into files that reflect the amount of paper you can load into your printer at one time.

You can use DAL scripts to set up criteria for splitting the output file to reflect almost any scenario. For example, it can be based on a certain number of transactions, a maximum number of sheets of paper, or on changes in variables in the recipient batch.

---

**NOTE:** Some types of print streams require one file per transaction, such as RTF, PDF, and HTML. The typical way of handling this is via the multi-file print callback method, but this feature provides an alternate method which gives you greater control over the naming of the output file.

---

To do this you use the PrintFormset rule and these DAL functions:

- DeviceName
- SetDeviceName
- BreakBatch
- UniqueString

This rule and these DAL functions let you:

- Split recipient batches into multiple print stream files
- Assign names to those print stream files

For example, here are some things you can do:

### Splitting batches by sheet count

You can use these functions to split a batch based on the sheet count during the GenPrint process. Once a batch reaches a certain number of sheets, you can tell the system to:

- Finish processing the current transaction
- End the current print file. (If you are using a post-transaction or post batch banner page, it will print before the file is closed.)
- Repeat this process when the next print file reaches the specified number of sheets

You can use virtually any logic to decide when to break the batch. For instance, to break based on sheet count, use the TotalSheets function to get the number of sheets to maintain a counter across the transactions.

---

**NOTE:** Be sure to reset the sheet count variable in the pre-batch banner DAL script.

---

Here is an example of DAL script logic that might appear in a post-transaction banner DAL script:

```
IF TotalSheets() > 16000
  #COUNTER += 1
  CurFile = DeviceName()
  Drive = FileDrive(CurFile)
  Path = FilePath(CurFile)
  Ext = FileExt(CurFile)
  RecipBatch = RecipBatch()
  NewFile = FullFileName(Drive, Path, RecipBatch & #COUNTER, Ext)
  SetDeviceName(NewFile)
  BreakBatch()
END
```

---

**NOTE:** See [Using DAL to Manipulate File Names on page 72](#) for information on using DAL functions to manipulate file names.

---

### Creating PDF output

You can also modify the above script to unconditionally break the batch after each transaction. Assuming you used the SetDeviceName function to assign a proper file name, each recipient printed would receive a separate output file.

This is particularly useful for output types such as PDF, which require a separate file for each transaction.

---

**NOTE:** You can also use the multi-file print callback method in GenPrint to get separate files. Similarly, the single-step processing mode currently uses this INI option:

```
< PrintFormset >
  MultiFilePrint = Yes
```

to tell the system to generate separate files for each transaction. Single-step mode automatically generates a unique file name and offers no way to override that name. By using the BreakBatch and SetDeviceName functions, however, you can control the names assigned to the files in single-step mode. To emulate the action of the current code, use the UniqueString function.

---

### DAL functions

Here is a summary of the DAL functions you would use. Keep in mind...

- These print drivers are supported: PCL5, PCL6, PST, MET, AFP, PDF, HTML, and RTF.
- These print drivers *are not* supported: EPT, MDR, and GDI.
- All platforms are supported, but note that while UniqueString is supported on MVS, MVS does not support long file names.
- Producing PDF files on MVS requires a separate license. Contact your Skywire Software sales representative for more information.
- Both multi-step and single-step processing are supported.

The only DAL function actually involved in splitting the print stream is BreakBatch. The others make it easier to implement this functionality. For example, since you need to name the new print stream, you use the SetDeviceName procedure. To find the name of the current device, you use the DeviceName function. If you need to create unique file names, you can use the UniqueString function.

---

**NOTE:** While you can call all of these DAL functions in the Rules Processor or Entry, the BreakBatch and SetDeviceName functions are not applicable in Entry since it does not use the batch printing engine. The other functions, DeviceName and UniqueString, are applicable to both Entry and the Rules Processor.

---

### DeviceName

Use this function to return the current output device file name, such as the name of the current print stream output file.

**Syntax** DeviceName()

### SetDeviceName

Use this procedure to set a new output device file name which will be used the next time the output device is opened, assuming nothing overrides the name prior to that.

**Syntax** SetDeviceName(Device)

### BreakBatch

Use this procedure to tell the Rules Processor to break the output print stream file for the current recipient batch after processing the current recipient, including post transaction banner processing.

**Syntax** BreakBatch()

The procedure is typically called in the transaction banner DAL script. You must use the SetDeviceName function to specify a new device name. Otherwise, the new file has the same name as the old file and overwrites its contents.

After the GenPrint program finishes processing the current transaction, it closes the current output device file. This includes executing any post-batch banner processes. It then continues processing the recipient batch.

If you have assigned a new output device file name using the SetDeviceName function, the system will create and start writing to a new print stream file with that name. The best place to call the BreakBatch function is in the post-transaction banner DAL script.

## UniqueString

Use this function to return a 45-character globally unique string.

### Syntax UniqueString()

Here is an example:

```
DataPath = GetINIString(, "Data", "DataPath")
Drive = FileDrive(DataPath)
Path = FilePath(DataPath)
UniqueID = UniqueString()
Outputname = FullFileName(Drive, Path, UniqueID, ".PDF")
SetDeviceName(Outputname)
```

## USING DAL TO MANIPULATE FILE NAMES

Since you can use DAL functions to read tables and to set device names for output print stream files, this feature further extends DAL functionality by letting you manipulate file names.

For instance, you can get the components of a file name (drive, path, name, and extension) and combine those into a full file name. For example, for computers running Windows file names look like this:



For computers running OS/390, file names look like this:



In this OS/390 example, the drive and extension are omitted, because they are not applicable on OS/390 and the parentheses enclosing *member* are part of the path.

To do this you use these DAL functions:

- FileDrive
- FilePath
- FileName
- FileExt
- FullFileName

All platforms are supported and both the Rules Processor and the Entry system are supported.

Each platform will use platform specific logic to extract or assemble the components. For example, UNIX uses forward slashes and OS390 uses DD names or partitioned dataset names for the *path* and member names for *name*.

Here are descriptions of these functions:

### FileDrive

Use this function to get the drive component of a file name.

**Syntax** FileDrive("FullFileName")

This function accepts a string containing a fully qualified file name, returns a string that contains the drive component of that file name.

Here is an example:

```
MYDRIVE = FileDrive("d:\mypath\myfile.ext")
```

In this example, MYDRIVE would contain:

*"d:"*

### FilePath

Use this function to get the path component of a file name.

**Syntax** FilePath("FullFileName")

This function accepts a string containing a fully qualified file name, returns a string that contains the path component of that file name.

Here is an example:

```
MYPATH = FilePath("d:\mypath\myfile.ext")
```

In this example, MYPATH would contain:

*"\mypath\"*

### FileName

Use this function to get the name component of a file name.

**Syntax** FileName("FullFileName")

This function accepts a string containing a fully qualified file name, returns a string that contains the name component of that file name.

Here is an example:

```
MYNAME = FileName("d:\mypath\myfile.ext")
```

In this example, MYNAME would contain:

*"myfile"*

### FileExt

Use this function to get the extension component of a file name.

**Syntax** FileExt("FullFileName")

This function accepts a string containing a fully qualified file name, returns a string that contains the extension component of that file name.

Here is an example:

```
MYEXT = FileExt("d:\mypath\myfile.ext")
```

In this example MYEXT would contain:

*“.ext”*

## FullFileName

Use this function to make the full file name.

**Syntax** FullFileName(“Drive”,“Path”,“Name”,“Ext”)

This function accepts a string containing the drive, path, name, and extension components of a fully qualified file name, assembles them, and returns a string that contains the full file name.

Here is an example:

```
MYFILENAME = FullFileName("d:", "\mypath\","myfile", ".ext")
```

In this example, MYFILENAME would contain:

*“d:\mypath\myfile.ext”*

---

**NOTE:** If, in this example, *\mypath* had no trailing slash, the FullFileName function would have added it for you.

---

Here is an OS/390 example:

```
FullFileName(,"DD:DEFLIB()", "MEMBER")
```

In this example, the result would be:

*DD:DEFLIB(MEMBER)*

## CONTROLLING WIP FIELD ASSIGNMENTS

You can use options in the Trigger2WIP control group to set almost all of the WIP record fields for each transaction.

**NOTE:** Do not try to set the ModifyTime, InUse, or the FormSetID fields of the WIP record. The ModifyTime field is assigned by the system when a WIP record is added or updated. If you need to save a date and time for the transaction, store that information in the CreateTime field, using the hextime X format for the destination as shown in one of the examples.

The InUse field is used internally to prevent multiple people from editing the same transaction. Let the system manage this column.

The FormSetID is assigned by the system when a new WIP transaction is created. Let the system handle this.

The Trigger2WIP control group defines which recipient batch (RCB) transaction fields from the manual batch (those kicked to WIP) are mapped to the corresponding WIP transaction record fields.

The options under the Trigger2WIP control group define the mappings as shown here:

The contents of this field...      < Trigger2WIP >      ...is copied into this field

```

RCBField 1 = WIPField 1
RCBField 2 = WIPField 2
...

```

*RCBField* represents one of the fields defined by the batch transaction record definition (RCBDFDL.DFD). *WIPField* represents a field defined in the WIP database.

**NOTE:** There may be an external WIP.DFD file that identifies the fields in a WIP record. An external DFD file is not required if you are using the default WIP database layout.

Note, although the normal mapping technique is to name a RCB field on the left side, the left side can name any defined GVM (global variable member). Typically, the only GVMs that exist during GenWIP processing are those defined in the RCB DFD file, but custom applications or single-step WIP systems may have additional GVMs.

The changes in this release support this INI definition and also let you convert data or define a constant value you want to map to a WIP field. For a data conversion, define your INI options as shown here:

```

< Trigger2WIP >
RCBField = WIPField; input format ; output format;

```

The conversion information must appear on the right side of the INI option, after the WIPField name definition. Separate it from the named variable with a semicolon. Here is an example:

```
RunDate = CREATETIME;DD4;X
```

The first semicolon denotes the input format of the data. The second separates the desired output format. In this example, the input format of *DD4* means the source data is a date field in the format *D4*, which is *YYYYMMDD*.

The output format *X* indicates you want to convert the date value to the internal HEXTIME format used in the WIP CreateTime field.

---

**NOTE:** For more information selecting from the pre-defined date formats or defining your own, see the [Rules Reference](#).

---

Although conversions are often used to change date formats, you can also use them to do additional formatting. The system supports a simple C style sprintf (%s) and constant text formatting, like %s, %10.10s, %-38.38s, and so on. The system does not support any of the other C style format flags that assume non-text data or asterisk (variable width) designations.

Here is an example:

```
EFFVALUE = APPData; ;(%%s%%)
```

Suppose in this example, that EFFVALUE contains the text *10*, the resulting value mapped into the APPData field will read (*10%*).

---

**NOTE:** You must use two percent signs (%%) to represent a single percent sign in the output. The system only supports a string %s type format. It does not support numeric data formats of any type.

---

Normally, the left side of the INI option names a field from the RCB file definition. You can also enter *NULL* as a keyword to mean there is no corresponding RCB data field to associate with the WIP field. This lets you assign the constant data to the WIP field, as shown here:

```
NULL = DESC; ;ABC123 HERE WE GO
```

This example shows how to assign the constant text *ABC123 HERE WE GO* into the DESC field of the WIP record. NULL indicates there is no source variable to associate with this destination field.

You can also use INI built-in functions to provide a constant value to map to the field. For example:

```
NULL = CURRUSER; ;~GETENV USERNAME
```

INI built-in functions are preceded with a tilde (~). This example executes the GETENV built-in INI function, which gets the environment variable USERNAME. If you assume the variable contained the text *TOM*, the WIP variable CURRUSER would be assigned *TOM* after execution of the built-in function.

These options show the defaults used if the Trigger2WIP control group does not override the variables:

```
< AFG2WIP >  
  StatusCode = WIP  
  RecordType = NEW  
  UserID     = DOCUCORP
```

The `StatusCode` option defines which INI option in the `Status_CD` control group to use as the default WIP StatusCD field. Suppose you have the following `Status_CD` control group defined.

```
< Status_CD
  WIP           =W
  Assign        =A
  Quote         =Q
  BatchPrint    =W
  Archive       =AR
  Printed       =P
```

This means a *W* would be assigned to the WIP StatusCD field (usually meaning a normal WIP transaction).

The `RecordType` option defines which INI option to locate in the `Record_Type` control group as the default setting for WIP RecType. Suppose you have these options defined:

```
< Record_Type >
  New          =00
  Assign       =01
  Partial      =02
```

*New* is the normal default for the AFG2WIP control group and would therefore map *oo* into the WIP RecType field.

The `UserID` option defines which user should be assigned the WIP transactions in the `CURRUSER` field. Unless this option is changed or the `CURRUSER` field assigned from the `Trigger2WIP` control group, the system defaults this value to `DOCUCORP`. `DOCUCORP` is one of the default users created in a default user database.

You would normally want to add an option to the AFG2WIP control group to name a valid user in your company, otherwise, users will have to log in as `DOCUCORP` and reassign the WIP to valid users later.

## MULTI-MAIL PROCESSING

Multi-mail processing groups the transactions with the same multi-mail code into selected print batches based on the number of pages defined in the PageRange INI option. Multi-mail can only be handled as a 2-up process. In the INI example below, all transactions with the same multi mail will be stored in a batch category:

```
batch1-less than five pages
batch2-five to nine pages
batch3-10 or more pages
```

The MM\_FIELD option in the TRN\_Field control group identifies position, length, type of data and where the multi-mail code is located in the transaction record.

---

**NOTE:** The parameter has been named MM\_FIELD in the above explanation, however it can be given any name.

---

The BatchByPageCount rule in the AFGJOB.JDT file identifies the name in the TRN\_Field control group, as shown here:

```
BatchByPageCount ; MMFIELD=MM_FIELD;
```

### Changing the RCPDFDFL.DAT and TRNDFDFL.DAT Files

You must make the following changes to the RCPDFDFL.DAT and TRNDFDFL.DAT files for multi-mail processing:

```
< Fields >
:::
FIELD:MMField

< FIELD:MMField >
INT_Type      = CHAR_ARRAY
INT_Length    = 7
EXT_Type      = CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM
EXT_Length    = 6
Key           = N
Required      = N
```

## Setting Up the FSISYS.INI File for Multi-mail Processing

Here is an example of how the relevant control groups and options in your FSISYS.INI file should look:

```
< Print_Batches >
  P_Batch1      = .\data\Batch1
  P_Batch2      = .\data\Batch2
  P_Batch3      = .\data\Batch3
  Error         = .\data\Error
  Manual        = .\data\Manual
< P_Batch1 >
  Printer        = Batch1_PTR_1
  Printer        = Batch1_PTR_2
  FinalPrinter   = Batch1_PTR_F
  PageRange      = ,4          (controls which batch is used)
  TwoUpStart     = L
< P_Batch2 >
  Printer        = Batch2_PTR_1
  Printer        = Batch2_PTR_2
  FinalPrinter   = Batch2_PTR_F
  PageRange      = 5,9        (controls which batch is used)
  TwoUpStart     = L
< P_Batch3 >
  Printer        = Batch3_PTR_1
  Printer        = Batch3_PTR_2
  FinalPrinter   = Batch3_PTR_F
  PageRange      = 10,99     (controls which batch is used)
  TwoUpStart     = L
< TRN_FIELDS >
  ...
  MM_Field       = 326,6,N    (defines where the multi-mail code
                             is found in each transaction)
```

The order of the page output on the final print file will produce 2-up printing depending on how many intermediate printer files are specified. The output will look as follows:

```
< P_Batch2 >
  Printer        = Batch2_PTR_1  intermediate printer file
  Printer        = Batch2_PTR_2  intermediate printer file
  FinalPrinter   = Batch2_PTR_F  intermediate printer file
  PageRange      = 5,9
  TwoUpStart     = L

transaction #1 mmcode 111 page 1transaction n mmcode 555 page 1
transaction #1 mmcode 111 page 2transaction n mmcode 555 page 2
transaction #1 mmcode 111 page ntransaction n mmcode 555 page 3
transaction #2 mmcode 126 page 1transaction n mmcode 555 page 4
transaction #2 mmcode 126 page 2transaction n mmcode 555 page 5
transaction #2 mmcode 126 page ntransaction n mmcode 555 page n
transaction #3 mmcode 222 page 1transaction x mmcode 865 page 1
transaction #3 mmcode 222 page 1transaction x mmcode 865 page 2
transaction #3 mmcode 222 page ntransaction x mmcode 865 page n
```

If you define only one printer and a final printer for a batch, the 2-up printing would look as follows:

```
< P_Batch2 >
  Printer           = Batch2_PTR_1
  FinalPrinter     = Batch2_PTR_F
  PageRange        = 5,9
  TwoUpStart       = L

transaction #1 mmcode 111 page 1transaction # 1 mmcode 111 page 2
transaction #1 mmcode 111 page 3transaction # 1 mmcode 111 page 4
transaction #1 mmcode 111 page ntransaction # 2 mmcode 555 page 1
transaction #2 mmcode 555 page 2transaction # 2 mmcode 555 page 3
transaction #2 mmcode 555 page 4transaction # 2 mmcode 555 page n
transaction #3 mmcode 126 page 1transaction # 3 mmcode 126 page 2
transaction #3 mmcode 126 page 2transaction # 3 mmcode 126 page n
transaction #4 mmcode 222 page 1transaction # 4 mmcode 222 page 2
```

## ADDING AND REMOVING PAGES

You can add and remove blank pages or a FAP file to a form set. Typically, you would add these pages so each printed page has a front and back.

This lets you change a simplex or mixed plex form set into a fully duplexed form set. For instance, you can use this feature to create PDF files for mixed plex form sets that print in a similar fashion to printers that support mixed plex.

You can access this functionality several ways:

- Using custom code
- Using DAL scripts
- Using IDS rules (version 1.6 and higher)

---

**NOTE:** Typically, you use this feature to add blank pages just before the print step. These additional pages are not actually part of the saved document.

If, however, if you added the blank pages before the batch steps that save document information to the NA/POL files, the blank pages would become a permanent part of the document layout.

---

## USING CUSTOM CODE

### Adding pages

Use this API to call custom code to add blank pages:

```
DWORD _VMMAPI FAPAddBlankPages(
    VMMHANDLE objectH, /* form set or form handle */
    char FAR * imagename) /* if NULL, "Blank Page" */
```

If the image name is NULL, a blank page is created when a dummy page is needed. If the image name is not NULL, the image name is loaded when a dummy page is needed. Omit the path and file extension when you enter *imagename*.

### Removing pages

Use this API to call custom code to remove blank pages:

```
DWORD _VMMAPI FAPDelBlankPages(VMMHANDLE objectH)
/* formset or form handle */
```

## USING DAL SCRIPTS

### Adding pages

Use this DAL function to add blank pages:

```
AddBlankPages()
```

or

```
AddBlankPages('FAPFile')
```

For example, you can use this function with the banner processing feature. First, specify a DAL script that runs at the start of each transaction. The DAL script calls the `AddBlankPages` function. This tells the system to convert each transaction to a fully duplexed form set with blank pages added as needed.

Here is an example of the INI settings you would need:

```
< Printer >
  EnableTransBanner      = True
  TransBannerBeginScript = PreBatch
< DALLibraries >
  Lib                    = BANNER
```

Here is an example of the BANNER.DAL script:

```
BeginSub PreBatch
AddBlankPages()
EndSub
```

## Removing pages

Use this DAL function to remove a page from a form set:

```
DelBlankPages()
```

For example, you can use this function with the banner processing feature. First, specify a DAL script that runs at the start of each transaction. The DAL script calls the `DelBlankPages` function. This tells the system to remove blank pages from each transaction.

```
< Printer >
  EnableTransBanner      = True
  TransBannerBeginScript = PreBatch
< DALLibraries >
  Lib                    = BANNER
```

Here is an example of the BANNER.DAL script:

```
BeginSub PreBatch
DelBlankPages()
EndSub
```

## USING IDS

For more information on the rules listed below see [Using the Documaker Bridge](#).

### Adding pages

Use this IDS rule to add blank pages:

```
function = dpros2->DPRAddBlankPages
```

This IDS rule assumes the form set being used has been loaded by the Documaker Bridge into the DSI variable, DPRFORMSET. If you are using this rule with a different bridge, you may need to specify a different DSI variable that contains the form set.

To specify a FAP file to use for the dummy pages, add the name of that FAP file after the form set variable name when you specify the IDS rule. Here is an example:

```
function = dpros2->DPRAddBlankPages,DPRFORMSET,FAPFile
```

### Removing pages

Use this IDS rule to remove blank pages:

```
function = dpros2->DPRDelBlankPages
```

This IDS rule assumes that the form set has been loaded by the Documaker Bridge into the DSI variable, DPRFORMSET. If you are using this rule with a different bridge, you may need to specify a different DSI variable.

To specify the FAP file being used for dummy pages, add the FAP file name after the form set variable name when you specify the IDS rule. Omit the path and extension. Here is an example:

```
function = dpros2->DPRAddBlankPages,MTCFORMSET
```

## ADDING INDEXES AND TABLES OF CONTENTS

Using Image Editor, Docucreate users can insert tables of contents, lists of figures or indexes to their form sets. This makes it easier for users to navigate through the various forms.

To use this feature, all images must be loaded *before* the print operation executes. Otherwise, the system will not have all the content available and will not be able to create a complete table of contents, list of figures, or index. Since some print drivers do not force the loading of all images until necessary, this means you may have to include an additional INI option.

For Documaker Server (GenPrint), you would include this option:

```
< RunMode >  
  DownloadFAP = Yes
```

## RUN-TIME OPTIONS

The system offers several ways you can customize the way it runs. The following topics discuss these options.

### GENDATA COMMAND LINE OPTIONS

The GenData program accepts several command line options. Command line options are prefixed with either a backslash (/) or a dash (-). Here is an example:

```
c:\fap\mstrres\rpex1\gendaw32 /ini=my.ini
```

The command line options are explained below:

Option	Description
CNT	Overrides the number of transactions specified in the CheckCount option in the Restart control group. This count specifies the frequency of updating offsets for GenData restart processing.
INI	Tells the program to use the specified FSIUSER.INI file instead of the one in the current directory.
JDT	Tells the program to use the specified AFGJOB.JDT file instead of the one defined in the FSIUSER.INI or FSISYS.INI files.
L	Writes the names of the INI files and options the program uses in the log file.
?	Displays the command line options for the program.

### GENPRINT COMMAND LINE OPTIONS

The GenPrint program accepts several command line options. Command line options begin with either a backslash (/) or a dash (-). Here is an example:

```
c:\fap\mstrres\rpex1\genptw32 /ini=my.ini
```

The command line options are explained below:

Option	Description
INI	Tells the program to use the specified FSIUSER.INI file instead of the one in the current directory.
L	Writes the names of the INI files and options the program uses in the log file.
?	Displays the command line options for the program.

## GENTRN COMMAND LINE OPTIONS

The GenTrn program accepts several command line options. Command line options are prefixed with either a backslash (/) or a dash (-). Here is an example:

```
c:\fap\mstrres\rpex1\genTnw32 /ini=my.ini
```

The command line options are explained below:

Option	Description
B	Tells the program to build only the transaction file.
F	Tells the program to build only the filter extract file.
FB	Tells the program to build only the filter extract and transaction files.
INI	Tells the program to use the specified FSIUSER.INI file instead of the one in the current directory.
L	Writes the names of the INI files and options the program uses in the log file.
?	Displays the command line options for the program.

## DEBUGGING OPTIONS

You can use the following options in the Debug\_Switches control group to turn on or off debugging options.

```
< Debug_Switches >  
  Debug_If_Rule           = Yes  
  Enable_Debug_Options    = Yes  
  Show_Debug_Options      = Yes  
  LoadListFromTable      = Yes
```

Option	Description
Debug_If_Rule	Set to Yes if you want to turn on the debug options for the IF and DAL rules. The system places the debug data in the LOGFILE.DAT file. Setting this option to Yes slows performance.
Enable_Debug_Options	Set this option to Yes to turn on all debug options.
Show_Debug_Options	Set this option to Yes to make the GEN_DEBUG_DebugSwitchSet function log the state (on or off) of all debug options.
LoadListFromTable	Set this option to Yes to make the Gen_TabUtil_LoadListFromTable function log the contents of any ASCII table it loads.

### Noting font IDs of zero

You can use the CheckZeroFontID option to tell the system to display a warning or error message if the field being processed contains a font ID equal to zero (0).

Typically, this means no font was assigned during the mapping. Since the merging of FAP and DDT files in version 11.0, the field definition should be complete at the time of processing. So if you encounter a field with no font ID assigned, it probably means some unusual situation has occurred — like the field was defined via an import method but not actually defined on the FAP file where it resides.

Here is an example of the CheckZeroFontID option:

```
< RunMode>
  CheckZeroFontID =
```

Option	Description
CheckZeroFontID	<p>Enter Yes (or Error) to have the system to issue an error message if it encounters a font ID set to zero (0). If you enter Yes (or Error) and the system encounters a font ID of zero, you get a message similar to this:</p> <pre>DM30046: Error: Field &lt; FLDNAME &gt; on Image &lt; IMGNAME &gt; has Font ID = 0. The field may have been included incorrectly or the FAP has not been updated to include the field's definition.</pre> <p>Enter Warn if you want the system to issue a warning message if it encounters a font ID set to zero. If you enter Warn and the system encounters a font ID of zero, you will get a message similar to this:</p> <pre>DM30046: Warning: Field &lt; FLDNAME &gt; on Image &lt; IMGNAME &gt; has Font ID = 0. The field may have been included incorrectly or the FAP has not been updated to include the field's definition.</pre> <p>In either message, <i>FLDNAME</i> and <i>IMGNAME</i> are reflect the appropriate field name and image name.</p> <p>The default is No, which means nothing is checked and no message is issued.</p>

## GROUPING PRINT BATCHES

If you want to group all of your print batches (BCH files) in one file, follow these steps:

- 1 Add two options to the FSISYS.INI file. In the RunMode control group, set the AliasPrintBatches option to Yes. In the Data control group, add the BatchTable option. Set this option as shown below:

```
BatchTable = <tablename>
```

If you omit the path, the system uses your entry in the DataPath option of the Data control group.

- 2 Add a key to the RCBDFDFL.DFD file. In the Fields control group, add the following option:

```
FieldName = BatchName
```

Add the option exactly as shown here. Do not substitute the desired batch name, here or in any of the following steps.

- 3 Add a corresponding FIELD:BatchName control group. Note that the lengths you specify in this group must be sufficient to hold the batch name (the option side of the equations in the Print\_Batches control group). In the Keys control group, add the following option:

```
Key = BatchName
```

and add a corresponding KEY:BatchName control group, with these options:

```
FieldList = BatchName  
Expression = BatchName
```

If you are using ASCII for the print batch, after you run the GenData program you must sort the batch file using the BatchName field as the key. If you are using xBase or DB2, you should be able to run the GenPrint program without this step.

---

**NOTE:** If you are using ASCII for the print batches, be sure to place the BatchName field directly before the NA\_Offset field in the RCBDFDFL.DFD file. And when sorting, use the BatchName and NA\_Offset fields together as the key.

This will help make sure the print output is identical to that produced with multiple batches. If you are using xBase or DB2, you do not need these additional instructions.

---

## USING INI BUILT-IN FUNCTIONS

You can use these INI built-in functions when running the system:

- ~GetEnv
- ~Platform
- ~OS
- ~DALRUN
- ~DALVAR
- ~Encrypted
- ~ProcessID
- ~WIPField

In addition, there are several functions you can use to retrieve information from WIP records. See [Accessing WIP Fields on page 93](#) for more information.

### ~GetEnv

Here are examples which show how you can use the GetEnv function.

```
< MasterResource >
  DefLib = ~Getenv MYDRIVE \mstres\deflib\
```

This INI function recognizes a value that begins with a tilde (~). It then parses out the next word and looks to see if a built-in function has been registered with that name, such as *getenv* in the above example.

Once found, the function is called. It then parses the first word to get the environment variable, such as *MYDRIVE*. Leave a space before and after the environment variable.

Finally, the function puts together the result of the environment data with the remainder of the data line, as in *\mstres\deflib\*.

So, if *MYDRIVE=G:\APPS* you would see *G:\APPS\mstres\deflib\*.

---

**NOTE:** Before executing an application whose INI contains the GetEnv function, you must initialize the operating system environment variables. For Windows 32-bit, you enter on a command line:

```
Set EnvironmentVariable = Value
```

Here are some examples:

```
Set MyDrive=G:\APPS
Set UserID=MVF
```

Be sure to leave a space before and after the environment variable.

---

For this example, assume the environment contains *USERID=(INITIALS)* and the INI contains:

```
< SignOn >
  UserID = ~GetEnv USERID
```

The logon process picks up your user ID from an environment variable.

This method results in a very generic built-in function that does not assume what the data represents. However, if you were using it to build file names, the environment variables would have to be consistent in terms of whether they contained the final backslash or not. In the above example, *MYDRIVE=G:\APPS\* would produce an invalid path because a double backslash would occur.

### ~Platform

Use the ~Platform function to create multi-platform INI files. The possible return values are: *PC*, and *MVS*. This lets you set up INI control groups and options that work on either a PC or MVS platform. When the system executes this function, it replaces ~Platform with either *PC* or *MVS*, depending on the platform. Here is an example:

```
< Print_Batches >
  P_Batch1   = < Config:~Platform > P_Batch1
  P_Batch2   = < Config:~Platform > P_Batch2
  P_Batch3   = < Config:~Platform > P_Batch3
  Error      = < Config:~Platform > Error
  Manual     = < Config:~Platform > Manual
< CONFIG:PC >
  P_Batch1   = .\data\Batch1
  P_Batch2   = .\data\Batch2
  P_Batch3   = .\data\Batch3
  Error      = .\data\Error
  Manual     = .\data\Manual
< CONFIG:MVS >
  P_Batch1   = DD:Batch1
  P_Batch2   = DD:Batch2
  P_Batch3   = DD:Batch3
  Error      = DD:Error
  Manual     = DD:Manual
```

---

**NOTE:** You can also use the File option in the INIFiles control group to load multiple INI files. Place this control group and option in your FSIUSER.INI file. Here is an example:

```
< INIFiles >
  File = PC.INI
  File = MVS.INI
```

You can assign any name as long as you include the *INI* extension. You can have as many File options as needed. You can customize these files based on the platform you are using.

---

### ~OS

Use ~OS function to determine the current operating system environment. The possible return values are: *WIN32*, *HPUX*, *AIX*, *MVS*, *Sun*, and *OS1100*.

Here is an example of the functions usage in the INI file. Be sure to include the space after ~OS.

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  BindFile = <DB2:~OS > bindfile =
< DB2:WIN32 >
  BindFile = w32bin\DB2LIB.BND
```

This setup allows for the different bindfiles being specified for different operating systems — compare with the ~Platform function which returns *PC* for *Win32*.

~DALRUN  
~DALVAR

Use the DALRUN and DALVAR built-in functions to execute DAL scripts or get DAL variable information you can use to complete INI options. For instance, you can use this to map unique recipient information into batch records.

These functions are automatically registered when DAL is initialized. Several programs can initialize DAL, such as the GenData and GenPrint programs, the AFEMAIN program (including RACLIB/RACCO), Image Editor, and various utilities such as ARCRET, ARCSPLIT, and DALRUN.

---

**NOTE:** If you try to use these functions in systems that do not initialize DAL, an incorrect INI value is returned.

---

Here is an example:

```
< INIGroup >
  Option1 = ~DALRUN MY.DAL
  Option2 = ~DALVAL XYZ_VAL
```

If the program requests Option1, the script MY.DAL is executed and the resulting option is assigned.

If the program requests Option2, the DAL variable XYZ\_VAL is located and its contents are assigned to the INI option.

~Encrypted

Use this built-in function to place encrypted values in an INI file. To get the encrypted value, you can execute the CRYRU utility. Here is an example of how you could use this utility on Windows:

```
cryruw32.exe user1
```

The result would be something like this:

```
Encrypted string (2yz76tCkk0BRiPqLJLG00)
```

You then paste the value (*2yz76tCkk0BRiPqLJLGoo*) into an INI file and use the ~ENCRYPTED INI function, as shown in this example:

```
< SignOn >
  UserID = ~ENCRYPTED 2yz76tCkk0BRiPqLJLG00
```

When Documaker Server or IDS runs and gets the value of the UserID option in the SignOn control group, it will get the real value *USER1*.

---

**NOTE:** The encryption method used is proprietary.

---

Keep in mind these limitations:

- Only Windows and UNIX platforms are supported.
- This feature has nothing to do with secure PDF or PDF encryption.
- Almost any INI option can be encrypted.

**~ProcessID** The ProcessID INI built-in function (~ProcessID) provides separate trace files for different instances of Documaker Server/Documaker Bridge. This makes it easier to find performance problems and to separate multiple instances.

Here is an example of how you would set up your INI files in Documaker Server or Documaker Bridge to use the ProcessID built-in INI function:

```
< Data >  
TraceFile = dprtrc~PROCESSID .log
```

Here is an example of an output trace file:

```
1. Tue May 25 21:27:26.489 2006 pid=00003896 SQInstallHandler: Info  
from SQLGetInfo, DBName=<>, DBMS=<Oracle>, DBMS Version=<09.02.0010>  
2. Tue May 25 21:27:26.489 2006 pid=00003896 SQInstallHandler: Info  
from SQLGetInfo, DriverName=<SQORA32.DLL>, DriverVer=<09.02.0000>,  
DriverODBCVer=<03.51>  
3. Tue May 25 21:27:26.677 2006 pid=00003896 SQHandler (LOCATEREC):  
ENTER  
4. Tue May 25 21:27:26.677 2006 pid=00003896 SQBindParamData: calling  
_SQLBindParameter, len = <10>, <JOB_ID> = <DEF_JOB_ID>  
5. Tue May 25 21:27:26.677 2006 pid=00003896 select  
STATUS, JOB_ID, COMM_RECS, LASTREC from SJSRPX1_ORA_RESTART where  
JOB_ID = ?  
6. Tue May 25 21:27:26.693 2006 pid=00003896 SQHandler (LOCATEREC):  
SQLocate returned a row.
```

**~WIPField** Use this built-in INI function to tell the system to substitute a value in the INI file with a value from the WIP record. This works with either Documaker Workstation (AFEMAIN) or the WIPedit plug-in.

For example, if you want the UserDict value to equal the value for ORIGUSER in the current WIP record, you would set up the following option:

```
< Spell >
  UserDict = ~WIPFIELD ORIGUSER
```

## ACCESSING WIP FIELDS

You can access most standard WIP fields using the following built-in INI functions. For instance, if you want to create an export file and a PDF file and have the names for these files be identical except for the extension, you could use these function to create a unique name for a file that does not depend on the current time, but rather on a time that does not change, such as the create or modify time.

Function	Returns the
~Key1	WIP Key1 field
~Key2	WIP Key2 field
~KeyID	WIP KeyID field
~ORIGUSER	Original WIP User ID field (the ID used to create the WIP)
~CREATETIME	WIP Create Time field. You can format this option.
~MODIFYTIME	WIP Modify Time field. You can format this option.
~ORIGFSID	Original WIP form set ID. Keep in mind when routing messages, the original form set ID is not necessarily the same as the current form set ID.
~TRANCODE	WIP Transaction Code field.
~DESC	WIP Description field.
~DATE	The current date value.
~USERID	Currently logged in user ID.
~FIELD	A field value from the form set.

**NOTE:** You can access all of the WIP fields via DAL using the WIPFld function. And, since DAL can be accessed via the ~DALRUN function (see [page 91](#)), you have another method you can use to get those fields.

The system retrieves the Modify Time and Create Time from the WIP record. You can use the ~DATE function to get the current date value. You can also include a parameter to tell the system to format the date.

Keep in mind that if you are trying to use the value as part of a file name, you should only include characters that are valid in file names.

Here is an example of how to specify a date format:

```
~MODIFYTIME ; %m-%d-%Y;
```

Semicolons (;) begin and end the string that defines the date format. If you omit a semicolon, you get the hexadecimal value of the date for ~MODIFYTIME and ~CREATETIME. For the ~DATE function, you get the format specified by the DateFormat option in the Formats control group. This option defaults to:

```
%m/%d/%y
```

If you include the semicolon, but omit the format information after the semicolon, for ~MODIFYTIME and ~CREATETIME you get the format specified by the DateFormat option in the Formats control group. This option defaults to:

```
%m/%d/%y.
```

## Formatting arguments

Format arguments consists of one or more codes. Begin each code with a percent sign (%). Characters that do not begin with a percent sign are copied unchanged to the output buffer.

Any character following a percent sign that is not recognized as a format code is copied to the destination—so you can enter %% to include a percent sign in the resulting output string.

You can choose from these format codes:

Code	Description
%d	Day of month as decimal number (01 - 31)
%H	Hour in 24-hour format (00 - 23)
%I	Hour in 12-hour format (01 - 12)
%m	Month as decimal number (01 - 12)
%M	Minute as decimal number (00 - 59)
%p	Current locale's AM/PM indicator for 12-hour clock
%S	Second as decimal number (00 - 59)
%y	Year without century, as decimal number (00 - 99)
%Y	Year with century, as decimal number
%A	Weekday name, such as Tuesday
%b	Abbreviated month name, such as Mar
%B	Full month name, such as March
%j	Day of year as decimal number (001 - 366)
%w	Weekday as decimal number (0-6, with Sunday as 0)

Code	Description
<code>%@xxx</code>	Specify language locale (where xxx is a 3-letter code that identifies one of the supported languages. For example. A format of <code>%@CAD%A</code> might produce <i>mardi</i> , the French word for Tuesday.

Here are some examples:

This format	Will result in
<code>%m-%d-%Y</code>	01-01-2009
The year is %Y.	The year is 2009.
Born %m/%d/%y at %l:%M %p	Born 01/01/09 at 11:57 PM

Here are some additional format attributes for certain codes:

Code	Description
#	Tells the system to suppress leading zeros for the following format codes. This flag only affects these format codes: <code> %#d, %#H, %#I, %#j, %#m, %#M, %#S, %#w</code> For example, if <code>%d</code> outputs <code>01</code> , using <code> %#d</code> will produce <code>1</code> . Subsequent codes are not affected unless they also have this flag.
>	Tells the system to uppercase the resulting text. This flag only affects these format codes: <code> %&gt;p, %&gt;A, %&gt;b, %&gt;B</code> For example, if <code>%A</code> results in <code>Tuesday</code> , using <code> %&gt;A</code> will produce <code>TUESDAY</code> . Subsequent codes are not affected unless they also have this flag.
<	Tells the system to lowercase the resulting text. This flag affects only these codes: <code> %&lt;p, %&lt;A, %&lt;b, %&lt;B</code> For example, if <code>%b</code> results in <code>Mar</code> , using <code> %&lt;b</code> will produce <code>mar</code> . Subsequent codes are not affected unless they also have this flag.
<>	Tells the system to capitalize the first letter of the resulting text. This flag affects only these codes: <code> %&lt;&gt;p, %&lt;&gt;A, %&lt;&gt;b, %&lt;&gt;B</code> For example, if <code>%p</code> results in <code>AM</code> , using <code> %&lt;&gt;p</code> will produce <code>Am</code> . Subsequent codes are not affected unless they also have this flag.

### Specifying locales

When you use  `% @xxx` in the format string, the  `xxx` represents a 3-letter code that identifies one of the supported language locales.

Until a locale format code is encountered in the format string, the default locale (typically USD which is US English) is used. Once a locale format code is found, the locale specified remains in effect until another locale code is encountered.

For example, suppose the input date is  `03-01-2009`. This table shows the output from various formats:

This format	Will result in
<code> "%A, %B %d"</code>	<code> "Monday, March 01"</code>
<code> "% @CAD% A % @CAD% A, %B %d"</code>	<code> "lundi, mars 01"</code>
<code> "%A, % @CAD% B %d"</code>	<code> "Monday, mars 01"</code>
<code> "% @CAD% A, % @USD% B %d"</code>	<code> "lundi, March 01"</code>

### Using the ~Field function

The ~Field function lets you use a quoted parameter string to name the specific field to locate within the form set. The definition of the field can name a specific image, form, and group (Key2 or Line of Business), separated by semicolons, that contains the field requested. This lets you make sure you are retrieving a specific field occurrence within the document.

Because object names, like fields, images, forms, and groups, can sometimes contain spaces or other special characters, you should enclose the entire definition in quotation marks (“”). You cannot quote individual elements of the search.

Here are some examples:

This is a valid definition for the ~Field function:

```
option = ~FIELD "Field;Image;Form;Group"
```

This is *not* a valid definition for the ~Field function:

```
option = ~FIELD "Field";"Image";"Form";"Group"
```

## USING XML FILES

You can use these rules to create an alternative data search method so you can do direct XML mapping within Documaker Server:

Rule	Description
UseXMLExtract	Uses the extract list loaded by the transaction as the source of the XML tree.
XMLFileExtract	Assumes that the extract list contains the name of an external file which is the source of the XML tree.

**NOTE:** For more information on the new rules, see the [Rules Reference](#).

The extract list and the XML tree are separate. Once the XML tree is loaded, it remains loaded and can be searched by subsequent rules — just like any extract list.

The system supports a mix of these search methods:

- An XDB token reference such as *?TOKEN* looked up in the XDB to get the actual search text
- The legacy Offset,Mask method such as *10,HEADERREC*
- An XML search text, such as *!/descendant::Item*

In most cases, the XDB token reference will be the preferred method.

An XDB entry can return either a legacy offset/length search mask or an XML search path. XML search masks must begin with an exclamation mark (!). The leading exclamation mark is not actually sent to the search routine.

You can use text movement and formatting rules, like *Move\_It*, *MoveNum*, *FmtDate*, and *FmtNumber*, to do simple operations, but keep in mind some of the more complicated options may not work.

For instance, *Move\_It* supports a *same record* flag. This does not work in XML searches. Likewise, *Move\_Num* supports several binary input data types like BCD and you cannot include those in XML at present.

More complicated rules that have multiple search criteria like *SetAddr*, *SubExtractList*, and *Concat* do not work with XML files.

## HANDLING OVERFLOW

The XML search infrastructure has *position* support.

```
/descendant::Forms/child::form[position()=2]/child::field1
```

The 2 in this case indicates you want the second form child. Since you would not want to write the search to work with every explicit number, you must indicate where the overflow variable fits into the equation, as shown here:

```
/descendant::Forms/child::form[position()=***]/child::field1
```

The system first scans the search to see if a replacement is needed for the overflow value. In this case, it would insert the 2 (taken from the overflow variable value) and then do the actual XML search.

You can also handle overflow within overflow by specifying an overflow variable name in the search. For instance, suppose you have multiple cars and each car can have multiple drivers.

```
<car>
  <driver>Tom</driver>
  <driver>Tim</driver>
</car>
<car>
  <driver>Sally</driver>
</car>
```

If you had two overflow variables, one working for *car* and one for *driver*, you could create a search like this:

```
/descendant::car[**carvar**]/child::driver[**drivevar**]
```

Where the system gets two overflow variables and insert them into the search text.

## TRIGGERING FORMS AND IMAGES

You can do simple triggering based upon the existence of a node. For example, this

```
/child::car
```

would trigger a form if *car* is a child of the root node. Referring back to the earlier example, you could make it trigger two of the same forms because there are two cars.

The system supports value matching. So you can do the following:

```
/child::car[child::driver="Tom"]
```

Or, you can use the RecipIf rule to trigger an image with custom rule parameters, as shown in this example:

```
A={!/child::car[child::driver 1,7]}::if
(A='Tom')::return("^1^")::end::;
```

If there is such a value in that element in the XML file, the image would trigger. For this to work, define the offset of the variable attribute as 1 and the length of the data you want to compare.

You can also use XML search strings such as these:

This string	Finds
!descendant::PolicyNumber	The PolicyNumber value
!descendant::Forms/child::Form	All forms

## USING XPATH

XML path locator (XPath) complies with the standard syntax specifications (W3C standards) found in the XML Path Language, but differs in some regards because it was developed to support the Rules Processor. Because this version of XPath has some limitations, you should check the syntax using the XPATHW32 utility.

### XPATH SYNTAX

Here are examples of the valid axes, function calls, signs, and operators to help you understand and use the XPath syntax.

#### Axes

You have these axes:

Name	Used to locate the
ancestor	Ancestors of the current context node
ancestor-or-self	Ancestors of the current context node and itself
parent	Parents of the current context node
descendant	Descendants of the current context node
descendant-or-self	Descendants of the current context node and itself
attribute	Attributes of the current context node
child	Children of the current context node
following-sibling	Following siblings of the current context node
following	Context nodes that follow the current node
preceding-sibling	Preceding siblings of the current context node
preceding	Context nodes that precede the current node
self	Self context node

When used, an axis is always followed by a context node name separated by two colons (:). For example, the syntax *descendant::para* locates all para descendants of the current context node.

## Symbols

You can use these calculation operators:

=    !=    <    >    +    -

Where !=, <, >, + can be used as calculation operators in function position(), such as, *[position()=2]*, *[position()!=2]*, *[3+i]*, *[position()<5]*, and so on. The equals sign (=) is also used for evaluations such as *@Name='Auto'*.

You can use these symbols in a valid XPath:

/    //    \*    ::    [    ]    @

Where the pair of brackets ([ ]) enclose a condition for evaluation, the at symbol (@) is an abbreviation of the attribute, the asterisk (\*) is used for a wild card search, and others are used in a valid XPath, as shown below.

## Functions

You can use these functions:

Function	Returns
concat(string, string, string...)	The concatenation of the strings
last()	The last element in the selection
name()	The name of the selected elements
node()	The node names
position()	The position of selected elements
text()	The text of selected elements
string(object)	The string from the context node
xml()	The output buffer containing all descendents of the specified element

## Expressions

You can use abbreviated syntax with XPath. Here are the valid expressions:

Abbreviated syntax	Full syntax
*	child::*
para	child::para
chapter/para	child::chapter/child::para
para[1]	child::para[position()=1]
/chapter/para[last()]	/child::chapter/child::para[position()=last()]
text()	child::text()
node()	child::node()
para[@type]	child::para[attribute::type]
para[@type="warning"]	child::para[attribute::type="warning"]
para[@type="warning"][2+i]	child::para[attribute::type="warning"][position()#2+i]
chapter[title]	child::chapter[child::title]
chapter[title='Introduction']	child::chapter[child::title="Introduction"]
doc//para	child::doc/descendant-or-self::node()/child::para
@*	attribute::*
@type	attribute::type
[@name='warning']	[attribute::name='warning']
//para	/descendant-or-self::node()/child::para
.	self::node()
./para	self::node/descendant-or-self::node()/child::para
..	parent::node()
../chapter	parent::node()/child::chapter
../@type	parent::node()/attribute::type

## USING THE XPATH TESTING UTILITY

Here is the syntax of the XPATHW32 testing utility:

```
xpathw32 /f= xml file /e=starting node /x= search path
```

The `/e` parameter specifies the node where the search of the XPath starts. You can omit this parameter if you want the search to start from the beginning. A pair of double quotes is required to enclose the search mask. Here is an example:

```
xpathw32 /f="d:\test\test.xml" /x="Forms/Form/Car[@Name='Car1']/text()"
```

This example searches the node `Car` with the attribute `Name="Car1"`. It then retrieves its text and returns a text string similar to this one:

```
Text string = Car 1 is Toyota
```

These examples illustrate some search paths most frequently used in Documaker RP applications. Run the testing tool yourself for the answer.

**Example 1** These examples search for a list of nodes with or without conditions. Keep in mind a condition is always placed within brackets, as shown here: `[condition]`.

This	Returns
Forms/Form/Car	A list of the Car nodes
Forms/Form/Car[@*[position() < 3]	The first two nodes in the Car node list
Forms/Form/Car[@Name[position() > 1]	A list of the Car nodes above the first element
Forms/Form/Car[text()[position() != 2]	A list of the Car nodes, excluding the second one
Forms/Form/Car[Model]	A list of Car nodes that have a child named Model
Forms/Form/Car/node()	A list of children nodes under the Car nodes
Forms/Form/Car/Coverage[1]	A list of first child Coverage under the Car nodes
Forms/Form/Car[@Name='Car1']/Coverage	A list of nodes Coverage under Car1

**Example 2** These examples search for the path for a single element:

This	Produces
Forms/Form/Car[@*][1]	The first node of the Car list with any attributes
Forms/Form/Car[@Name][last()]	The last node of the Car list with the attribute Name
Forms/Form/Car[@Name='Car1']	The Car node with attribute name Car1
Forms/Form/Car[Model='Toyota']	The Car node with a child Model that has a text string of Toyota.
Forms/Form/Car[Model='Nissan']/Coverage[3]	The third child node of Coverage under the parent node Car that has a child named Model with a text string of Nissan

**Example 3** These examples search for a list of attributes:

This	Produces
Forms/Form/Car[Model='Nissan']/@*	A list of attributes of the Car node that have a Child node named Model with a value of Nissan
Forms/Form/Car/@Name	A list of the attribute Name that has a parent node of Car

**Example 4** These examples search for a single attribute:

This	Produces
Forms/Form/Car[Model='Honda']/@[1]	The first attribute of the Car node that has a child named Model with a value of Honda
Forms/Form/Car[Model='Honda']/@Name	The attribute Name of the Car node that has a child named Model with a value of Honda
Forms/Form/Car[1]/@Name	The attribute Name of first Car node

**Example 5** These examples search for a list of text strings:

This	Produces
Forms/Form/Car/text()	A list of text strings of Car nodes
Forms/Form/Car[Model]/text()	A list of text strings of Car nodes which have children named Model

**Example 6** These examples search for a single text string:

This	Produces
<code>Forms/Form/Car[Model='Toyota']/text()</code>	The text string of the Car node which has a child name Model with a value of Toyota
<code>Forms/Form/Car[Model='Honda']/parent/text()</code>	The text string of the node Form which has a child named Car that, in turn, has a child named Model with a value of Honda

**NOTE:** There are three types of returned lists: elements, attributes, and text. When a list includes only one element, the structure returns a single element instead of a list.

**Example 7** These examples search for the name of elements:

This	Returns
<code>//*[name()='Car']</code>	“Car” nodes
<code>Forms/Form/*[name()='Car'][2]/text()</code>	A text string of second “Car” nodes

**Example 8** These examples concatenate text strings:

This	Returns
<code>concat('Car1', 'and', 'Car2')</code>	A string “Car1 and Car2”
<code>concat(//Car[@Name='Car1'], 'and', //Car[@Name='Car3'], 'are imported cars.')</code>	A string “Toyata and Nissan are imported cars.”

**Example 9** These examples search for strings:

This	Returns
<code>string(' 12345')</code>	The string " 12345"
<code>string(//Car[2]/*[1])</code>	The string of the first child of the second Car node

**Example 10** This examples returns a buffer that contains all descendants of the specified element:

This	Produces
<code>xpathw32 /f=cars.xml /x="//Car[2]/xml()</code>	<pre>&lt;Car Name=" Car2"&gt;Car 2 is Honda &lt;Model&gt;Honda&lt;/Model&gt; &lt;Coverage&gt;Cover 4&lt;/Coverage&gt; &lt;Coverage&gt;Cover 5&lt;/Coverage&gt; &lt;Coverage&gt;Cover 6&lt;/Coverage&gt; &lt;/Car&gt;</pre>

Note that the XPath must point to a single element, such as `Car[2]` in the example.

## EXAMPLE XML FILE

Here is an example XML file (TEST.XML):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--Sample XML file generated by XML Spy v4.2 U (http://
www.xmlspy.com)-->
<Forms>
  <Form>
    <Car Name=" Car1">Car 1 is Toyota
      <Model>Toyota</Model>
      <Coverage>Cover 1</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 2</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 3</Coverage>
    </Car>
    <Car Name=" Car2">Car 2 is Honda
      <Model>Honda</Model>
      <Coverage>Cover 4</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 5</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 6</Coverage>
    </Car>
    <Car Name="Car3">Car 3 is Nissan
      <Model>Nissan</Model>
      <Coverage>Cover 7</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 8</Coverage>
      <Coverage>Cover 9</Coverage>
    </Car>
  </Form>
</Forms>
```



## CHAPTER 3

# Implementing Your System

This chapter provides an overview of how a system is implemented. Although implementations are typically handled by the Professional Services Group and each implementation differs, you can make your implementation run more smoothly by understanding the procedures and methodologies outlined here.

In general terms, a system implementation is a set of structured procedures and processes our Business Analysts follow to design, develop, and set up a customized system for a particular client.

This chapter discusses...

- [Why Use a Methodology? on page 110](#)
- [Gathering Information on page 112](#)
- [Roles and Responsibilities on page 113](#)

## WHY USE A METHODOLOGY?

When each system implementation is so unique and so configurable, why use a methodology?

Because, a methodology allows for consistent handling of each specific implementation. Consistency promotes efficiency. The smoother and more efficient a system implementation is, the more satisfied you will be. Furthermore, it will be easier to maintain and, if necessary, easier to modify the implemented system should your needs change.

The system Implementation methodology is followed for each implementation project. The methodology is designed to allow for project flexibility to accommodate the various system customizations.

The System Implementation Methodology is comprised of these phases:

Phase 1 - Define Requirements

Phase 2 - Create Detail Forms Requirements

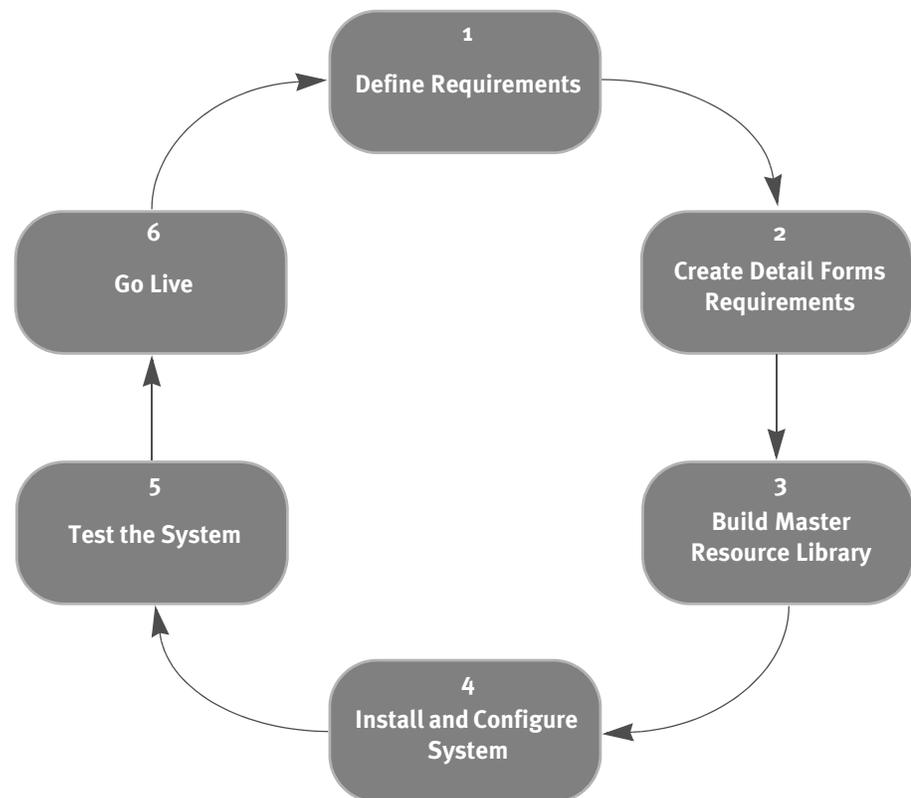
Phase 3 - Build the Master Resource Library

Phase 4 - Install and Configure the System

Phase 5 - Test the System

Phase 6 - Go Live

The methodology phases are cyclical. After completing Phase 6, Phase 1 begins again, to continually evaluate the system and to incorporate product maintenance.



Because each system implementation is different, the time frame for completing each phase varies. Here is a summary of the phases and the related tasks:

**Phase 1 - Define the requirements**

Defining the requirements is the planning and definition phase of an implementation. In this phase, your processing needs are defined. Your input is very important in accurately identifying your needs.

The primary output of this phase is the Requirements Definition Documentation. This document includes the project scope and schedule, information regarding the technical and functional areas targeted for document automation, and the steps outlining how the implementation will proceed.

**Phase 2 - Create the detail forms requirements**

Creating the detail forms requirements involves specifying all forms to be converted from paper to electronic forms, and determining how to automate the transfer of data to the forms. Determining how to automate data transfer includes defining how the data will be mapped, defining the data transfers from the source file to the forms, and the form data format. This process requires mapping data in hierarchical succession: form set, form, image, image sections, image fields, field attributes, and field sequencing and navigation logic.

The Docucreate tools are often used during this phase. You can learn more about these tools in the Docucreate User Guide.

**Phase 3 - Build the Master Resource Library**

Building the Master Resource Library involves organizing and setting up the resources to be used by your system. Here a complete library of reusable resources is set up. Your users will select from these resources to complete their work activities.

A resource library is divided into these libraries: Image Library, Variable Data Dictionary Library, and Rules Library. Each of these libraries contains files that store different resource components. Depending on your system configuration and location, you may have separate Distributed Resource Libraries, as a subset of the Master Resource Library.

In addition to setting up the resources, this phase involves configuring forms sets, the rules used for processing forms, and the system initialization files that determine how your system operates. During this phase the base system is customized to meet your needs. Customization can range from changing system functions to changing the system interface.

Many of the Docucreate tools, such as the Image Editor, Form Set Manager, Logo Manager, and Dictionary Editor are used during this phase.

**Phase 4 - Install and configure the system**

During this phase, the various system modules are installed. After installing the components, you test various aspects and functions of the system, such as printing and archiving, using test scenarios and sample data. Adjustments are made if required to the configuration files. If available, you should use real data for these initial tests.

**Phase 5 - Test the system**

In Phase 5, system testing begins. Detailed test matrices are created, which are used to test the entire system using real data. A test matrix is a listing of the functions, conditions, and exceptions of the system you want to test. It's important to have plenty of real data you can use for testing purposes during this phase.

**Phase 6 - Go live**

In Phase 6, the system is now ready for full production. The support personnel assigned to the project will assist you with start up procedures and training.

## GATHERING INFORMATION

At the beginning of any implementation, it is important to gather as much relevant information as possible. This information helps ensure requirements are correctly defined, future goals are taken into consideration, and the solution meets your needs exactly.

### UNDERSTANDING YOUR NICHE

Understanding your current and future industry positioning is integral in successfully implementing a customized system. The system must suit your needs now, and expand as your company grows. Knowing where you expect to take the company in the future is important for defining a system.

The implemented system must be set up so it can grow as your company grows. The system must also serve the your current needs. To define your current and future needs, you will be asked questions about the your company's goals, industry trends, and company projections, such as:

- Do you expect a significant growth in revenue over the next five years? What is your vision for the future?
- Do you expect to experience a reduction or increase in number of employees?
- Do you envision growth into other related or non-related industries?
- How far has the company grown (or downsized) in the past few years? Can you detect industry trends based on past revenues, and financial status?

One of the greatest benefits of a system is its flexibility. Determining where you are and where you expect to be in the future helps to make sure your system solves your business problems today and tomorrow.

### UNDERSTANDING YOUR ORGANIZATION

Understanding your organization is also important in fulfilling your needs. It helps to understand the chain of command, and the responsibilities associated with each role in your organization. To gather information about your organization, you will be asked questions such as:

- Have you had previous experience with document automation? How would you describe that experience positive?
- How many data entry operators do you have, and who and where are they?
- What percentage of total time do employees at each level spend on the system?
- Is there a specific organizational hierarchy or chain of command within the company?
- What is your corporate culture? Is there a discreet division of labor at all levels, or is there cross-training and information sharing?

You may also have documentation about your company, future company directions, system flows and workflows, and other information which is important in mapping an implementation strategy. This background information is important in defining the best solution for your company.

## ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

There are many people involved in a system implementation project. A system implementation project team is comprised of both Skywire Software personnel and personnel from your company. The team's goal is to provide a seamless integrated solution for the your document automation needs.

You are an integral member of the system implementation team. With your knowledge of your business needs, you can often be the navigator or guide during the implementation process.

Skywire Software personnel include:

**BUSINESS ANALYST.** Throughout the project the Business Analyst is responsible for coordinating the project, creating the phase deliverables, and keeping apprised of the status of all processes and subprocesses within the project.

**PROJECT MANAGER.** The project manager is involved in initial project analysis and planning, and sizing of the system component development process. The project manager is also responsible for creating the project schedule.

**SYSTEM DEVELOPERS.** The developers are primarily responsible for coding the system components. Additionally, the programmers may provide analysis, and planning input during the initial phases. Professional Services personnel are involved in customization projects.



## CHAPTER 4

# Setting Recipients and Copy Counts

This chapter describes how you can specify recipients for the individual forms that comprise your form sets and how you can specify the number of copies each recipient will receive.

In this chapter you will find information about:

- [Concepts on page 116](#)
- [Key Files on page 117](#)
- [Trigger Table Record Format on page 118](#)
- [Specifying the Transaction Trigger Table on page 120](#)
- [How Transaction Triggering Works on page 121](#)
- [Form Level Triggers on page 124](#)
- [Master and Subordinate Images on page 127](#)
- [Examples on page 129](#)
- [Summary on page 146](#)

## CONCEPTS

In a manual form system, a data entry operator selects the forms that make up a document set. Some forms may be mandatory and are always included. Others are optional and must be specified by the operator.

The operator chooses forms by examining the data at hand and considering certain conditions pertaining to that data. For instance, if the operator is creating insurance policies, he or she would have to know:

- What company is this for?
- What line of business?
- What type of transaction is this?
- Does the agent need a copy?
- How many copies?
- What about the home office copy?

And so on. The answer to each question affects the makeup of the document set you will assemble.

Documaker Server automates the tasks and selection decisions that an operator makes. The set of forms to be printed, and the recipients of those forms, are selected by executing a series of business rules that test the supplied data to see if certain conditions are met.

As matching conditions are found in the data for a transaction, a form set can be constructed, form by form, with all the proper recipients designated. This is the first step in the assembly of a document set. Later, once the set of forms has been determined, other business rules for each form and variable field can be executed to begin to construct the output data, field by field, within each form.

---

**NOTE:** Docucreate includes the Form Set Manager, a tool you can use to set recipients and copy counts. This chapter explains how the underlying files and settings work. You can change these settings either by changing the files in a text editor or by using the Form Set Manager. You can find more information about the Form Set Manager in the Docucreate User Guide and in the tool's on-line Help.

---

## KEY FILES

Here is a discussion of the key files which the system uses to determine who gets what form and how many copies it should print. You'll also find information about important concepts, such as form and image level triggers.

### TRANSACTION TRIGGER TABLE

The transaction trigger table (also known as the SETRECIP table, or SETRCPTB.DAT file) is a text file used by Documaker Server to define the conditions under which certain forms are included in form sets, and which recipients are to receive the forms. Each record in the transaction trigger table defines a triggering condition for a form or image and is referred to as a trigger record, or, more simply, a trigger.

#### Trigger Levels

There are two *levels* of trigger records: *form level triggers* which trigger forms, and *image level triggers* which trigger images within a form. Image level triggers are optional, since some forms automatically include all necessary images. Also, form level triggers can be optional, since a form can also be triggered by an image level trigger.

---

**NOTE:** Images are defined by FAP files and are maintained using the Image Editor. An image may be an entire page, or a page segment. Forms can be made up of many pages, each containing one or more images. You can find more information about the Image Editor in the Docucreate User Guide.

---

### FORM SET DEFINITION TABLE

The transaction trigger table works with the form set definition table (also known as the FORM.DAT file) to define the required form set. Together they define many complex inter-relationships and rules, and a number of powerful options by which forms and images can be triggered, and recipients defined.

In this chapter we will discuss:

- The purpose of the transaction trigger table.
- The record layout of the transaction trigger table.
- The runtime setup options for the transaction trigger table.
- The rules under which the transaction trigger table program logic operates.

In addition, this chapter discusses several scenarios to illustrate many of the options and variations used to trigger forms and images.

## TRIGGER TABLE RECORD FORMAT

The transaction trigger table is a semi-colon delimited text file. Each record in the table defines a form level or image level trigger condition. Each record contains the following fields:

```

;GroupName1 (Company)
;GroupName2 (Line of Business)
;Form name
;Image name
;Transaction codes
;Recipient list
;Search mask 1 (Counter)
;Overflow field 1 (Occurrence flag)
;Overflow field 2 (Records per overflow image)
;Overflow field 3 (Records per first image)
;Recipient Copy count
;Search mask 2 (True/False)
;Custom rule;

```

**NOTE:** Semicolons are required as field separators, or placeholders. When values are omitted from optional fields, one or more consecutive semicolons may appear.

The table describes each field.

Field	Description
GroupName1	Matches the GroupName1 field in the form set definition table. In an insurance industry application, this would typically contain the Company code. <Key1Table> in the FSISYS.INI file.
GroupName2	Matches the GroupName2 field in the form set definition table. In an insurance industry application, this would typically contain the “line of business” code. <Key2Table> in the FSISYS.INI file.
Form name	The name of the form, as specified in the form set definition table. Note: Form names are descriptive, and do not correlate to any physical file name.
Image name	The name of an image within a form, as specified in the form set definition table. This name also correlates to a physical image file (.FAP file) and often to a Data Definition Table file (.DDT file). Note: An image level trigger record requires an entry in this key field; a form level trigger record must omit any value in this field.

Field	Description
Transaction codes	<p>By including one or more transaction codes in this field, a form is triggered only if the extract file record includes that transaction code.</p> <p>If no transaction code value is mapped from the extract data for a transaction, the system considers all triggers eligible, regardless of whether they specify a transaction code list.</p> <p>Conversely, if a transaction code value is mapped from the data, the system only considers those triggers that have the same value to be eligible for evaluation.</p>
Recipient list	Lets you optionally specify certain recipients.
Search mask 1 (Counter)	Defines the criteria to determine when a form belongs in a form set (or an image within a form). The criteria lets Documaker Server get specific data from the extract file. One form (or image) is added for every occurrence of the Search Mask per Transaction when the overflow flag is set.
Occurrence (overflow) Flag	<p>Indicates the need to calculate overflow conditions. Enter zero (0) for no overflow or 1 for overflow.</p> <p>Also used for Master and Subordinate form and image level flags. You can enter:</p> <p>M=master (used on form level triggers)</p> <p>S=subordinate (used on image level triggers)</p> <p>F=tells the system to override any previous copy count settings and use the copy count settings in this trigger file (used on form level triggers). In essence, this flag tells the system that if this form is already triggered, don't trigger it again—just modify the previously triggered copy.</p>
Records per overflow image	(Used by overflow) Specifies the number of records matching the Counter Search Mask that will fit on the specified overflow form.
Records per first image	(Used by overflow) Specifies the number of records matching the Counter Search Mask that will fit on a specific form before overflowing to a new form.
Recipient copy count	Specifies the number of copies a recipient receives.
Search Mask 2 (True/False)	Similar to Search Mask 1, but only one form will be triggered, regardless of how many occurrences of the condition exists.
Custom Rule	Available field for use with custom rules or search masks. Most common custom rule is RECIPIF.

## SPECIFYING THE TRANSACTION TRIGGER TABLE

You specify the file name of the transaction trigger table (also known as the SETRECIP table) in the FSISYS.INI file. For example:

```
< Data >
  SetRcpTb = SETRCPTB.DAT
< MasterResource >
  FormsetTrigger = SETRCPTB.DAT
```

The form set definition table is also specified in the FSISYS.INI file, in the following control group:

```
< MasterResource >
  FormDef = FORM.DAT
```

There are two form set level rules that relate to the transaction trigger table in the AFGJOB.JDT file:

```
<Base Form Set Rules>
  ;LoadRcpTbl;2;;
  ;RunSetRcpTbl;2;;
```

The LoadRcpTbl rule loads the entries from the SETRCPTB.DAT file for the current GroupName1, GroupName2, and Transaction code. The RunSetRcpTbl rule runs all entries in the transaction trigger table that pertain to the current GroupName1, GroupName2, and Transaction code to generate the form set for the current transaction.

For more information on these and other rules, see the [Rules Reference](#).

## HOW TRANSACTION TRIGGERING WORKS

The transaction trigger table works with the extract file, TRN file (usually TRNFILE), and the form set definition file (usually FORM.DAT). The TRNFILE contains a record for each transaction passed to Documaker Server.

The record format for the TRNFILE varies by implementation; the format is specified by a DFD (Data Format Definition) file. Each TRNFILE record contains a series of offsets used when processing the transaction.

Offsets in a TRNFILE record define the location where:

- The transaction begins in the extract file
- Data for the transaction is stored in the NAFILE
- The form set for the transaction is stored in the POLFILE
- The TRN record itself begins (this offset is stored in the BCH file, so the entire TRNFILE is not needed)

The form set definition file (FORM.DAT) defines the organization of images within forms and the organization of forms within form sets. The FORM.DAT is a semi-colon delimited file; its format includes information about...

- Company
- Line of business
- Forms (form options)
- Images (image options)
- Recipients
- Recipient image copy counts

The recipient table, also known as the transaction trigger table (usually SETRCPTB.DAT), defines when to include a particular form image or recipient of a form image in a form set. The recipient table contains information necessary to determine if a condition exists to include a form. Conditions may be defined by a combination of transaction types and search masks for the extract file as defined above.

Three of the first five transaction trigger fields (GroupName1, GroupName2, and Transaction Code) must match some records within the extract file in order for the trigger conditions to be evaluated. For example, if there are no records with the transaction code specified in the trigger, that trigger will be skipped. If extract records exist that match these three fields, the remaining fields of that trigger are evaluated.

It is not required to use all of the available fields in a transaction trigger record, but if it is necessary to use multiple search masks and/or a custom rule, the following logic applies when evaluating whether to trigger that form or image.

## IMAGE LEVEL TRIGGERS

Here are some examples of how the system evaluates triggers:

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 1	Search Mask 2	The result is:
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Do nothing
o	F	F	Do nothing
o	F	T	Turn off
Non o	T	T	Turn on
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn off

The system evaluates search mask 2 first. When this evaluation is performed, the system also takes the copy count into consideration.

If the copy count is zero (o):

- If search mask 2 is true, evaluate search mask 1. If search mask 1 is true, turn on the image based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing). If false, turn off the image.
- If search mask 2 is false, then do nothing.

If the copy count is not zero:

- If search mask 2 is true, then evaluate search mask 1. If search mask 1 is true, turn on the image based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing). If false, turn off the image.
- If search mask 2 is false, turn off the image.

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 1	Custom Rule	The result is
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Turn off
o	F	F	Turn off
o	F	T	Turn off

Non o	T	T	Turn On
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn on

When search mask 1 and custom rule are specified, the system uses the custom rule only. When the custom rule is evaluated:

- If true, turn on the image based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing)
- If false, do not turn on the image.

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 2	Custom Rule	The result is
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Turn off
o	F	F	Do nothing
o	F	T	Do nothing
Non o	T	T	Turn on
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn off

The system evaluates search mask 2 first. When this evaluation is performed, the system also takes the copy count into consideration.

If the copy count is zero (o):

- If search mask 2 is True, evaluate the custom rule. If the custom rule is True, turn on the image based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing). If false, turn off the image.
- If search mask 2 is false, then do nothing. The custom rule will be ignored. Leave the image as is.

If the copy count is not zero:

- If search mask 2 is true, then evaluate the custom rule. If the custom rule is true, turn on the image based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing). If false, turn off the image.
- If search mask 2 is false, turn off the image.

## FORM LEVEL TRIGGERS

Here are some examples:

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 1	Search Mask 2	The result is:
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Turn off
o	F	F	Turn off
o	F	T	Turn off
Non o	T	T	Turn on
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn off

At the form level, search mask 2 is evaluated first. It is unlike the image level in that the copy count is not considered.

If search mask 2 is true, search mask 1 is evaluated:

- If true, trigger the form based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (o), then turn on nothing)
- If false, do not trigger the form.

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 1	Custom Rule	The result is:
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Turn off
o	F	F	Turn off
o	F	T	Turn off
Non o	T	T	Turn on
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn on

When search mask 1 and custom rule are specified, the system uses the custom rule only. When the custom rule is evaluated:

- If true, trigger the form based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (0), then turn on nothing)
- If false, do not trigger the form.

With these settings:

Copy Count	Search Mask 2	Custom Rule	The result is:
o	T	T	Turn off
o	T	F	Turn off
o	F	F	Turn off
o	F	T	Turn off
Non o	T	T	Turn on
Non o	T	F	Turn off
Non o	F	F	Turn off
Non o	F	T	Turn off

At the form level, search mask 2 is evaluated first. It is unlike the image level in that the copy count is not considered. If search mask 2 is true, the custom rule is evaluated:

- If true, trigger the form based on the copy count (for instance, if the copy count is zero (0), then turn on nothing)
- If false, do not trigger the form.

If search mask 2 is false, do not trigger the form.

When a transaction trigger table entry is evaluated to be true or false, the effect varies depending on the type of trigger. The following table explains the effects of form and image level triggers:

Logic	Form Level Trigger	Image Level Trigger
True	Turns on all images in the form for selected recipients with the copy count specified in the copy count field in the transaction trigger table entry. Turns on images in the form for non-selected recipients only if those images have a copy count of at least 1 in the form set definition table.	Turns on the specified image for the selected recipients with the copy count specified in the copy count field in the transaction trigger table entry. Turns on other images in the form with the same recipients with a copy count of at least 1 in the form set definition table.

False	Does not turn on any images for any recipients.	Turns off the specified image by setting the copy count to zero (0) for the selected recipients or does nothing.
-------	---	--

## MASTER AND SUBORDINATE IMAGES

The set recipient table contains both form and image level triggers to handle cases of conditional images on forms. There are two flag options you can use in the set recipient table (SETRECIP) for transaction triggering. These two flags, *S* and *M*, are used to regulate the evaluation of image level triggers and are placed in the Occurrence (overflow) flag field of form or image level triggers.

---

**NOTE:** When you are using master and subordinate triggering, keep in mind you cannot evaluate multiple form level triggers. The system limits you to a single form level trigger for a given group of images. You can repeat the same images for another form level trigger.

---

### MARKING SUBORDINATE IMAGES

The *S* flag, called the subordinate flag, identifies the image as subordinate to the parent or master form. The subordinate flag is enabled when you place an uppercase *S* in the Occurrence flag field (which is the 8th semi-colon delimited field of each table entry), and may be separated from the overflow flag (0 or 1) by a comma. As long as there is an uppercase *S* character in the flags field, the image will be treated as a subordinate. The *S* flag makes the image level trigger dependent on the successful triggering of its parent form by the form level trigger for that form. If the parent form was not triggered on its own account, such as if it was added because of an underlying non-subordinate image being triggered, then all subordinate images triggers are still ignored.

The intended use of this flag is to eliminate redundant conditional logic at both the image and form level, as well as to maintain a hierarchy of form and image with respect to the inclusion of these entities into a form set. A subordinate image cannot cause the inclusion of the parent form because if the form was not triggered then the subordinate image triggers are never processed. The use of subordinate images lends itself largely to situations where you want to trigger a form based on some condition, and then conditionally add images to that form.

If the form was not triggered then all underlying image triggers can be ignored, which eliminates unnecessary processing. The subordinate flag also eliminates processing the same conditional logic over and over again since the logic is only performed once at the form level.

Subordinate images are subordinate to the master (or parent) form level trigger being true or false, and not actually to the form being triggered. Therefore, it is probably not a good idea to mix subordinate and non-subordinate images under the same parent form. If the form was triggered by a non-subordinate image, and not by its own conditional, then all subordinate images for that parent form will still be ignored, despite the fact the form was triggered.

## MARKING MASTER FORMS

The master form flag, uppercase *M*, works in a similar manner but on the form level. The *M* flag is used only with form level triggers and is ignored if used with an image level trigger. The *M* flag is used to signify a master form level trigger, causing all of the image level triggers beneath the master form level trigger to be treated as if they were subordinate image level triggers.

When you use the *M* flag with a form level trigger, it does not matter whether the underlying image level triggers have the *S* flag—they will all be treated as if they did. In effect, if the logic in a master form level trigger fails, the form does not trigger and all of the form's image level triggers are ignored. The next section illustrates transaction triggering logic through specific examples.

## EXAMPLES

The transaction trigger table works with the form set definition table. The transaction trigger table is usually named SETRCPTB.DAT and the form set definition table is usually named FORM.DAT.

The FORM.DAT file defines which images make up a form. There are many possible combinations of images that can constitute a form. A form can be comprised of a single image or multiple images. The FORM.DAT file also specifies which recipients get which images. It is possible to have a single form that is composed of four images, three of which are constant for all recipients, and one image that varies depending on recipient.

Recipient and copy count information contained in the FORM.DAT is also included in the SETRCPTB.DAT transaction trigger table, so it is important to understand how these two tables work together. Designing the two tables independently can often cause undesired results because one table is overriding the other in a manner that the user did not anticipate. But if the two tables are designed to work together, many complex forms with conditional images and copy counts can be implemented.

In this topic, numerous examples of form set definition files and transaction trigger tables are shown to illustrate some basic relationships between the form set definition table file and the transaction trigger table file.

In each example, the FORM.DAT and SETRCPTB.DAT tables are shown along with the resulting POL file generated by the GenData program. The POL file shows the final form sets created by the GenData program and is used as an input file by the GenPrint program (along with the NA file) to generate printed output.

You will find examples which discuss:

- [Specifying Copy Counts and Images on page 130](#)
- [Using Transaction Codes on page 132](#)
- [Setting Up Search Mask and Images on page 133](#)
- [Using the RECIPIF Rule on page 135](#)
- [Using Automatic Overflow on page 137](#)
- [Using Forced Overflow on page 139](#)
- [Setting Search Masks and Recipients on page 140](#)
- [Using the Set Recipient Table and Extract Files on page 141](#)
- [Formatting Search Masks on page 142](#)
- [Sorting Forms by Recipient on page 144](#)

## SPECIFYING COPY COUNTS AND IMAGES

One of the fields that is shared by both the transaction trigger table and the form set definition table is the copy count. The copy count specifies the number of copies of an image to be printed for a given recipient.

In the FORM.DAT file, there can be multiple copy counts—one for each recipient for each image that makes up a form. However, in the SETRCPTB.DAT file, there is only one copy count field for each entry. A single SETRCPTB.DAT entry can reference multiple recipients however, so that one copy count field can be applied to more than one recipient.

---

**NOTE:** You can also use GVM or DAL variables to set the copy count for a recipient. For more information see the [Docucreate User Guide](#) or the [Documaker Studio User Guide](#).

---

The copy count is a typical interaction between the FORM.DAT and the SETRCPTB.DAT. In this example, note from the FORM.DAT that the form DECPAGE is made up of the images PRUNAME, COMDEC1, COMDEC2, and COMDEC3. The other form in the FORM.DAT is VARFLD, which is made up of one image VARFIELD.

All the images that make up DECPAGE and VARFLD have individual copy counts associated with each recipient. Note that the images COMDEC2 and VARFIELD have their copy counts set to zero (0) for each recipient. This means that the default copy counts for these images is zero (0), and if these forms are included in a form set, these images will not print for any of the listed recipients unless their copy counts are changed by the SETRCPTB.DAT table.

Now looking at the SETRCPTB.DAT file, the first entry causes the form DECPAGE to be loaded, provided the search mask criteria is true (which it is in this case). This first entry is known as a form level trigger because the image name field has been left blank. While the first SETRCPTB.DAT entry references only INSURED and AGENT in the recipient list field, the form is also triggered for COMPANY as well because COMPANY is listed in the FORM.DAT with a copy count of 1 for all images that make up DEC PAGE except COMDEC2. COMDEC2 is included in DEC PAGE for recipients INSURED and AGENT because they are in the form level SETRCPTB.DAT entry recipients list field.

The second SETRCPTB.DAT line is an image level entry, referencing the image COMDEC2 in the form DECPAGE. The purpose of this image level entry is to set the copy count of the image COMDEC2 (which defaults to zero (0) in the FORM.DAT) so that it will be included in or excluded from the DEC PAGE if the conditions in its SETRCPTB.DAT entry are true (more on this in Example 3).

In this example, COMDEC2 has already been included for INSURED and AGENT by the previous form level entry. If the conditions of this image level entry are true, the image COMDEC2 will be included for recipient AGENT with a copy count of 1 (which in this case is redundant since the previous form level entry already did this). However, since the image level entry conditions are false, the copy count of COMDEC2 for AGENT is set to zero (0). Looking at the POL file, COMDEC 2 only printed for INSURED, because the copy count for AGENT was set to zero (0).

The final three SETRCPTB.DAT entries are all form level entries for VARFLD. Note that in the FORM.DAT, VARFLD, which is composed of one image, VARFIELD has two recipients, INSURED and COMPANY, both of which have copy counts of zero (0). The three SETRCPTB.DAT entries for VARFLD each reference a different recipient in the recipient list field and assign them copy counts. COMPANY gets 1 copy, INSURED gets 2 copies, and AGENT gets 3 copies. However, looking at the POL file, VARFLD printed once for COMPANY and twice for INSURED, but it did not print at all for AGENT. This is because, even though AGENT was included in the SETRCPTB.DAT entry, AGENT was never an original recipient for VARFLD in the FORM.DAT.

#### FORM.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
COMDEC2|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;

;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|D<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0)>;
```

#### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC
PAGE;;T1;INSURED,AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;1;;;
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC
PAGE;COMDEC2;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,11,SPCIALREC,25,Special;0;0;0;1;
;;;

;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;COMPANY;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;1;;;
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;INSURED;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;2;;;
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;3;;;
```

#### POL file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;

;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;
\ENDDOCSET\ 1234567

;SAMPKO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;

;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;
\ENDDOCSET\ 3234567

;SAMPKO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;

;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;
\ENDDOCSET\ 5234567
```

## USING TRANSACTION CODES

In this example, the same environment as in the first example, [Specifying Copy Counts and Images](#), is used. In this case, however, the second entry in the SETRCPTB.DAT has been slightly modified. The transaction code field has been changed from T1 to T2 to illustrate that not having the proper transaction code will cause that entry to be skipped.

In this example, the SETRCPTB.DAT image level entry that references COMDEC2 is not being evaluated because the transaction code field does not match the data contained in the extract file. The result of skipping this entry is, unlike the previous example, where COMDEC2 did not print for AGENT, in this example COMDEC2 prints for both AGENT and INSURED.

### FORM.DAT file

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE; ;R; ;PRUNAME |D<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/  
COMDEC1 |DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/  
COMDEC2 |DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/  
COMDEC3 |DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |D<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC  
PAGE; ;T1;INSURED,AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;1;;;  
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC  
PAGE;COMDEC2;T2;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,11,SPCIALREC,25,Special;0;0;0;1;  
;;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD; ;T1;COMPANY;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;1;;;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD; ;T1;INSURED;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;2;;;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD; ;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;3;;;
```

### POL file

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE; ;R; ;PRUNAME |D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2 |DS<INSURED,AGENT>/  
COMDEC3 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<COMPANY>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<INSURED(2),>;  
\ENDDOCSET\ 1234567  
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE; ;R; ;PRUNAME |D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2 |DS<INSURED,AGENT>/  
COMDEC3 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<COMPANY>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<INSURED(2),>;  
\ENDDOCSET\ 3234567  
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE; ;R; ;PRUNAME |D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2 |DS<INSURED,AGENT>/  
COMDEC3 |DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<COMPANY>;  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD; ;VARFIELD |DN<INSURED(2),>;  
\ENDDOCSET\ 5234567
```

## SETTING UP SEARCH MASK AND IMAGES

There are two search mask fields in the SETRCPTB.DAT table structure. The first search mask is known as the *counter search mask* because it works with the overflow counters that immediately follow it in the transaction trigger table format, provided that the overflow flag is set.

The second search mask is known as the *true/false search mask*. Both search masks can be used to set conditions to evaluate whether a set recipient entry should be executed. In this example, the second SETRCPTB.DAT entry that references COMDEC2 has a multiple condition counter search mask.

---

**NOTE:** If you want the system to stop searching after it finds the first match, use the true/false search mask instead of the counter search mask. If you place the search mask in the counter search mask field, the system finds the first match and then looks for multiple occurrences.

---

The first entry in the SETRCPTB.DAT table causes the form DEC PAGE to be triggered for recipients INSURED and AGENT. All images that make up DEC PAGE and have INSURED and/or AGENT as recipients (from the FORM.DAT file) are triggered with a copy count of 1 for each recipient. The second SETRCPTB.DAT entry is an image level entry that references COMDEC2.

The search mask in this entry will obviously fail because the first condition looks for HEADERREC at offset 11 and the second condition also looks at offset 11, but for SPICALREC. Both conditions cannot be true at the same time, so the search mask fails. The result of this image level search mask failing is to set the copy count for the recipients in the recipient list field, in this case AGENT, to zero (0).

Were the search mask true, AGENT would have been set to a copy count of 1 (which would be no change, since AGENT already had a copy count of 1 for COMDEC2).

Looking at the POL file, COMDEC2 was printed only for INSURED because the copy count of COMDEC2 for AGENT was set to zero (0) when the image level entry in the SETRCPTB.DAT file failed.

### FORM.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
COMDEC2|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|D<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC
PAGE;;T1;INSURED,AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;1;;;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC
PAGE;COMDEC2;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,11,SPICALREC,25,Special;0;0;0;1;
;;;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;COMPANY;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;1;;;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;INSURED;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;2;;;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;VARFLD;;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,~0;0;0;0;3;;;
```

## POL File

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/  
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;  
  
\ENDDOCSET\ 1234567  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/  
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;  
  
\ENDDOCSET\ 3234567  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;DECPAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/  
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED,>/  
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<COMPANY>;  
  
;SAPCO;LB1;VARFLD;NEW FORM;RD;;VARFIELD|DN<INSURED(2),>;  
  
\ENDDOCSET\ 5234567
```

## USING THE RECIPIF RULE

The RECIPIF rule is the primary rule used in the custom rule field. There are other rules which have been written for specific implementations that have been used in this field, but the RECIPIF rule is a part of base. The RECIPIF rule allows for customized search mask evaluations.

In this example, the RECIPIF rule is being used to evaluate two different conditions:

- does '1995' exist beginning at offset 51 in records with HEADERREC beginning at offset 11
- does 'T1' exist at offset 45 in records with FRMLSTREC beginning at offset 11

Looking at the entry in the SETRCPTB.DAT, notice that there are no search masks - only the RECIPIF rule is being used. Following the Search Mask 2 field, the rule name appears, and the rule itself appears in the following field. Each element of the rule is separated by double colons (:).

The first RECIPIF statements assign variables to the search criteria. In this case, A is assigned to the information appearing in the four characters beginning at offset 51 in records with HEADERREC beginning at offset 11. And B is assigned to the information appearing in the two characters beginning at offset 45 in records with FRMLSTREC beginning at offset 11.

The next RECIPIF statement sets up the evaluation logic for the rule. What should A equal? What should B equal? Should both conditions be true, or just one? In this case, A should be '1995' and B should be 'T1', and both need to be those values for the rule to be evaluated as true. An OR condition could have been used, which would have been true if either A or B matched their desired values.

The next RECIPIF statements set the return values. In this case, if A='1995' and B='T1', then a '1' is returned (note that the boolean '1' is enclosed both in quotes and carats, such as "^1^"). If those conditions are not met, then return a Boolean zero (0). These return values can be reversed to return a zero (0) when the RECIPIF criteria is true and a one (1) when false, should the need arise in a particular implementation. The last RECIPIF entry is the END statement. Here is an example of the RECIPIF rule syntax:

```
;recipif;var1={offset,value offset,length}::var2={offset,value
offset,length} ::if((var1='var1value') boolean
(var2='var2value'))::return("^#^")::else::return("^0^")::end::;
```

**NOTE:** There is a space between offset,value and offset,length .

### FORM.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/
COMDEC2|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>/
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC
PAGE;;INSURED,AGENT;;0;0;0;1;;recipif;A={11,HEADERREC
51,4}::B={11,FRMLSTREC 45,2}::if((A='1995') AND
(B='T1'))::return("^1^")::else::return("^0^")::end::;
```

POL file

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED, AGENT>/  
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED, AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED, AGENT>/  
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED, AGENT>;
```

```
\ENDDOCSET\ 1234567
```

```
;SAPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;R;;PRUNAME|D<INSURED, AGENT>/  
COMDEC1|DS<INSURED, AGENT>/COMDEC2|DS<INSURED, AGENT>/  
COMDEC3|DS<INSURED, AGENT>;
```

```
\ENDDOCSET\ 2234567
```

## USING AUTOMATIC OVERFLOW

In some cases, there is information on a form that will repeat an unknown number of times. For example, an auto insurance policy may contain a form that lists the vehicles owned by the insured. The number of vehicles will vary from one insured to another, so there is no way to know in advance how many lines will be needed on a form to list the vehicles. Overflow exists to handle these situations.

There are two types of overflow in the transaction trigger table, forced and automatic. In this example, automatic overflow is used. In automatic overflow, the system automatically determines how many entries exist and inserts them in the form.

Looking at the SETRCPTB.DAT, there is only one image level entry, referencing the image cgdcbd. Looking at the FORM.DAT, image cgdcbd has a default copy count of zero (0), while all the other images have a default copy count of one (1) for all recipients. So, triggering the image cgdcbd will trigger the remaining images that make up the form CGDEC.

The SETRCPTB.DAT entry has a simple counter search mask and has the overflow field (occurrence flag) set. The next two overflow-related fields are set to zero (0), so we know that this is an automatic overflow situation.

When this SETRCPTB.DAT entry is executed, it will keep track of the number of records that exist in the extract file that meet this criteria and automatically insert that number of cgdcbd images into the form CGDEC. Looking at the POL file in this example, many cgdcbd images were inserted into the form to reflect the number of entries in the extract file that met the specified transaction trigger search criteria.

### FORM.DAT file

```
;FSI;GL;CGDEC;General Liability
Declarations;RD;;cgdctp|FDSOX<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1)>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0)>/
cgdcbt|RDS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1)>/
cgdcft|RDSOY<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;FSI;GL;CGDEC;cgdcbd;T1;INSURED,COMPANY;11,CLSSCDREC;1;0;0;1;;;;
```

### POL file

```
;FSI;GL;CGDEC;General Liability
Declarations;RD;;cgdctp|FDSOX<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|\
RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RD\
S<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcft|RDSOY<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdctp|FDSOX<INSURED,COMPANY>/
cgdcbd|RDS<INSURED,COMPANY>/cgdcbd|RD\
```

```
S<INSURED, COMPANY>/cgdcbd | RDS<INSURED, COMPANY>/  
cgdcbd | RDS<INSURED, COMPANY>/cgdcbd | RDS<  
  
INSURED, COMPANY>/cgdcbd | RDS<INSURED, COMPANY>/  
cgdcbt | RDS<INSURED, COMPANY>/cgdcft | RDSOY<INSURED, COMPANY>;  
  
\ENDDOCSET\ 5234567
```

## USING FORCED OVERFLOW

In this example, forced overflow is used. Forced overflow differs from automatic overflow in that there are a set number of overflow entries that can be placed on a given form.

For example, if a form is designed to list all the vehicles owned by an insured, the form designer might have an image that has room to list up to two vehicles. For insureds with two or less vehicles, only that one image is needed. However, for insureds with more than two vehicles, the designer has a separate add-on image to list the remaining vehicles. Forced overflow is used in situations such as this.

In this example, there are two images in the FORM.DAT that make up the form FCP DEC. The first image, FCPDEC, is the main image, and the second image, FCPDEC2, is the overflow image. Both images have copy counts of zero (0), allowing the SETRCPTB.DAT entries to control the copy counts.

The first SETRCPTB.DAT entry triggers the form for all recipients (in this case INSURED), leaving the copy counts set to zero (0). The next entry sets FCPDEC's copy count to 1 if the search mask is true. The final SETRCPTB.DAT entry is the forced overflow entry. The same search criteria is used, but the overflow (occurrence) flag is set.

The next two overflow fields specify how many entries are to be split among the two images. The records per overflow image (6 in this example), specifies how many records will fit on the FCPDEC2 overflow image. The next field, records per first image, specifies how many records will fit on the primary image FCPDEC (2 in this example). So, FCPDEC2 will only be triggered if the search mask criteria is true and there are more than 2 occurrences of this record type.

Looking at the POL file, FCPDEC2 was triggered twice, so there must have been at least 9 overflow records. The first two went on the first image FCPDEC, the next six on the first FCPDEC2 image, and the remaining on the second FCPDEC2 image.

### FORM.DAT file

```
;FSI;CPP;FCP DEC;FCPDEC OVERFLOW;RO;;FCPDEC|D<INSURED(0)>/
FCPDEC2|D<INSURED(0)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;FSI;CPP;FCP DEC;;T1;INSURED;11,PREMLCREC;0;0;0;0;;;
;FSI;CPP;FCP DEC;FCPDEC;T1;INSURED;11,PREMLCREC;0;0;0;1;;;

;FSI;CPP;FCP DEC;FCPDEC2;T1;INSURED;11,PREMLCREC;1;6;2;1;;;
```

### POL file

```
;FSI;CPP;FCP DEC;FCPDEC OVERFLOW;RO;;FCPDEC|D<INSURED>/
FCPDEC2|D<INSURED>/FCPDEC2|D<INSURED>;
```

```
\ENDDOCSET\ 4234557
```

## SETTING SEARCH MASKS AND RECIPIENTS

In this example, two transaction trigger table concepts are illustrated. First, notice that there are two search masks in the SETRCPTB.DAT entries. Both the counter and true/false search masks are being used. Also, in the recipient selection from the SETRCPTB.DAT is used.

The FORM.DAT consists of a single form, OP654, made up of a single image, addr. Image addr is defined for three recipients, INSURED, COMPANY, and AGENT, all with default copy counts of zero (0). In the SETRCPTB.DAT, there are two form level entries. In the first entry, we are looking for '1995' at offset 51 in records with HEADERREC at offset 11 and 0 at position 20 in records with FRMLSTREC at offset 11.

If both of these conditions are true, OP654 is triggered for INSURED with a copy count of 1. In the second entry, the same conditions apply for AGENT, with the exception of looking for '1996' in the counter search mask (rather than '1995').

Notice in the POL file that form OP654 was triggered for INSURED only, indicating that the second SETRCPTB.DAT entry failed. The second entry failed because '1996' did not appear at offset 51 in records with HEADERREC at offset 11. This example illustrates that the two search masks work with a logical AND condition, since the true/false search mask is true in both entries.

This example also illustrates letting the SETRCPTB.DAT control the copy counts for a form. When the image OP654 was triggered for INSURED in the first entry, it was triggered for all recipients. Since the default copy count for all recipients is zero (0), and only INSURED was set to a copy count of 1 in the SETRCPTB.DAT entry, OP654 was only printed for INSURED.

### FORM.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB2;OP654;First  
Letter;RD;;addr|DS<INSURED(0),COMPANY(0),AGENT(0)>;
```

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

```
;SAMPKO;LB2;OP654;;T1;INSURED;11,HEADERREC,51,1995;0;0;0;1;11;FRMLS  
TREC,20,0;
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB2;OP654;;T1;AGENT;11,HEADERREC,51,1996;0;0;0;1;11,FRMLSTR  
EC,20,0;
```

### POL file

```
;SAMPKO;LB2;OP654;First Letter;RD;;addr|DS<INSURED,>;
```

```
\ENDDOCSET\ 6SAMPKO
```

```
;SAMPKO;LB2;OP654;First Letter;RD;;addr|DS<INSURED,>;
```

```
\ENDDOCSET\ 8SAMPKO
```

## USING THE SET RECIPIENT TABLE AND EXTRACT FILES

Here are some hints on how to best use the set recipient table (SETRCPTB.DAT) and extract files:

- Fewer triggers equals better performance. Each trigger is like a condition statement for the system to evaluate. The more conditions the system has to evaluate, the slower the processing cycle.
- Use the master (M) and subordinate (S) flags to avoid repetition.

The set recipient table contains both form and image level triggers to handle cases of conditional images on forms. An image level trigger can be used to trigger a form. This is beneficial in situations where a conditional image can trigger header and footer images. If, however, you use it improperly, you will add redundant conditional logic at both image and form level—which slows performance.

There are two flags (S and M) which you can use to control the evaluation of image level triggers and to maintain a hierarchy of form and image with respect to the inclusion of these entities into a form set. The S flag, called the subordinate flag, identifies the image as subordinate to the parent or master form level trigger. If the form is not triggered, all underlying image triggers can be ignored, which eliminates unnecessary processing. The subordinate flag also eliminates processing the same conditional logic over and over again since the logic is only performed once at the form level.

The master form flag (M) works in a similar manner but at the form level. When you use the M flag with a form level trigger, it does not matter whether the underlying image level triggers have an S flag—all will be treated as if they did. If the logic in a master form level trigger fails, the form does not trigger and all of the form's image level triggers are ignored.

- Limit your use of the RecipIf rule.

The RecipIf rule is just like the IF rule except it is used in the SETRCPTB.DAT file. The more conditions the system has to evaluate, the slower the processing cycle. Avoiding the RecipIf rule often depends on the structure of the extract file.

The ideal situation is to trigger a form or image based on one search criteria. If you want to trigger a form or image based on more than one search criteria, you may need to use the RecipIf rule. The more conditions you have, the more complicated the RecipIf rule will be. If the system has to look for a value in a given range of data instead of at an exact location, you have to add a long and complicated recipif. There is a price to pay for flexibility and it's paid in performance.

- Structure the data in your extract file to be read in the order that it will be processed. This improves performance since the system will find the next piece of data to process faster.

## FORMATTING SEARCH MASKS

Here are some tips to keep in mind when formatting a search mask.

### Spaces

- You cannot have a space in any part of the search mask after the comma following an offset unless you intend to search for that space in the extract file. For example,

```
"10,DATA"
```

is not the same as

```
"10, DATA"
```

In the second mask, the space is considered part of the search string.

- You cannot have spaces following *DATA* that you do not want to include in the search. For example,

```
"10,DATA,20,DATA"
```

is not the same as

```
"10,DATA ,20,DATA"
```

In the latter, the space following the first word *DATA* is considered part of the search text.

- You can have space following the numerical offset value. For example, "*10 ,DATA*" is interpreted the same as "*10,DATA*".

### Commas

You cannot search for data which contains a comma. For instance, you cannot have a search mask of

```
"10,A,B"
```

where you expect to find

```
"A,B"
```

in your extract row.

You can, however, write the search mask to exclude every other possible character that might occur between *A* at offset 10 and *B* at offset 12. For instance, you could create this search mask:

```
"10,A,12,B,11,~+,11,~="
```

assuming that the only other possible combinations are *A+B* and *A=B*.

### Tildes

The tilde (~) represents a logical NOT of the search operation. The tilde must immediately follow the comma—but remember that any space after the comma is considered part of the search text.

For example, a search mask of

```
"10,~DATA"
```

is only true if "*DATA*" does not occur starting at offset 10.

To search for text that begins with a tilde, include two tildes in a sequence. For example, "*10,~~DATA*" tells the system to search for "*~DATA*" beginning at offset 10.

If, however, the tilde is not the first character in the search text, you do not duplicate the character. For instance, "*10,DATA~*" is all you have to enter to find "*DATA~*" starting at offset 10.

**Parentheses** There is no way to search for text that begins with an open parenthesis. For instance, if you use a search mask like

```
"10, (, 20, DATA"
```

assuming that the open paren character would be at offset 10, you will not get the results you want.

**Using the OR condition** The OR condition is defined as OFFSET,(DATA,DATA,DATA). You *must* include a comma between the offset value and the open parenthesis. In addition, you *cannot* include spaces between the comma and open parenthesis or the calculation will be mishandled.

You can have any number of search text items inside the parenthesis as long as they are separated by commas. Having only one search text inside the parenthesis is no different than not using the OR condition. For example, "10,DATA" is the same as "10,(DATA)" and "10,DATA,20,(MORE)" is the same as "10,DATA,20,MORE".

**Using the NOT condition** You cannot use the tilde (NOT conditions) with OR condition data in any fashion. It cannot be used outside the parentheses, as shown here

```
OFFSET, ~(MORE, DATA)
```

nor can you include it inside the parentheses, as shown here

```
OFFSET, (~MORE, DATA)
```

The NOT condition is not supported with the OR search criteria.

**Using AND and OR conditions** You can include a mix of AND and OR conditions, but the result is an AND operation. In other words, each individual search mask operation must evaluate to TRUE before the result is assumed TRUE. Here is an example:

```
10, DATA, 20, (MORE, DATA),
```

This statement will only be TRUE when "DATA" occurs starting at offset 10 *and* "MORE" or "DATA" occur at offset 20.

Here are some additional examples:

```
10, (MORE), 10, (DATA)
```

will never be TRUE since the text at offset 10 cannot be both "MORE" and "DATA".

```
10, (MORE, DATA), 10 (SOME, DATA)
```

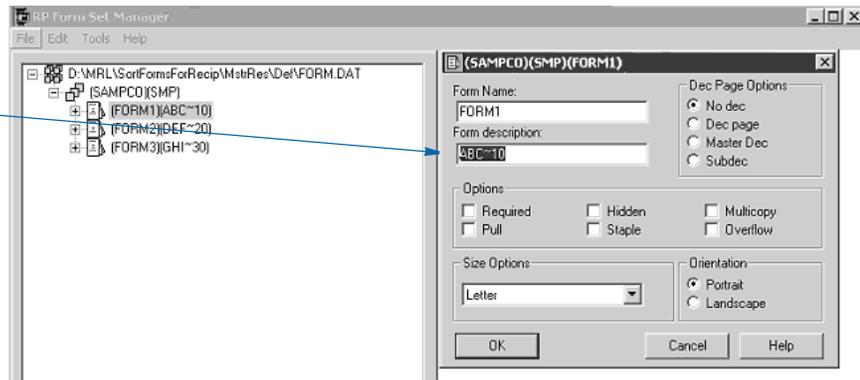
will only be TRUE when "DATA" occurs at offset 10. If the word "SOME" or "MORE" occurs at offset 10, the other part of the condition would return FALSE and the result of the entire statement would be FALSE. So, you can rewrite this statement simply as "10,DATA".

## SORTING FORMS BY RECIPIENT

Use the SortFormsForRecip callback function to sort forms in a different order, depending on recipient. This function reads the given sort table and sorts the forms by recipient. A form identifier called a Document Type Number (DTN) tells the system how to sort the forms. The DTN resides in the form description of the FORM.DAT file and begins with a tilde (~).

Here is an example of how you can use Form Set Manager to specify a DTN in the FORM.DAT file.

The Form Description reads:  
*ABC~10.*  
The DTN is 10.



Keep in mind:

- This feature does not support running with the MultiFilePrint callback function.
- Use the DTN to identify the category of the form and to specify the assembly order of the form.
- Form sets with identical DTNs are sorted and printed in the order that they are triggered.
- When running in single-step mode, to preserve the order of the original forms being triggered and the NA data being written, these rules must be set in this order in the AFGJOB.JDT file:

```
;PrintFormset;;  
;WriteOutput;;  
;WriteNaFile;;
```

Otherwise, the POLFILE.DAT and NAFILE.DAT files will be out of sync.

- If a form should print for a particular recipient and it is omitted from the sort table, the system warns you. For example, suppose Form1 with a DTN of 10 should be printed for RECIPIENT1 but this form was not specified in the sort table. Here is an example of the warning you would see in the error file:

```
Warning: Document <FORM1>, Description <One~10>  
Recipient <RECIPIENT1> has no matching recipient codes in sort table.
```

Although these error messages do not stop the processing, the result will not be sorted correctly.

**INI files** Here is how you set up your INI file:

```
< Print >
  CallbackFunc= SortFormsForRecip
< Sort_Forms >
  TableName = ..\MstrRes\Table\sort.tbl
```

This tells the system to use a sort table called SORT.TBL.

Keep in mind, when using the SortFormsForRecip rule on UNIX platforms, you have to enter the extract path with *forward* slashes, as shown here:

```
< Sort_Forms>
  TableName = /mstrres/table/sort.tbl
```

**Sort tables** Here is an example of a sort table called SORT.TBL:

```
;*;10,20,30;
;CUSTOMER;10,30,20;
;AGENT,OFFICE;20,30,10;
```

The first line in the sort table defines the default sort order for all recipients not defined in the sort table. The second and third lines are sort records. You set up a sort record for each different sort order.

To set up a sort record, begin with a semicolon (;), followed by the recipient names separated with commas (,). End the list of recipients with a semicolon (;). Here is an example:

```
;Recipient1,Recipient2,Recipient3;
```

Next, and on the same line, list the DTNs associated with the form sets. Separate the DTNs with commas (,) and end the list with a semicolon (;). Here is an example of a sort record:

```
;Recipient1,Recipient2,Recipient3;10,20,30;
```

Based on the form sets and the SORT.TBL file shown above, here is an excerpt from the resulting POLFILE.DAT file:

```
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1;One~10;R;; ImageA | D<CUSTOMER, AGENT, OFFICE>;
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1.1;Two~10;R;; IMAGEA2 | D<CUSTOMER, AGENT, OFFICE>;
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM2;Three~20;R;; IMAGEB | DS<CUSTOMER, AGENT, OFFICE>;
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM3;Four~30;R;; IMAGEC | D<CUSTOMER, AGENT, OFFICE>;
\ENDDOCSET\ 1234567890
```

The print file for CUSTOMER will be in this order:

```
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1;One~10;R;; ImageA
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1.1;Two~10;R;; IMAGEA2
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM3;Four~30;R;; IMAGEC
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM2;Three~20;R;; IMAGEB
```

The print file for AGENT and OFFICE will be in this order:

```
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM2;Three~20;R;; IMAGEB
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM3;Four~30;R;; IMAGEC
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1;One~10;R;; ImageA
;SAMPCO;SMP;FORM1.1;Two~10;R;; IMAGEA2
```

## SUMMARY

This chapter explains the major principles illustrated in the previous examples and reviews the triggering logic used by the transaction trigger table. Keep in mind that the transaction trigger table cannot be viewed in isolation; it works with the form set definition table, and both must be examined to predict triggering behavior. The form set definition table defines the default recipients and copy counts for form images. The transaction trigger table may override some or all of the form set definition table settings.

In the case of the copy count, the form set definition table defines a default copy count for each recipient of each form image. A transaction trigger table entry defines a copy count for one or more recipients. This transaction trigger table copy count may be the same or different from that already defined in the form set definition table. When evaluated, a transaction trigger table entry's copy count will override the one already defined for those recipients in the form set definition table for that form image.

A similar relationship exists between the form set definition table and the transaction trigger table for recipients. The form set definition table defines the default recipients for a form image. The transaction trigger table can be used to change the copy count for those recipients. And if a transaction trigger table entry sets the copy count to zero (0) for a particular recipient, it has the effect of removing that form image for that recipient. Keep in mind that a recipient may not be included in a transaction trigger entry unless that recipient has already been included for that form image in the form set definition table.

For a transaction trigger table entry to be evaluated, three of the first five transaction trigger fields (GroupName 1, GroupName 2, and Transaction Code) must match some records within the extract file. For example, if there are no records with the transaction code specified in the trigger, that trigger will be skipped. If extract records exist that match these three fields, the remaining fields of that trigger are evaluated. A blank transaction code field is treated as a wildcard, accepting any transaction code for the trigger.

Of the two transaction trigger table search masks, the true/false mask is evaluated first. Once an extract file record has been found that meets the true/false search mask criteria, the counter search mask is evaluated next, if one is present. The counter and true/false search masks work the same way when the overflow flag is not set. But when the overflow flag is set, the counter search mask criteria search does not stop at the first matching extract file record - the system will continue to search for all matching extract file records.

When the system evaluates the counter or true/false mask, the system searches through all the records in the extract file for the specified transaction. If any of the transactions match the search criteria, the condition is considered true. If there are multiple records with the same search criteria, the system will evaluate all of them. If any of these records match the search criteria, the trigger condition is considered true.

For example, if Search Mask 2 is specified as 11,SPECIAL,20,5 and there are two records containing SPECIAL at offset 11, the first one an A at offset 20 and the second one with a 5 at offset 20, the system will evaluate both records and finding the second meets the search criteria, the trigger condition is considered true. The system will stop searching once a True condition is found, except in overflow situations. For overflow situations, the system will not stop searching. Rather, it will keep searching and counting the number of True conditions. The system will then trigger the number of images or forms based on that count.

When the custom rule RECIPIF is evaluated, the search is different than that used for Search Masks 1 and 2 in that when the system only evaluates the first found record which matches the search criteria. For example, if the custom rule is specified as follows:

```
;Recipif;A={11,SPECIAL  
51,4}::if(A='1995')::return("^1^")::else::return("^0^")::end::
```

There are two records in the extract file containing SPECIAL at offset 11. The first one has 1994 at offset 51, and the other has 1995 at offset 51. When the system stops searching once it finds the first record which matches the search criteria. In this case, it evaluates the record contains 1994 and determines that the trigger condition is false.

When the overflow flag is set, the next two transaction trigger table entry fields, records per overflow image and records per first image, are examined. If both of these fields are set to zero (0), the system will automatically handle the overflow. If these fields are used, they specify how many entries are to be split among the two images. The records per overflow image specifies how many records will fit on the overflow image. The next field, records per first image, specifies how many records will fit on the primary image.

At a minimum, a transaction trigger table entry must contain a GroupName1 value, a GroupName2 value, a Form Name value, and a Copy Count value. An image level trigger must also contain an Image Name value. At a minimum, the three overflow fields must be set to zero (0). A blank Transaction Code field acts as a wildcard, accepting any transaction code. A blank Recipient List field will default to the recipients named in the form set definition table. And the two Search Mask fields and the Custom Rule field may be used as needed to produce the desired triggering results.



## CHAPTER 5

# Working with Fonts

A font is a collection of letters, symbols, and numbers which share a particular design. The system provides a tool, called Font Manager, which lets you organize sets of fonts for section creation and printing needs.

This chapter provides general information on font concepts and types and moves into the specifics of setting up fonts and using Font Manager.

Topics included are as follows:

- [Understanding Font Concepts on page 150](#)
- [Using Code Pages on page 156](#)
- [Types of Fonts on page 165](#)
- [Using System Fonts on page 168](#)
- [Using Font Cross-Reference Files on page 174](#)
- [International Language Support on page 178](#)
- [Setting Up PostScript Fonts on page 182](#)
- [Font Naming Conventions on page 186](#)
- [Using Font Manager on page 187](#)
- [Generating Files using Font Manager on page 216](#)
- [Mapping Fonts for File Conversions on page 220](#)

---

**NOTE:** The system also includes several utilities you can use to work with fonts. These utilities are mentioned where appropriate throughout this chapter and are discussed in detail in the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

---

## UNDERSTANDING FONT CONCEPTS

### FONT TERMINOLOGY

The following is a glossary of some common typographic terms you may encounter when working with fonts.

*Typography* is the art and technique of selecting and arranging type styles, point sizes, line lengths, line spacing, character spacing, and word spacing for typeset applications.

A *typeface* is a unique design of upper- and lower-case characters, numerals, and special symbols. Times-Roman, Arial-Italic, Courier-Bold are examples of typefaces.

A *font* is the implementation, for a specific device, of one typeface. A font contains a group of characters (letters, numbers, punctuation, and so on) which have a specific form and size. As you can see below, a Courier font is one which is designed to look like it was produced by a typewriter.

Courier fonts look like text produced by a typewriter.

A *font family* is family of related font typefaces. Times-Roman, Times-Bold, Times-Italic, and Times-BoldItalic are typefaces which belong to the Times font family.

*Font size* refers to the vertical point size of a font, where a point is about 1/72 of an inch.

There are several other terms used to describe the characteristics of a font, including:

- Ascender
- Baseline
- Descender

The *ascender* is the portion of a lowercase character that extends above its main body, as in the vertical stem of the character *b*.

\_\_\_\_\_ ascender  
**bcxy**

The *baseline* is an imaginary line upon which the characters in a line of type rest.

**bcxy** — — — baseline

The *descender* is the portion of a lowercase character that extends below the baseline, as in *y* or *g*.

**bcxy**\_\_\_\_\_ descender

*Kerning* is the process of decreasing space between two characters for improved readability, such as tucking a lowercase *o* under an uppercase *T*. A variation of kerning, called *tracking*, involves decreasing the amount of space between all characters by a specified percentage.

*Leading* is the amount of vertical space between lines of text. Leading (pronounced *led-ding*) is measured from baseline to baseline. On old hot-type printing presses, this was done by inserting strips of lead between the cast type.

Fonts are measured in *points*. A point is a typographical unit of measure which equals about  $1/72$  of an inch. For example, this is a **16 point font** while the rest of the line uses a 10 point font.

A *pica* is another typographical unit of measurement equal to 12 points. There are about 6 picas in one inch.

A *twip* is yet another typographical unit of measurement equal to  $1/20$ th of a point. There are 1440 twips to one inch, 567 twips to one centimeter.

*Pitch* refers to the amount of horizontal space used for each character of fixed-width fonts. This is often specified in characters-per-inch (CPI). Typically, 10-pitch equals 12 point, 12-pitch equals 10 point, and 15-pitch equals 8 point type, but some fonts use other equivalencies.

*Sans serif* means without serifs and refers to a character (or typeface) that lacks serifs, such as Arial or Helvetica.

A *serif* is an ornamental aspect of a character. A serif typeface is one whose characters contain serifs (such as Times Roman or Courier).

*Spacing* can either be fixed or proportional. In a fixed font, such as Courier, every character occupies the same amount of space. In a proportional font, such as Arial or Times, characters have different widths.

*Stroke weight* refers to the heaviness of the stroke for a specific font. This is usually indicated in font names by including words such as Light, Regular, Book, Demi, Heavy, Black, and Extra Bold.

The *style* of a font is whether it is plain, bold, or italic.

### National language terminology

Here are some additional terms you may encounter when working with fonts and supporting international languages.

National character handling is dependent on both the language used, and on the country. In many cases, the language is used only in one country (such as Japanese in Japan). In other cases, there is a national variant of the language (such as Canadian French).

A *code page* is a table which defines the mapping in a computer of each of these characters to a unique hexadecimal number, called a code point. There are three families of code pages: EBCDIC, ASCII, and ISO.

A *character set* defines which characters must be supported for a specific language.

*Single byte character sets* (SBCS) are character sets which can be defined using a single byte code point (code points range from 0 to 255). Most languages can be defined using an SBCS.

*Double byte character sets* (DBCS) are character sets which contain so many characters that they require two bytes to define the valid code point range. Languages which require a DBCS are Japanese (Kanji), Korean, and Chinese (both Traditional and Simplified). For example, the Kanji character set uses approximately 6,700 characters out of a total of 65,000 valid code points provided by a DBCS code page.

*Multiple byte character sets* (MBCS) use both single and double byte code points. This is also referred as a *combined code page*. For example, the combined Japanese code page 932 consists of a SBCS code page 897 and a DBCS code page 301. These code pages use the Shift JIS encoding defined by the Japanese Industry Standard Association, and contains Kanji, Hiragana, and Katakana characters.

*Unicode* is a character coding system designed to support the interchange, processing, and display of the written texts of the diverse languages of the modern world. In its current version (3.2), the Unicode standard contains over 95,000 distinct coded characters derived from dozens of supported scripts. These characters cover the principal written languages of the Americas, Europe, the Middle East, Africa, India, Asia, and Pacifica. Support for Unicode is growing among operating systems, such as Windows XP, and programming languages, such as Java.

---

**NOTE:** Beginning in version 10.2, the system includes support for Unicode. Specific information on how to use Unicode is available in a separate document, entitled *Using Unicode*. To receive this document, contact Skywire Software Support.

---

*Bi-directional (BIDI)* languages or *Extended SBCS* languages are languages which display text in a right-to-left manner and numbers in a left-to-right manner. Hebrew and Arabic are BIDI languages.

*ANSI* is an acronym for the American National Standards Institute. The Windows ANSI character set is based on code page ISO 8859-x plus additional characters based on an ANSI draft standard.

*ASCII* is an acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange. ASCII is a 7-bit code that is a US national variant of ISO 646.

*Program Integrated Information (PII)* includes all text in messages, menus, and reports which is displayed to the user. To provide national language support, all PII text must be isolated for easy translation.

*Enabled* is a term used to indicate an application that has been altered to handle input, display, and editing of double byte languages (such as Japanese) and bi-directional languages (such as Arabic).

*Translated* is a term used to indicate an application which has been enabled and has had its Program Integrated Information translated into the national language. A translated application must also support various country settings, such as time, date, currency, and sorting.

*AFM* is an extension used with Adobe® PostScript® font files. It stands for Adobe Font Metrics. AFM files are text files that describe a PostScript font.

## HOW CHARACTERS ARE REPRESENTED

Fonts can use different methods of internally representing characters. Two categories of representing characters in fonts are known as bitmap fonts and scalable fonts.

### Bitmap Fonts

Bitmap fonts describe each character as a pattern of black dots. Bitmap fonts were originally used for printer and screen devices because these devices were only capable of drawing dots. Below is crude representation of how the certain letters could be drawn as a series of dots in a 3x3 grid.



Essentially, this is what happens when a character is drawn to the screen or printed on paper. Fortunately, screen and printer fonts use a whole lot more dots per inch so that the distance between the dots becomes nearly invisible to the naked eye. By the way, this is also the reason why printed text looks better than text on the screen. Printed text often uses 300 or 600 dots per inch while your screen's resolution might be 96 dots per inch.

A different font file is required for each point size and different font files are required for different device resolutions (VGA vs. Super-VGA monitors, 300 dpi vs. 600 dpi printers).

Bitmap fonts are used primarily by printers. Bitmap fonts used by printers cannot be used for displaying text on screens because there are different internal formats and different resolutions. Printers which use bitmap fonts include HP® laser printers, IBM® AFP printers, and Xerox® Metacode printers

### Scalable Fonts

A scalable font can be scaled to any size needed. Characters of scalable fonts are internally represented as outlines (a series of straight lines and curves). These outlines can be scaled to allow characters to be rendered at different resolutions and point sizes. For example, the letter *O* may be represented as outer and inner circular lines whose interior is filled.

Outlines



Final Character



Two types of scalable fonts are TrueType and PostScript fonts.

**TrueType** TrueType was designed and developed by Apple Computer and Microsoft for use on the Macintosh computer and PCs running Microsoft Windows. TrueType provides a number of advantages over bitmap fonts. TrueType is WYSIWYG (what you see is what you get). The same font can be used with printers and video displays. Typically, TrueType font files have a file extension of TTF.

**PostScript** PostScript fonts were designed and developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated. PostScript fonts are a special implementation of a PostScript language program. PostScript fonts are scalable fonts. PostScript fonts describe each character as a series of straight-line and curved-line segments. These segments (also known as an outline) along with a flexible coordinate structure allow PostScript fonts to be scaled easily and used on different devices (video monitors and printers). PostScript printers support the PostScript language and fonts. There are several types of PostScript fonts:

- **PostScript Type 1**  
When someone refers to a PostScript font, this is the type of font most often referred to. Typically, Type 1 font files have a file extension of PFB.
- **PostScript Type 3**  
A Type 3 font is one whose behavior is determined entirely by the PostScript language procedures built into the font. These fonts are typically larger files than Type 1 fonts and do not take advantage of special algorithms built into the PostScript interpreter for rendering characters. This usually results in inferior output at small sizes and low resolution.
- **PostScript Type 0**  
A Type 0 (zero) font is a composite font program that can contain several thousand characters, accessed by multi-byte codes. They can be used for non-Roman scripts, such as Japanese kanji.
- **PostScript Multiple Master**  
Multiple master font programs are an extension of the Type 1 font format. Multiple master font programs contain a wide variety of typeface variations, such as multiple weights, character widths, and so on.

## HOW COMPUTERS AND PRINTERS USE FONTS

What happens to make the letter *A* show up on the screen or print on a printer?

The key to remember is that computers and printers are not very smart. They really don't know anything about letters or punctuation characters.

When you press the letter *A* on the keyboard, the keyboard sends a number to computer. On a PC, this number is usually 65 for the letter *A*. The computer uses this number to produce the letter *A*. For simplicity, let's assume you have a bitmap screen font.

As stated before, bitmap fonts describe each character as a pattern of black dots. Let's assume these patterns are stored in the font as a series of slots where slot 0 is followed by slot 1 which is followed by slot 2, and so on. For the number 65 (letter *A*), the computer simply draws the pattern of dots stored in slot 65. When the bitmap is drawn on the screen, we see what looks like the letter *A*.

If you print the letter *A* with a bitmap font, the concept is essentially the same. The printer receives the number 65 and prints the series of dots stored in slot 65 of the printer font.

The numbers which the computer uses to represent characters are called *code points*.

## USING CODE PAGES

A code page is a table which defines the mapping in a computer of each of these characters to a unique hexadecimal number, called a code point. There are three families of code pages: EBCDIC, ASCII, and ISO.

A code page is a table that defines how the characters in a language or group of languages are encoded. A specific value is given to each character in the code page. For example, in code page 850 the letter ñ (lowercase) is encoded as hex A4 (decimal 164), and the letter Ñ (uppercase) is encoded as hex A5 (decimal 165). Of particular interest are these code pages:

- Code Page 850

Code page 850 is also called the Latin-1, multilingual code page. This code page supports the alphabetic characters of the Latin-1-based languages.

- Code Page 437

Code page 437 is the standard personal computer code page. The lower 128 characters are based on the 7-bit ASCII code. The upper 128 characters contain characters from several European languages (including part of the Greek alphabet) and various graphic characters. However, some of the accented characters, such as those used in the Nordic countries, are not represented. The missing characters are available in other code pages (code page 850 will usually contain the desired characters). It contains characters required by 13 languages used in approximately 40 countries.

- Code page 1004

Code page 1004 is the equivalent of the Windows ANSI code page. It contains more international characters than the multilingual code page 850. This character set contains all characters necessary to type all major (West) European languages. This encoding is also the preferred encoding on the Internet.

ISO 8859-x character sets use code points 128 through 255 to represent national characters, while the characters in the 32 to 127 range are those used in the US-ASCII (ISO 646) character set. Thus, ASCII text is a proper subset of all ISO 8859-X character sets.

The code points 128 through 159 are typically used as extended control characters, and are not used for encoding characters. These characters are not currently used to specify anything. This character set is also used by AmigaDOS, Windows, VMS (DEC MCS is practically equivalent to ISO 8859-1) and (practically all) UNIX implementations. MS-DOS normally uses a different character set and is not compatible with this character set.

## ASCII Code Pages

ASCII is an acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange. ASCII code pages are used on the PC platform. Code points below 32 for ASCII code pages are considered control characters for internal uses. These code points are usually not displayable characters. Code points from 32 to 127 are usually the same in ASCII code pages and are used for English letters, numbers, and punctuation.

Where ASCII code pages differ is in the characters assigned to code points 128-255. Code points 128-255 are used for international characters, math symbols, and so on. The characters for these code points vary in other code pages.

The characters used in code points below 128 use the English letters, numbers, and punctuation commonly found in ASCII code pages. The upper 128 code points are used for characters from several European languages (including part of the Greek alphabet) and various graphic characters. However, some of the accented characters, such as those used in the Nordic countries, are not represented.

Code page 437 is known as the standard personal computer code page. These characters were originally used in the original IBM PC. This code page is still used today in U.S. English versions of DOS and Windows. The primary code page used for these platforms is also known as the OEM code page.

Code page 850 is also called the multilingual code page. This code page supports many of the characters of the Latin-based alphabet.

The following table shows code page 850. To determine the code point associated with a character, use the numbers in the first row and column in the following table. For example, the letter A has a code point of 65 (64 + 1) and the space character has a code point of 32 (32 + 0).

Code Page 850

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0																
16																
32		!	“	#	\$	%	&	‘	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
48	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
64	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
80	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
96	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
112	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{		}	~	
128	Ç	ü	é	â	ä	à	å	ç	ê	ë	è	ï	î	ì	Ä	Å
144	É	æ	Æ	ô	ö	ò	û	ù	ÿ	Ö	Ü	ø	£	Ø	×	f

160	á	í	ó	ú	ñ	Ñ	ª	º	¿	®	¬	½	¼	¡	«	»
176						Á	Â	À	©					¢	¥	
192							ã	Ã								¤
208	ð	Ð	Ê	Ë	È		Í	Î	Ï					¡	ì	
224	Ó	ß	Ô	Ò	õ	Õ	µ	þ	Þ	Ú	Û	Ù	ý	Ý	-	´
240	-	±		¾	¶	§	÷	,	°	¨	•	¹	²	³		

There are many more ASCII code pages which are targeted for a specific country and or language. For example, code page 863 is used for Canadian French.

Code page 1004 is the IBM equivalent of the Windows ANSI code page. It contains more international characters than the multilingual code page 850. It contains characters required by 13 languages used in approximately 40 countries. Windows uses the ANSI code page to support most of the languages used in the Western Hemisphere and Western Europe. Keystrokes are translated by Windows from the primary (OEM) code page into the ANSI code page.

The following page shows the Windows ANSI code page. To determine the code point associated with a character, use the numbers in the first row and column in the following table. For example, the letter A has a code point of 65 (64 + 1) and the space character has a code point of 32 (32 + 0).

Code Page 1004 (ANSI Code Page)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0																
16																
32		!	“	#	\$	%	&	‘	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
48	o	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
64	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
80	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
96	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
112	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{		}	~	
128	€		,	f	„	…	†	ç	^	%	Š	<	Œ		ž	
144		‘	’	“	”	•	-	—	~	™	š	>	œ		ž	ÿ
160		¡	¢	£	¤	¥	¦	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯

176	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	,	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
192	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
208	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
224	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
240	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

## EBCDIC CODE PAGES

EBCDIC is an acronym for the Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code. EBCDIC code pages are used on mainframe (z/OS) and mini computers (AS400). There are many EBCDIC code pages. EBCDIC code pages usually share the same code points for English letters, numbers, and punctuation characters. However, EBCDIC code pages use different code points than ASCII code pages for the same English letters, numbers, and punctuation characters. Code points below 64 for EBCDIC code pages are considered control characters for internal uses. These code points are usually not displayable characters.

Code page 37 is an EBCDIC code page used on many z/OS and AS400 systems. Although the code points are completely different, code page 37 shares most of the same characters as code page 1004 (ANSI). The characters associated with code points 128-159 in the ANSI code page are not defined in code page 37.

**NOTE:** The system uses some undefined code points (below 64) in code page 37 to represent these characters. For maximum portability, avoid using code points 128-159 of the ANSI code page when composing forms.

The following page shows a table of code page 37. To determine the code point associated with a character, use the numbers in the first row and column in the following table. For example, the letter *A* has a code point of 193 (192 + 1) and the space character has a code point of 64 (64 + 0).

Code Page 37

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0																
16																
32																
48																
64			â	ä	à	á	ã	å	ç	ñ	¢	.	<	(	+	

80	&	é	ê	ë	è	í	î	ï	ì	ß	!	\$	*	)	;	-
96	-	/	Â	Ä	À	Á	Ã	Å	Ç	Ñ		,	%	_	>	?
112	ø	É	Ê	Ë	È	Í	Î	Ï	Ì	˘	:	#	@	'	=	“
128	Ø	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	l	«	»	đ	ý	þ	±
144	°	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	ª	º	æ	,	Æ	¤
160	µ	~	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	i	ı	Đ	Ÿ	ƒ	®
176	^	£	¥	•	©	§	¶	¼	½	¾	[	]	-	..	ˆ	×
192	{	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	-	ô	ö	ò	ó	õ
208	}	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	<sup>1</sup>	û	ü	ù	ú	ÿ
224	\	÷	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	<sup>2</sup>	Ô	Ö	Ò	Ó	Õ
240	o	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	<sup>3</sup>	Û	Ü	Ù	Ú	

## CHARACTER SETS

You may have noticed that the largest code point shown in the earlier code page tables is 255 (240 + 15). The reason for this is that 255 is the largest value which can fit into a byte of memory. Code pages like this are said to have a single byte character set (SBCS). Some Asian languages, like Japanese and Chinese, contain so many characters that they must be represented by a double byte character set (DBCS) or a multiple byte character set (MBCS).

---

**NOTE:** Prior to version 10.2, the system only supported SBCS code pages. Version 10.2 added support for many additional languages using Unicode.

---

## Determining Characters Used in a Printer Font

The simplest way to determine what characters are contained in a printer font is to use Image Editor to print a FAP file which contains all possible code points. The system includes a FAP file you can use for this purpose. This FAP file looks very similar to the code page tables shown earlier in this chapter.

To print this FAP file, follow the steps below:

- 1 Start Image Editor.
- 2 Choose File, Open and select the Q1CDPG.FAP file, which is located in the RPEX1\FORMS directory.
- 3 Choose Tools, Font Manager and highlight the font 11016 (this FAP file only uses one font ID, 11016).

- 4 Click the Edit button. The Font Properties window appears. Click the Printers tab.
- 5 Change the AFP, PCL, or Xerox font file name to the font file name you want to test and click Ok. Then click Close to exit Font Manager and save your changes.
- 6 Select File, Print. Print the FAP file using the printer driver which corresponds to the printer font you are testing.

---

**NOTE:** Be sure to download fonts if you are testing a PCL font.

---

## CODE PAGE NAMES

One confusing thing about code pages is that different organizations have different names for the same code pages. IBM, Microsoft, and the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) all use different names for essentially the same code page. You may hear a code page referred to by its IBM, Microsoft, or ISO name. For example, the ANSI code page is the same as IBM code page 1004, Microsoft code page 1252, and ISO code page 8859-1.

The following table shows a list of commonly used code pages. For more information, see these books:

- Developing International Software, Second Edition - Microsoft Press
- National Language Design Guide Volume 2 - IBM

Language	Country	Code Pages		
		Windows	OEM	z/OS
U.S. English	USA	1252 (ANSI)	437, 850	037

### Western Hemisphere and Western Europe SBCS Code Pages

U.K. English	UK	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Brazilian Portuguese	Brazil	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Canadian French	Canada	1252 (ANSI)	850, 863	?
Danish	Denmark	1252 (ANSI)	850	?
Dutch	Netherlands	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Finnish	Finland	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
French	France	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
German	Germany	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Italian	Italy	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Norwegian	Norway	1252 (ANSI)	850	?
Portuguese	Portugal	1252 (ANSI)	850, 860	?
Spanish	Spain	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?
Swedish	Sweden	1252 (ANSI)	850, 437	?

### Eastern Europe SBCS Code Pages

Russian	Russia	1251 (Cyrillic)	866, 850	?
---------	--------	-----------------	----------	---

Language	Country	Code Pages		
		Windows	OEM	z/OS
Bosnian	Bosnia	?	852, 850	?
Croatian	Croatia	1250 (Eastern Europe)	852, 850	?
Czech	Czech	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Estonian	Estonia	1257 (Baltic)	?	?
Greek	Greece	1253 (Greek)	?	?
Hungarian	Hungary	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Latvian	Latvia	1257 (Baltic)	?	?
Lithuanian	Lithuania	1257 (Baltic)	?	?
Polish	Poland	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Romanian	Romania	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Serbian-Latin	Serbia	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Slovak	Slovak	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Slovenian	Slovenia	1250 (E.E.)	852, 850	?
Turkish	Turkey	1254 (Turkish)	857, 850	?

#### Extended SBCS Code Pages

Arabic	Arabic speaking	1256 (Arabic)	864, 850, 437	?
Hebrew	Israel	1255 (Hebrew)	862, 850, 437	?
Thai	Thailand	874	874, 437	?

#### Asian DBCS Code Pages

Japanese	Japan	932	932, 942, 437, 850	?
Korean	Korea	949	949, 850, 437	?
Simplified Chinese	PRC, Singapore	936	1381, 437, 850	?

Language	Country	Code Pages		
		Windows	OEM	z/OS
Traditional Chinese	Taiwan, Hong Kong	950	938, 948, 437, 850 950, 437, 850	? ?

## TYPES OF FONTS

The system uses screen and printer fonts for displaying and printing text on forms. The Family field in the FXR contains the name of the screen font to use for displaying text under Windows.

The Font File fields in the FXR contain the names of the printer fonts to use when printing text. The FXR file provides attributes of the fonts and cross references the various font file names and parameters for different printers. The FXR does not contain any printer or screen fonts, only information about printer and screen fonts. FXR files are referred to in this section but are discussed in detail in the section, [Using Font Cross-Reference Files on page 174](#).

## USING SCREEN FONTS

### Font Substitution in Windows

If the system cannot find a matching screen font using the information in the FXR, it will attempt to substitute a different Windows font. For Windows, the system will automatically try to substitute the following fonts for these missing fonts:

If this font is missing...	The system will substitute this font...
Courier	Courier New
Helv	Arial
Letter Gothic	Courier New
MICR	Courier New (fixed pitch) or Arial (proportional)
OCR A	Courier New (fixed pitch) or Arial (proportional)
OCR B	Courier New (fixed pitch) or Arial (proportional)
Times	Times New Roman
Times Roman	Times New Roman
Tms Rms	Times New Roman
Univers	Arial

Separate INI file control groups are used for Windows 3.1x (16-bit) and Windows 32-bit platforms for defining substitute font names. These control groups are named WINDOWSUBS and WINDOW32SUBS, respectively. Here is an example of the WINDOW32SUBS control group, which shows the defaults settings:

```
< Window32Subs >
  Univers      = Arial
  Helv         = Arial
  Letter Gothic = Courier New
  Courier       = Courier New
  Tms Rms      = Times New Roman
```

```
Times Roman    = Times New Roman
Times          = Times New Roman
```

In this example, the system substitutes the native Windows 32-bit font, Times New Roman, if the Times family font is not found. Likewise, it substitutes Courier New for Letter Gothic and Arial for Univers. If you do not have a font installed which matches the original or substituted fonts, a default font will be used instead (usually Courier).

## Installing Screen Fonts in Windows

To avoid these font substitutions, you can install fonts into Windows using the Fonts folder (usually located in the Control Panel). After opening the Fonts folder, select the File, Install New Font option. The Add Fonts window appears and asks for the drive and directory in which the new TrueType font files are located. When you finish selecting the fonts you want to install, click Ok to install them.

For the system to correctly match the fonts installed under Windows, the family and face name must be spelled exactly the same as they appear on the Names tab of the Properties window for the font. Use FXR settings for FAP height, FAP width, and so on, to customize the display of a font. For information on choosing one of these Windows display fonts to match a printer font, see [Choosing Screen Fonts on page 214](#).

## USING PRINTER FONTS

The system supports printer fonts for AFP, Xerox Metacode, PCL, and PostScript printers. Here is some background information you should know about each of these print platforms.

### AFP

AFP fonts are designed solely for IBM's AFP printers. In AFP terminology, a font is described by three components:

- Coded fonts** A coded font file contains references to specific character set and specific code page. Coded font files always begin with the letter *X*, such as XODATIN8.
- Code pages** In IBM AFP terminology, a code page file maps code points to an AFP character name in a character set file. Code page files always begin with the letter *T*, such as T1DOCo37.
- Character sets** A character set file contains the bitmap image of each character in the character set. Character set files always begin with the letter *C*, such as CoFATIN8.240 or CoFATIN8.300. The character set file name extension (240 or 300) indicates whether the bitmap images are drawn at 240 or 300 dots per inch. Each character is given a eight letter AFP character name. For example, the letter *A* has an AFP character name of LA020000.

### Metacode

Metacode fonts are designed solely for Xerox Metacode printers. Metacode fonts are bitmap fonts. Typically, Metacode font files have a file extension of FNT, such as FXTIN8.FNT. Characters are accessed by code points.

## PCL

PCL is the Printer Control Language developed by Hewlett Packard for its LaserJet (and compatible) printers. PCL bitmap fonts are used by the system. PCL bitmap fonts can have any file name extension. The system provides PCL fonts with an extension of PCL, such as FPTIN8.PCL. Like Metacode fonts, PCL characters are accessed by code points.

## PostScript Fonts

PostScript fonts were designed and developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated. PostScript fonts are actually a special implementation of a PostScript language program. PostScript fonts are scalable fonts and there are several types of PostScript fonts, PostScript Type 1 fonts are most common and are the only type supported by the system. Typically, Type 1 font files have a file extension of PFB, such as COURIER.PFB.

Each character in a PostScript font has a PostScript character name. When used as a screen font, the operating system associates code points in a code page with the appropriate PostScript character names.

---

**NOTE:** The system uses the CODEPAGE.INI file to associate code points with the appropriate PostScript characters.

---

## TrueType Fonts

TrueType is a scalable font designed and developed by Apple Computer and Microsoft for use on the Macintosh computer and on PCs running Microsoft Windows. TrueType is WYSIWYG (what you see is what you get). The same font can be used with printers and video displays. Typically, TrueType font files have a file extension of TTF.

## Adding Printer Fonts to a Font Cross-reference File

Fonts are added to an FXR file using the system's Font Manager. You can insert TrueType, PCL, AFP, Xerox Metacode, certain FormMaker II files, and other FXR files into a font cross-reference file. Font Manager is discussed in [Using Font Manager on page 187](#). For specific instructions on inserting a font into an FXR file, see [Inserting Fonts on page 208](#).

## USING SYSTEM FONTS

Skywire Software has licensed for use and distribution with the system the following Postscript and TrueType fonts from Monotype Imaging, Inc. (formerly Agfa):

- Albany
- Arial Black
- Arial Narrow
- Courier
- Letter Gothic
- Times
- Univers
- Univers Condensed
- DocuDings
- MICR
- OCRA
- OCRB
- ZIPCODE

Albany (an Arial clone), Arial Narrow, Arial Black, and DocuDings (a Wingdings clone) are clones of commonly-used Windows fonts. The fonts are similar in appearance to the corresponding Windows fonts and have the same character width attributes. In addition, you can now use PCL, PostScript, AFP, and Metacode versions of these fonts for printing.

---

**NOTE:** Although DocuDings is very similar to Wingdings, there are some differences. For instance, code point 255 in Wingdings is the flying Windows symbol (☸). The DocuDings font displays a blank space for code point 255. The other code points (characters) are very similar in appearance but are not exact duplicates to the Wingdings font.

The Monotype font sets include the Euro character (€).

---

From these fonts, Skywire Software has created fonts to use with AFP, PCL, and Xerox printers. These fonts let you print nearly identical forms on any supported printer. Skywire Software uses the following file naming convention for AFP, PCL, and Xerox printer fonts:

F T F<sub>1</sub> F<sub>1</sub> S P

For example, a 10 point bold Courier Xerox font would be named *FXCOBo.FNT*.

<b>F</b>	Standard Skywire Software system font
<b>T</b>	Printer type where A = AFP, P = PCL, X = Xerox 0 degree, 9 = Xerox 90 degree, 1 = Xerox 180 degree, 2 = Xerox 270 degree
<b>F<sub>1</sub></b>	Two-character family name where AB = Albany, AL = Arial Black, AN = Arial Narrow, CO = Courier, HV = Helvetica, LG = Letter Gothic, TI = Times, UN = Univers, UC = Univers Condensed, DD = DocuDings, MI = MICR, OA = OCRA, OB = OCRB, ZP = ZIP code
<b>S</b>	Style where B = Bold, I = Italic, O = Bold Italic, N = Normal/Medium
<b>P</b>	Point size where 1 - 9 = point sizes 1-9 and 0 = point size 10 A - Z = point sizes 11-36

## Font Cross-reference Files for Monotype Fonts

[HPINTL.FXR](#),  
[HPINTLSM.FXR](#)

These FXRs provide support for Hewlett Packard (PCL) internal fonts using ANSI code page character sets instead using Monotype-based PCL downloadable fonts. The HPINTLSM.FXR file is a subset of the font information contained in the HPINTL.FXR file—*SM* indicates *small*.

[REL95.FXR](#), [REL95SM.FXR](#)

Use these FXRs if you intend to print on an AFP printer using Monotype fonts. These FXRs specify new Monotype AFP coded fonts which use a new code page file. The system uses code page 37 for EBCDIC platforms. These AFP fonts are based on this standard. The REL95SM.FXR file is a subset of the font information contained in the REL95.FXR file—*SM* indicates *small*.

[REL102.FXR](#),  
[REL102SM.FXR](#)

These FXRs are similar to the REL95 FXRs but also include these fonts: Univers Condensed, MICR, OCRA, and OCRB.

[REL103.FXR](#),  
[REL103SM.FXR](#)

These FXRs are similar to the REL102 FXRs but also include these fonts: Albany, Arial Black, Arial Narrow, and DocuDings. Be aware that the REL103SM.FXR file does not include DocuDings or all of the point sizes of the Albany group (including bold and italic), the Arial Narrow group (including bold and italic), and the Arial Black group (including italic).

You can identify these fonts via their names. For example *18010* indicates a 10-point Albany font. The initial *1* indicates Monotype, the *8* indicates Albany, the *0* indicates normal type, and *10* is the point size.

Arial Black fonts are indicated with a nine (9) and Arial Narrow fonts are indicated with a zero (0). DocuDings are indicated with a 34. You can find detailed information on font naming conventions in the Working with Fonts chapter of the [Docucreate User Guide](#).

Below are the PostScript and TrueType fonts included in REL103SM.FXR:

PostScript Font	PostScript Font Name
ALBB____.PFB	Albany-Bold
ALBBI____.PFB	Albany-BoldItalic
ALBIT____.PFB	Albany-Italic
ALBR____.PFB	Albany-Regular
AN____.PFB	ArialNarrowMT
ANB____.PFB	ArialNarrowMT-Bold
ANBI____.PFB	ArialNarrowMT-BoldItalic
ANI____.PFB	ArialNarrowMT-Italic
ARBLI____.PFB	ArialMT-BlackItalic
ARIBL____.PFB	ArialMT-Black
DOCUD____.PFB	DocuDings

TrueType Font	TrueType Font Name
ALB.TTF	Albany AMT
ALBB.TTF	Albany AMT Bold
ALBBI.TTF	Albany AMT Bold Italic
ALBI.TTF	Albany AMT Italic
ARBL.TTF	Arial Black
ARBLIT.TTF	Arial Black Italic
ARIALN.TTF	Arial Narrow
ARIALNB.TTF	Arial Narrow Bold
ARIALNBI.TTF	Arial Narrow Bold Italic
ARIALNI.TTF	Arial Narrow Italic
DOCUDING.TTF	DocuDings

---

## USING CUSTOM FONTS

To the system, custom fonts are simply fonts which are not based on the ANSI code page. This means that the font contains characters which have different code points or which do not exist in the ANSI code page. If you cannot use the system's Monotype fonts (or at least ANSI code page based fonts), you will need to consider these possible issues:

- Viewing Forms

Viewing forms may be the first problem since the characters in the original printer font do not match the characters used in displaying text on the screen. This problem will be seen during forms composition. This will also be a problem if the you have licensed the Entry or Archive Retrieval modules. Keyboard entry becomes a training issue as well. Under Windows, you must use 4-digit ALT key sequences to prevent code point translation.

If possible, you should convert any custom fonts to TrueType fonts for Windows and install the fonts into your operating system. If the font cross-reference file is properly modified to specify these screen fonts, the system will display your forms correctly. However, these characters may not display properly in Docucreate and Documaker Workstation.

---

**NOTE:** The Xerox Font Center will convert a Xerox Metacode font into a PostScript or TrueType font for a fee. They may convert AFP fonts as well. You can reach them at 1-800-445-3668.

---

- PDF Incompatibility

In addition to the Entry and Archive module problem, PDF or Acrobat files created for Internet archive retrieval use the ANSI code page for displaying forms. Therefore, archived forms based on custom fonts may not display correctly when retrieved through Skywire Software's Docupresentation.

- Printing Forms

Another problem concerns using custom fonts on multiple (ASCII and EBCDIC) platforms. The system performs ASCII/EBCDIC translation based on the assumption that the ASCII code page is the ANSI code page and that the EBCDIC code page is code page 37. The system also assumes that PCL, PostScript, and Metacode printers use ASCII (hence ANSI) fonts. The system assumes AFP printers use EBCDIC fonts. The following table shows when the system will translate text (from FAP files) and variable data (from extract files) when printed under different platforms and printers.

Platform / Printer	ASCII (Windows 32-bit) ASCII FAP files and Extract data	EBCDIC (z/OS, AS400) EBCDIC FAP files and Extract data
AFP	ASCII to EBCDIC translation	No translation
PCL	No translation	EBCDIC to ASCII translation
PostScript	No translation	EBCDIC to ASCII translation
Xerox Metacode	No translation	EBCDIC to ASCII translation

#### On AFP printers

On a PC, text will be translated when printing to an AFP printer. Therefore, the code points used in text or variable data on forms are very important. After these code points are translated to the EBCDIC (code page 37), they must match the code points associated with the desired characters in the AFP code page which will be used.

On EBCDIC platforms, such as z/OS, AS400, text is assumed to be EBCDIC and will not be translated when you print to an AFP printer. The key to correct printing is to make sure the text (FAP files) and variable data (extract files) use the code points associated with the desired characters in the AFP code page you will use. Since FAP files are created as ASCII files on a PC, they will need to be transferred to the EBCDIC platform. Since you are using custom fonts, it is quite likely the file transfer software will not perform the proper code point translation. In this case, you may need to upload the files without translation and use the CPCNV utility to translate the files. This may require defining a special code page in the CODEPAGE.INI file for the CPCNV utility to use to do the proper translation.

See [Determining Characters Used in a Printer Font on page 160](#) for help in determining how code points will be associated with font characters.

**On Xerox Metacode printers**

On a PC, text (code points) will not be translated when printing to a Metacode printer.

On EBCDIC platforms (z/OS, AS400), text is assumed to be EBCDIC and will be translated to ASCII (ANSI code page) when printing to a Metacode printer. Therefore, the EBCDIC code points used in text or variable data on forms are very important. Since the FAP files are ASCII files created on a PC, they will need to be transferred to the EBCDIC platform. Since you are using custom fonts, it is quite likely that the file transfer software will not perform the proper code point translation. In this case, you may need to upload the files without translation and use the CPCNV utility to translate the files. This may require defining a special code page in the CODEPAGE.INI file for the CPCNV utility to use to do the proper translation.

See [Determining Characters Used in a Printer Font on page 160](#) for help in determining how code points will be associated with font characters.

**On PCL printers**

On a PC, text (code points) will not be translated when printing to a PCL printer. On EBCDIC platforms (z/OS, AS400), PCL print is not currently supported.

**On PostScript printers**

On a PC, text (code points) will not be translated when printing to a PostScript printer. On EBCDIC platforms (z/OS, AS400), PostScript print is not currently supported.

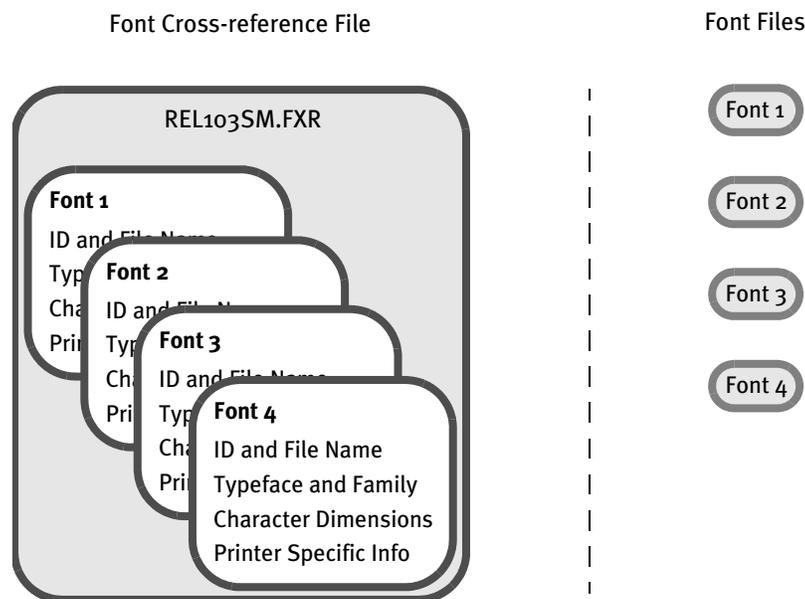
## USING FONT CROSS- REFERENCE FILES

The font cross-reference file lets you organize the fonts you use for display and printing. The FXR provides the system with all the necessary font information. It does not contain the actual font files; rather, it contains information about the font attributes. Font attribute information includes formatting styles (bold, italic, and so on), point size (10 point, 14 point, and so on), and font stroke weight (heavy, light, and so on).

### Understanding the System

Storing the cross-reference information separately from the physical fonts affords greater flexibility in printer and font usage. You can convert virtually any font for your individual printer environment, provided you obtain appropriate license agreements for the fonts.

Let's examine the organization of the font cross-reference file and the font files. The illustration below depicts a font cross-reference file named REL103SM.FXR. This file contains a single font set. It includes all the crucial information for each font in the font set. The actual font files are physically separate from the font cross-reference file.



As shown above, the font files are distinct from the font cross-reference file. When you work with the font cross-reference file you affect the stored font information. You do not affect the separate and independent font files. The number of available fonts is limited only by your needs and storage space. If you keep this organizational structure in mind you can easily work with the font cross-reference file.

The font cross-reference file provides the names of your independent font files, but it is more than a simple listing of fonts. The file contains crucial font attribute information along with information specific to your printer types. The printer information is crucial because images are compiled based on your printer environment.

The font cross-reference file ends in the extension *FXR* (for font cross-reference). The system includes these font cross-reference files:

```
FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\HPINTL.FXR
```

FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\HPINTLSM.FXR

FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\REL103.FXR

FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\REL103SM.FXR

**REL103SM.FXR** - References Times (Roman), Courier, Univers and Univers Condensed fonts for PostScript, AFP, Metacode, and PCL printers. This FXR file is pre-installed in your system.

Additional PostScript fonts are also included in the REL103.FXR file. This FXR file references standard and supplemental PostScript fonts and all font attributes. You can use the supplemental installation disks to add fonts to your font set, and use the REL103.FXR file as your font reference file, as your system's disk space allows.

Keep in mind these points concerning the FXR file:

- Contains one font set

The font set is the specific group of fonts you choose to include in your font cross-reference file. Each font cross-reference file contains a single font set. You assign each font cross-reference file and font set a unique name. For example, you might organize a font set for creating and printing accounting forms in a font cross-reference file called ACCOUNT.FXR.

- Contains information on multiple fonts

A font set contains numerous fonts. For example, a font set might contain Times New Roman fonts and Gothic fonts of multiple point sizes with bold and italic attributes. A second font set might contain Courier fonts and Helvetica fonts, also of multiple point sizes with bold, italic and regular attributes.

- Independent of your font files

The font cross-reference file works with the printer and window font files. Remember that the font files are separate files from the font cross-reference file.

## HOW FXR SETTINGS AFFECT DISPLAY AND PRINT QUALITY

Certain attributes in the FXR file affect how the system displays text. For example, when the system displays text, it uses scalable font technology which exists in Adobe Type 1 Postscript fonts and TrueType fonts. All versions of Windows support TrueType fonts. Windows 2000 also supports PostScript fonts.

These fonts are selected via the family name specified in our FXR, and scaled according to point size, height and width parameters in the FXR. The fonts are spaced according to the character widths specified in the FXR.

Once the font is selected, then it can be zoomed in and out, or additionally scaled as required. Bitmap fonts do not have this scaling ability, which is why scalable fonts are used for display purposes, rather than bitmap fonts.

This means that when the system displays text on the screen, it attempts to mirror how it will look on paper. To achieve the same look on the screen as on paper, the parameters in the FXR are critical. The more accurate the FXR is, the more likely the display will mirror the printed document. The printed document is the standard for the screen display.

Since the system includes Monotype TrueType and PostScript fonts which match its printer fonts, if you install these Monotype fonts on a Windows system, what you see on your screen will more closely match what you print out. The keys are to closely match the printer's fonts and to have the best possible information in the FXR file.

Creating a font cross-reference file is usually done by importing a printer font file using Font Manager. Since the font cross-reference file is a representation of information contained in the printer font file, modification of its fields usually does not affect the printed output. However, modifying these FXR fields can improve the system's ability to display forms. See [Choosing Screen Fonts on page 214](#) for help in selecting a screen font similar to the printer font.

## MAINTAINING FXR FILES

Use Font Manager to maintain FXR files. You can start this tool from Docucreate (choose Resources, Fonts) or from Image Editor (choose Tools, Font Manager). Font Manager makes it easy to insert, edit, copy or delete font information in the FXR file. Instructions for using Font Manager can be found in [Using Font Manager on page 187](#).

## Choosing a Font Cross-reference File

During library setup, you must choose either REL103.FXR or REL103SM.FXR as the font cross-reference file for an AFP printer. You should also specify the PCL download font file named REL103SM.FNT in the FntFile option of the Resource Library window.

If you have older versions of the AFP coded font and code page files installed in PSF or PSF/2, you can use these versions to print to the same AFP printer. If you do not keep the older AFP coded font and code page files installed, you must recompile AFP page overlays for the current version using REL103.FXR or REL103SM.FXR.

## Understanding the System

This example shows you how the HPINTL.FXR and HPINTLSM.FXR files use PCL escape sequences in the Setup Data field (on the Font Properties window) to use internal fonts on a PCL printer. If you use Font Manager to edit a font in the HPINTL(sm).FXR file, you will see the PCL escape sequence in this field.

For example, if you look at the Setup Data field for font ID 11036 (Times Roman Normal 36 point), you will see:

```
~(19U~(s1p36vosob5T
```

### Where Represents

~	an escape character which must always start a PCL escape sequence
(19U	the primary symbol set or code page (Windows 3.1 Latin 1 in this case)
~	the start of a second PCL escape sequence
(s1p	the spacing of the font (proportional in this case)
36v	the height of the font in point size (36 point in this case)
os	the style of the font (normal in this case)

**Where Represents**

ob	the stroke weight of the font (medium in this case)
5T	the typeface family of the font (Times Roman in this case)

There are other values you can use for each of these sequences. For example, the character or symbol set values used in HPINTL.FXR are:

*19U* for Windows 3.1 Latin 1

This symbol set matches the Windows ANSI code page and IBM code page 1004. You can find a list of character set values in the HP manual entitled, *PCL 5 Comparison Guide*.

Spacing values are (*s1p* for proportional fonts and *sop* for fixed pitch fonts.

- Point size values are placed before the *v*
- Font styles are *os* for normal, *is* for italic
- Font stroke weights are *ob* for medium, *3b* for bold

The typeface family values used in HPINTL.FXR are:

- *5T* for Times Roman
- *3T* for Courier
- *6T* for Letter Gothic
- *52T* for Univers

## INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE SUPPORT

Skywire Software's goal for international language support is to support the languages you are most likely to need. At the present, Skywire Software considers these languages to be those used in the Western Hemisphere and Western Europe.

If you need support for Far Eastern languages like Chinese, Japanese, or Korean or if you need support for Eastern European languages, you must use version 10.2 or higher. Contact Skywire Software Support to receive a copy of the document, *Using Unicode*, for more information.

### USING THE ANSI CODE PAGE FOR PC PLATFORMS

The Windows operating environment supports languages in these countries via a code page known as the *ANSI code page*. Windows supports different keyboard mappings for these countries by translating the key codes into ANSI code points. Therefore, even though a keystroke for an international character generates different *key codes* on English, Spanish, and French keyboards, a Windows application receives the same *ANSI code point*.

---

#### Understanding the System

Skywire Software adopted these standards:

- The ANSI code page is the standard code page for all data files. The text contained in FAP files is stored using the ANSI code page.
- The ANSI code page is the standard for the Monotype fonts included with the system.

See [Using International Characters on page 180](#) for more information.

---

By adopting these standards, you receive these benefits:

- Support for 13 languages used in approximately 40 countries
- Improved platform resource compatibility (Windows, UNIX, and z/OS).
- You only need one set of Monotype fonts—no need to create separate fonts for each language
- Improved support of other Windows products, such as dictionaries, databases, and so on.

The ANSI code page is used by the World Wide Web and UNIX computers, as well as the Windows operating environment.

There are a few drawbacks to this approach. For instance, although all international alphabetic characters in the Latin character set are supported in the ANSI code page, certain symbols available in other code pages are not supported. These symbols include mathematical, scientific, and line drawing symbols. Greek, Cyrillic, and Asian characters are not supported either. And, in some cases, data files may have to be converted to ANSI code page characters.

## USING CODE PAGE 37 FOR EBCDIC PLATFORMS

To support international languages on EBCDIC platforms, such as z/OS and AS400, Skywire Software uses EBCDIC code page 37 as the standard EBCDIC code page. Code page 37 is the native code page for many z/OS and AS400 systems. By using code page 37, you receive these benefits:

- Code page 37 supports languages used in Europe and North and South America, such as French, Spanish, Italian, German, Portuguese, and Danish.
- This reduces or eliminates the need to convert extract files containing international characters on z/OS and AS400 platforms.
- This helps reduce or eliminate the need to convert resources before uploading to EBCDIC platforms from Windows.
- Using code page 37 for EBCDIC platforms creates compatibility problems with resources created in earlier versions. This only affects resources created in an earlier version which contain international or desktop publishing characters.
- All characters defined in code page 37 are also contained in code page 1004, the standard ASCII code page. There are, however, characters in code page 1004 which are not in code page 37—mainly desktop publishing characters from code point 128 to 159. To support these characters, we use undefined code points in code page 37 (code points below 64). For maximum portability, *avoid* using characters not defined in code page 37.

AFP print output and resource files normally use EBCDIC characters. The other supported printers, such as Metacode, PCL, and PostScript, normally use ASCII characters.

---

**NOTE:** The current AFP code page file is called T1DOC037, the AFP code page for prior versions was called T100ASC4. The current AFP coded font files are called XoDA????.FNT, the AFP coded font files for prior releases were called XoFA????.FNT. The AFP character set files are unchanged and can be used by all versions.

---

## USING INTERNATIONAL CHARACTERS

One method for entering international characters is to install a country/language specific version of Windows. These language-specific versions of Windows map characters from the keyboard differently so that it is easier to enter characters common to that language. In the simplest case, a single keystroke will generate an international character.

For example, if you have a Canadian French version of Windows, pressing the slash character (/) on a U.S. keyboard produces an e-acute letter (é). Many international characters require a two-character keystroke combination. Again using the Canadian French keyboard setup, you must press the left square bracket ([) followed by the letter e to generate an e-circumflex letter (ê).

Having to install a special version of Windows would be difficult for those in the U.S. who are trying to compose forms with French characters. Fortunately, there is a simpler solution.

Using the numeric keypad on the right side of your keyboard, you can hold down the ALT key and enter a three-digit number to enter an international character. For example, if your primary (OEM) code page is 437 or 850, you can enter the letter ñ (lowercase) by pressing the ALT key while you type 164 on the numeric keypad. When you release the ALT key, the code point 164 will be generated by the keyboard, which Windows will display as the letter ñ.

---

**NOTE:** If you look at the code page 1004 table you will see that on the ANSI code page code point 164 is not the letter ñ. So why is the letter ñ being displayed? Windows recognizes that a code point of 164 has been generated by the keyboard and it is associated with the OEM code page (437 or 850). For this code page, code point 164 maps to the letter ñ. In Windows, the code point from the keyboard is translated from 164 to 241. A Windows program will actually receive a keystroke code point of 241 instead and that code point will display as the desired letter ñ.

---

You can also use the numeric keypad to enter ANSI code points directly. Using the numeric keypad on the right side of your keyboard, you can press the ALT key and type a four-digit number to key in an international character. For example, you can enter in the letter ñ by pressing the ALT key and typing 0241 on the numeric keypad. Entering a four-digit number beginning with a zero tells Windows you are entering a code point for the ANSI code page. Therefore, Windows does not need to translate the code point and passes the keystroke code point directly to the Windows application.

By standardizing on the ANSI code page, a document containing several languages can be read and written by a number of people from different countries. The keystroke code point translation lets Windows support many OEM code pages and keyboard settings.

---

**NOTE:** You can use any Windows text editor, such as Notepad, to edit resource files since Windows also uses the ANSI code page.

---

## CONVERTING TEXT FILES FROM ONE CODE PAGE TO ANOTHER

There are two situations where you may need to convert text files from one code page to another.

- If the customer's data (extract) file is not in the ANSI code page and the file contains international characters, you will need to convert the customer data file to use the ANSI code page.
- If you need to upload system resource files, such as FAP, INI, and menu resource (MEN.RES) files, which contain international characters to an EBCDIC platform, such z/OS or AS400, and the file transfer software cannot convert ANSI code page file to EBCDIC code page 37.

To convert a file from one code page to another, you can use the CPCNV code page conversion utility. For more information, see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

## SETTING UP POSTSCRIPT FONTS

The system includes a standard font set with PostScript fonts. These fonts reside in the FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\ directory with the sample forms included with Docucreate. Skywire Software devised naming conventions for the bitmap printer fonts that are created from the PostScript fonts supported by the system. PostScript fonts are easily converted to Xerox, AFP, and PCL formats.

**NOTE:** When you create bitmap printer fonts from PostScript fonts, follow the naming convention outlined in the table below. This will make it easier to track and identify those fonts.

A standard font has a six-character name. Each character indicates a specific piece of data that describes the font. For example, you may take a PostScript font such as Times (Roman), Bold (**TIB\_\_\_\_.PFB**), convert the font to Metacode format, and change the name to the standard FSI bitmap font name (**FXTIOM**). The font name characters designate the following:

Character	Definition
1	Converted PostScript fonts always begin with the letter F, indicating a system supported font.
2	Indicates the printer platform associated with the converted font: <b>X</b> = Xerox, <b>A</b> = AFP, <b>P</b> = PCL
3 and 4	Indicate the font family, such as Times Roman, Courier, and so on. <i>AB</i> = Albany <i>AL</i> = Arial Black <i>AN</i> = Arial Narrow <b>CO</b> = Courier <i>DD</i> = DocuDings <i>UC</i> = Univers Condensed <b>LG</b> = Letter Gothic <i>MI</i> = MICR <b>TI</b> = Times (Roman) <i>OA</i> = OCRA <b>UN</b> = Univers(al) <i>OB</i> = OCRB <i>ZP</i> = ZIP code
5	Indicates the style of the font: <b>N</b> = Normal (no attributes), <b>B</b> = Bold, <b>I</b> = Italic, <b>O</b> = Bold, Italic
6	Indicates the point size of the font. Use numbers <b>1</b> through <b>9</b> for point sizes 1 through 9. <b>o</b> (zero) = 10 point <b>A</b> = 11 point <b>B</b> = 12 point <b>C</b> = 13 point--through-- <b>Z</b> = 36 point

This table lists PostScript fonts and their file names. The list shows the font names before you create and name the fonts using the conventions in the previous table. Point sizes are omitted in the names below. Use the table on the previous page to determine the remaining font file name value for each corresponding font size.

Font	File Name
Albany	ALBR____.PFB
Arial Black	ARIBL____.PFB
Arial Narrow	AN_____.PFB
Courier	CO_____.PFB
Courier Bold	COB_____.PFB
Courier Bold Italic	COBI_____.PFB
Courier Italic	COI_____.PFB
DocuDings	DOCUD____.PFB
Letter Gothic	LG_____.PFB
Letter Gothic Bold	LGB_____.PFB
Letter Gothic Bold Italic	LGBSL____.PFB
Letter Gothic Italic	LGSL_____.PFB
MICR MT	MICR_____.PFB
OCRA MT	OCRA_____.PFB
OCRB MT	OCRBMT____.PFB
Times Roman	TIR_____.PFB
Times Roman Bold	TIB_____.PFB
Times Roman Bold Italic	TIBI_____.PFB
Times Roman Italic	TII_____.PFB
Univers	UNM_____.PFB
Univers Bold	UNB_____.PFB
Univers Bold Italic	UNBI_____.PFB
Univers Italic	UNMI_____.PFB
Univers-Condensed Bold	UNCB_____.PFB
Univers-Condensed Medium	UNCM_____.PFB

Font	File Name
Univers-Condensed Medium Italic	UNCM1____.PFB
ZIPcode Barcode-Regular	ZIPCODE_.PFB

Remember that PostScript fonts are scaleable. You complete font file name by adding the point size values when you convert the font. Here is an example:

CSBD\_\_.PFB = CS Bookman Bold (any point size)

**NOTE:** AFM files are Adobe Font Metrics files which describe a PostScript font. These files are used when you install PostScript fonts using Adobe Type Manager.

PostScript fonts reference code pages to define window and print characters. In turn, the code page maps to specific characters in the character set. The PostScript fonts included with Docucreate reference code page 1004, W1 and are pictured below.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
<b>0</b>																
<b>16</b>																
<b>32</b>		!	"	#	\$	%	&	¢	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
<b>48</b>	o	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
<b>64</b>	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
<b>80</b>	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
<b>96</b>	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
<b>112</b>	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{		}	~	
<b>128</b>			,		„	º	†	‡	^	‰	Š	‹	Œ			
<b>144</b>		‘	’	“	”	•	–	—	~	™	š	›	œ			ÿ
<b>160</b>		ı	ı	£	¤	¥	¦	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
<b>176</b>	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	,	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
<b>192</b>	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
<b>208</b>	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
<b>224</b>	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
<b>240</b>	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

Bitmap fonts are a specific set of symbols or characters. The maximum number of characters a set of bitmap fonts can reference is 256. Scaleable fonts, such as PostScript fonts, may have more than 256 characters, but only 256 can be used at one time. The system's font structure is designed to use the standard code page 1004, W1. Code pages are predefined in your system, and reside in the CODEPAGE.INI file in your DEFLIB directory. The path is FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB.

The characters in the code page include foreign language characters and mathematical function characters. When you convert PostScript fonts using Font Manager, you always select this code page (1004). You may, however, notice that the PostScript fonts themselves support multiple code pages.

---

**NOTE:** If you want to use the internal printer fonts and you will print international characters, your printer must have the character or symbol set named Windows Latin 1 (also known as ANSI code page) on your printer. Be aware that not all PCL printers support this character set.

---

## FONTS FOR PDF FILES

When you are creating PDF files, keep in mind that the following PostScript fonts are included with Adobe Acrobat Reader and do not have to be embedded.

Fixed Pitch Fonts	Proportional Fonts
Courier	Helvetica
Courier-Bold	Helvetica-Bold
Courier-Oblique	Helvetica-Oblique
Courier-BoldOblique	Helvetica-BoldOblique
	Times-Roman
	Times-Bold
	Times-Italic
	Times-BoldItalic
	Symbol
	ZapfDingbats

## FONT NAMING CONVENTIONS

When adding fonts to a font set, or when installing new fonts, you must give each font a unique ID. Use this 5-digit naming convention:

The...	Indicates...
First digit	the font provider: 1= Monotype 2= Adobe
Second digit  The standard FXR file (REL103SM) defines only Times (Roman), Courier, and Univers. If you add other fonts to your FXR, use these font code naming conventions.  (DocuDings is included in 3)	the font type or font family:  1 = Times (Roman) 2 = Courier 3 = OCRA, OCRB, MICR, and ZIPcode* 5 = Letter Gothic 6 = Univers 7 = Univers Condensed 8=Albany 9=Arial Black 0=Arial Narrow
Third digit	the font attributes 0= normal 1= <b>bold</b> 2= <i>italic</i> 3= <b>bold, italic</b>
Fourth and fifth digits	the point size of the font, such as 09 point, 12 point, and so on.

\* The OCRA, OCRB, MICR, and ZIPcode fonts do not have bold or italic styles so the second and third digits identify these fonts: 30 = OCRA, 31 = OCRB, 32 = MICR, 33 = ZIPcode, and 34 = DocuDings.

For example, 11010 indicates Times (Roman) Regular 10 point, 11214 indicates Times (Roman) Italic 14 point, and 16110 indicates Universal Bold 10 point.

**NOTE:** You may only use a font ID from 00001 to 32767 and the font ID must be numeric not alphanumeric.

## USING FONT MANAGER

Font Manager provides an easy method for working with your font sets. You can start Font Manager from either Docucreate or from Image Editor.

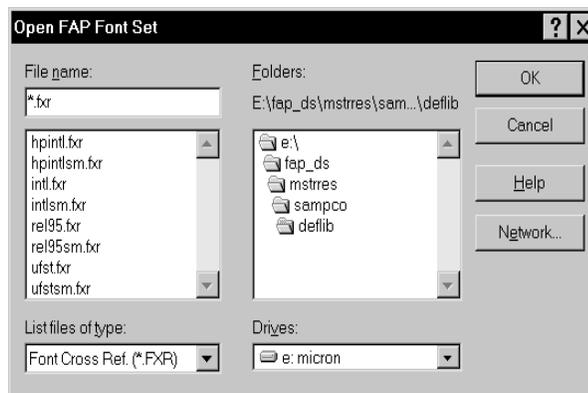
### STARTING FONT MANAGER

#### From Image Editor

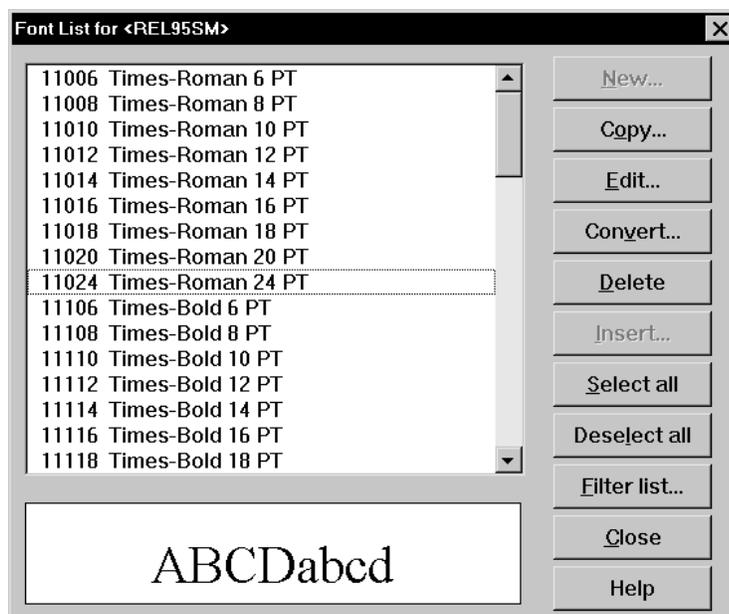
Select Tools, Font Manager. The Font List appears. This window lists the fonts in the font cross-reference file designated for the current library during library setup.

#### From Docucreate

- 1 Select the Resources menu, then select Fonts; or, click the Resources icon, then click the Fonts icon on your desktop. The Open FAP Font Set window appears, listing all the FXR files in the current library.



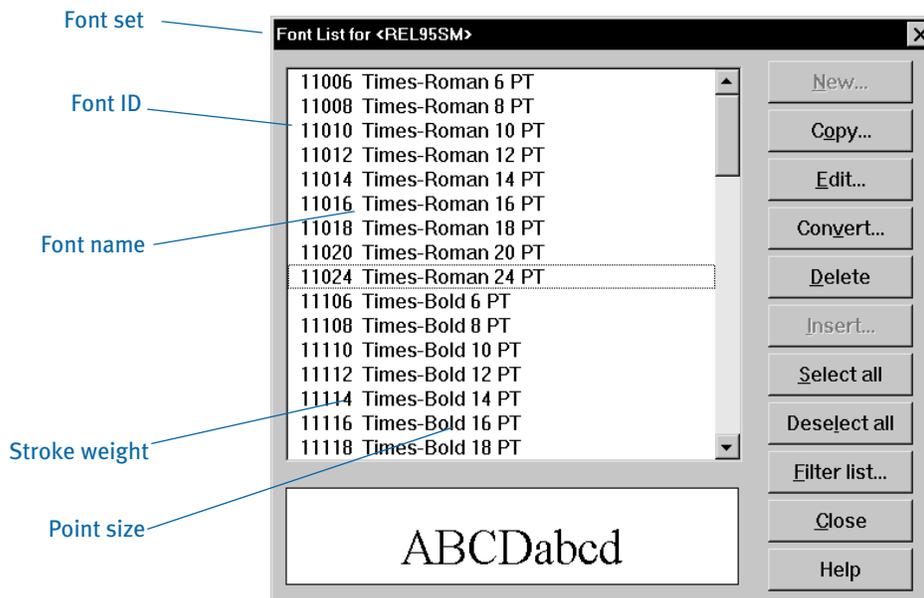
- 2 Highlight the FXR file you want to work with and click Ok. The Font List for the selected FXR appears.



## WORKING WITH THE FONT LIST

The Font List gives you important information about your font set. The name of the current font set is displayed in the window's title bar. The Font List provides the names, ID numbers, stroke weights, and point sizes of all the fonts currently in the font set. You can view your fonts in the bottom of the Font List window.

To open the Font List from Image Editor, choose Tools, Font Manager. The Font List window appears:



This window shows you fonts contained in the FXR file, as defined in your resource library setup.

In addition to viewing the fonts, the Font List window gives you additional options for organizing the font set. From the Font List window you insert, copy, delete, edit, and convert fonts. When you select New, Copy or Edit, the Font List opens the Font Properties window.

---

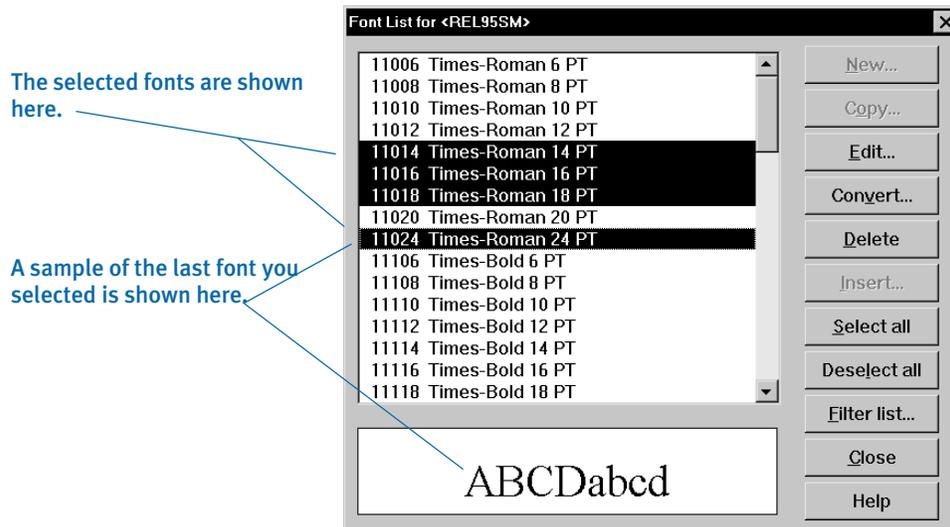
**NOTE:** The Description tab of the Font Properties window is the source of the individual font information provided in the Font List.

---

## Selecting Fonts

The Font List lets you select individual, multiple, or all of the fonts in your font list for editing purposes.

- 1 To select a font, click on the desired font to highlight it. The font you select displays in reverse video. Also, a sample of the font displays in the bottom window.



- 2 Continue highlighting fonts in this manner. You can select as many fonts as you want. When you select multiple fonts, your last font selection displays at the bottom of the window.
- 3 To select all fonts in the font list, click Select All.

### Deselecting Fonts

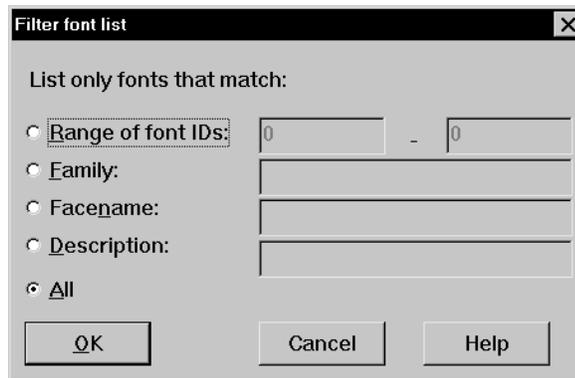
If, after selecting a font, you change your mind, just click it again to deselect it.

You can also use the Deselect All button to deselect all the selected fonts on the Font List. This is particularly useful if you need to activate the New or Insert buttons. The New and Insert buttons are not active if a font is selected. The Deselect All button prevents you from having to scroll through the list of fonts to find a highlighted or selected font near the bottom of the list.

### Filtering the List of Fonts

The Filter List option lets you select fonts from the list based on specific criteria. The more focused your font selection scope, the more efficiently you can work with the fonts.

- 1 From the Font List window, click Filter List. The system displays the Filter Font List window.



- 2 Select one option to define your font selection filter criteria. See the following table for a detailed description of the Filter Font List options and related entry descriptions.

**To filter by**    **Then**

Range of font IDs	In the entry fields, type the first and last font ID in the font range you want to display. The font IDs you enter in the fields are included in the range. For example, if you enter IDs 16010-16016, those two fonts, plus all fonts in between the range IDs appear in the Font list.
Family	Type the font family name you want to display, such as Universal or Times. The system displays all fonts in the font family.
Face name	Type the face name or font family name you want to. Font Manager does not distinguish between font family and facename. Type the same data in both the Family field, and the Facename field.
Description	Type the font description as shown in the Font Properties window. Here are some examples: Universal Medium or Courier Bold. The selection list displays all point sizes for that font.
All	Click All to see all fonts in the FXR file.

- 3 Click Ok in the Filter Font List window. The font list displays the selected fonts based on your filter criteria.

### Adding Fonts to a Font Set

Use the New button to add new fonts to the font set. The New button does not create a font; rather, it just lets you add the font to the font set. If you add a font supplied by another vendor, the vendor provides information about the font name and characteristics.

---

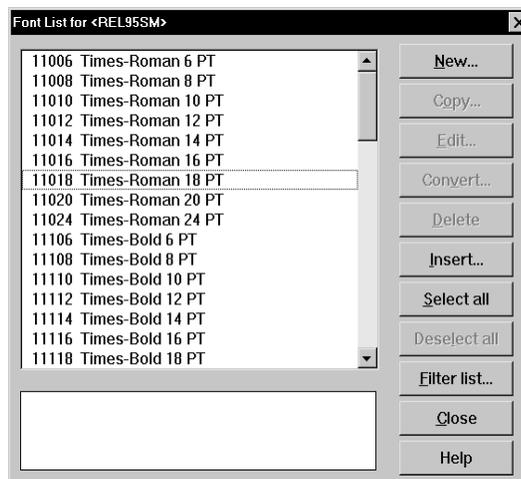
**NOTE:** Use New to manually add fonts to your font set. Use Insert to cross-reference your collateral font information, and to add a font if you also have the printer font file).

When you add a font, you must enter font description and dimension information, whereas the Insert option automatically adds this information based on the type of font you insert. You seldom use the New option unless you decide to add new fonts to your font set.

---

To add a font to the current font set, the font must exist in your master resource library font directory. From the Font Properties window, you specify the description, dimensions and printer specific information for every font.

- 1 Start Font Manager by selecting the Font Manager icon from the system folder, or by selecting Font Manager from the Image Editor Tools menu.
- 2 Select the appropriate font set. The Font List appears.

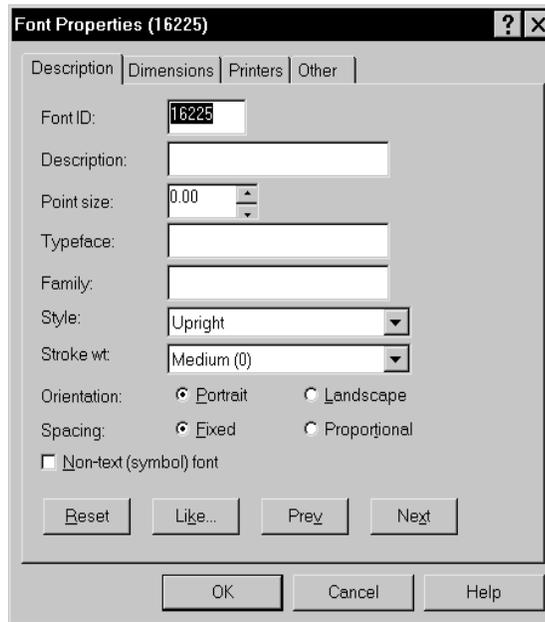


- 3 Click New. The Font Properties window appears.

---

**NOTE:** You cannot select the New button unless there are no fonts selected. Click Deselect All to activate the New button.

---



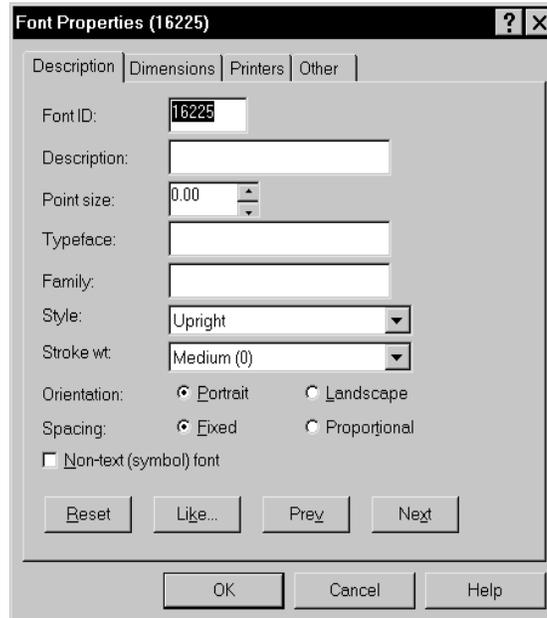
These options are available from each tab of the Font Properties window:

Option	Description
Reset	Reset reverts your most recent (unsaved) changes to their prior status. Your changes are reset for that particular page without having to exit the property window.
Like	Like lets you select a Windows display font that most closely resembles an available printer font. See <a href="#">Choosing Screen Fonts on page 214</a> for information on this option.
Prev	Prev displays the previous Prev font in the font list, and related information. If you select Prev while the first font is displayed, you scroll to the last font in the list.
Next	Next displays the next font in the font list, and related information. If you select Next while the last font is displayed, you scroll to the first font in the list.

Option	Description
Reset	Reset reverts your most recent (unsaved) changes to their prior status. Your changes are reset for that particular page without having to exit the property window.
Like	Like lets you select a Windows display font that most closely resembles an available printer font. See <a href="#">Choosing Screen Fonts on page 214</a> for information on this option.
Prev	Prev displays the previous Prev font in the font list, and related information. If you select Prev while the first font is displayed, you scroll to the last font in the list.
Next	Next displays the next font in the font list, and related information. If you select Next while the last font is displayed, you scroll to the first font in the list.

#### Description tab

The Description tab contains general description information about the font. You specify the typeface, family and other necessary information required for each font.



Here is a discussion of the fields on this tab:

Field	Description
Font ID	When a font is imported into the FXR, it is assigned a unique font ID. The system uses font IDs to track font usage. In addition, some printers require that you refer to a font by its ID number instead of its name. This value is generated when the printer font is imported into the FXR but may be changed if needed. If you change this field, you may need to change the Setup Data field for PCL Print to use the same font ID.
Description	Used in the font selection window in Font Manager.
Point Size	A point is a typographical vertical measurement, 72 points are equal to approximately 1 inch. Point size is used similarly in PostScript printing. It does not affect PCL, AFP, or Metacode printing.
Typeface	A specific member of a typeface family, such as Times-Roman or Times-Bold. The typeface name helps determine the screen font to use for display purposes.
Family	A group of typefaces that share basic design characteristics and encompass many size and style variations such as Courier or Times. The family name helps determine the screen font used for displaying text when running under Windows.
Style	Upright or Italic The style helps determine the screen font used for displaying text when running under Windows.

Field	Description
Stroke Wt.	The lightness or darkness of the printed typeface, -7 = lightest, 0 = medium, 7 = darkest. The stroke weight helps determine the screen font used for displaying text when running under Windows.
Orientation	Portrait or Landscape. This field is not currently used.
Spacing	Fixed or Proportional The spacing helps determine the screen font used for displaying text when running under Windows.

Remember, the Description tab provides information about the font file, and should match the characteristics of the font. If you enter information which does not match the font file, the font window display changes but the actual font characteristics in the font file and the font print characteristics *do not* change. Only when you change the PostScript font description do your changes affect both the window and print fonts since you use a single font file for both window display and print.

To enter font description information follow these steps:

- 1 Enter the font ID in the Font ID field. The ID must be a unique one to five digit ID (between 00001 and 32767). You must assign a unique ID to every font in the font set. Notice that the title of the window displays the current font ID. The system creates default IDs when you insert a font, based on the next available ID. See [Font Naming Conventions on page 186](#) for help in assigning a font ID.
- 2 Enter a description in the Description field. The description is the information that the form designer sees when selecting a font from a font list. The description should inform the form designer about the font type selection.
- 3 Select the desired point size in the Point Size field. The point size is the height of the font. One point is equal to approximately 1/72 inch.
- 4 Type a typeface name in the Typeface field. Font Manager selects fonts using the typeface name.

---

**NOTE:** Valid entries include the standard window display fonts of Courier, Helvetica, and Times (Roman). Type these entries as **Courier**, **Helv**, or **Tms Rmn**. To use a different font type, install the font from your operating system disks, or from your font provider disk. The font name is a valid entry after you install it.

---

- 5 Type a family name in the Family field. A family name gives the broadest category for the font, and is used to group fonts that are variations of a single design. Family names include Courier, Times (Roman), and Helvetica.

---

**NOTE:** The family name, style, and stroke weight fields control which screen font is displayed under Windows.

---

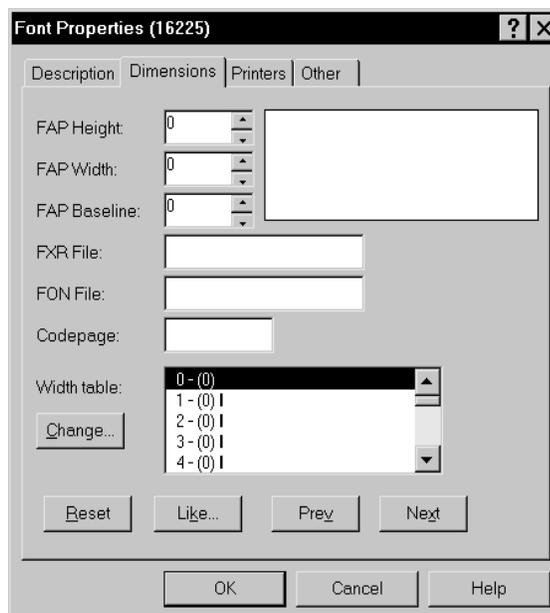
- 6 Select the style in the Style field. Style is either upright or italic. Click the arrow to the right of the field to see the available selections.
- 7 Select the stroke weight in the Stroke Wt field. Stroke weights range from Light to Lightest (-1 through -7), Medium (0) and Bold to Boldest (+1 through +7). Click the arrow to the right of the field to see the available font weight selections and compare the thickness of the font characters.
- 8 Select either Portrait or Landscape Orientation.
- 9 Select either Fixed or Proportional Spacing. Fixed spacing means all the characters have the same width. Proportional spacing means the character widths vary according to the character design.
- 10 Select the Non-Text (Symbol) font field if the font you define is not alphanumeric. This selection lets you read non-text fonts such as MICR fonts. MICR fonts are symbol fonts such as those appearing on the bottom of your bank checks. The MICR font format allows scanners to read the data and translate symbols into alphanumeric characters. Here is an example:



**NOTE:** Remember, changes made in these steps change only the window display of bitmap fonts. These changes do not alter the way the font prints.

### Dimensions tab

The Dimensions tab lets you enter dimensions for the font. You identify the exact character cell dimensions for the font, including height, width, and baseline. When you use Copy or Insert, these dimensions are filled in for you from the font file.



Here is a discussion of the fields on the Dimensions tab:

Field	Description
FAP Height	largest font character height (in FAP units, 2400 dots/inch) The font height affects the size of text displayed when running under Windows.
FAP Width	largest font character width (in FAP units) The font width affects the width of text displayed when running under Windows.
FAP Baseline	largest font character base line (in FAP units) The baseline is measured from the top of the largest character to the imaginary line that the character appears to rest on. The font baseline affects the positioning of text displayed when running under Windows.
FXR File	In the DOS/PC environment, the font file name has the extension <i>FNT</i> . This field is not currently used.
FON File	In the DOS/PC environment, the font width table file name has the extension <i>FON</i> . This field is not currently used.
Code Page	Under Windows, the system uses the ANSI code page. Normally, this field is set to 1004 or is left blank.
Width Table	The width table is calculated from the printer font file and is used to determine character spacing when displaying text. Fixed pitch fonts use the same width for each character. The width is measured in FAP units (2400 to an inch).

Remember, the Dimensions tab provides information about the font file. Information on this window should match the characteristics in the font file. If you enter dimension information which does not match the actual font file, only the bitmap font window display changes. The actual dimensions of the font in the font file do not change, nor do print dimensions of the font change.

- 1 To enter font dimensions information, click Dimensions. Enter the height in the FAP Height field.

---

**NOTE:** Enter character height in FAP units. A FAP unit is equal to 1/2400 of an inch. Therefore, if the character height is one inch, you enter 2400.

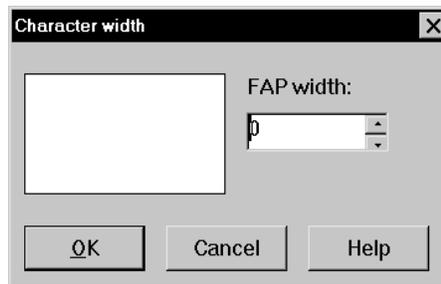
---

- 2 Enter the width in the FAP Width field.
- 3 Enter the baseline in the FAP Baseline field. The baseline is the bottom position of the characters (excluding the tail), in relation to the lines of text above and below it.

Baseline position

Baseline      Tail

- 4 Enter the name of the FXR file in the FXR File field. The FXR file is the file used by the font.
- 5 Enter an FON file in the FON File field. The FON file is a window font used by an earlier version of the system called *FormMaker II*. The FON file is the font width table. This table defines the character widths and character sets for each bitmap font. Use this option only for bitmap fonts.
- 6 If you want to change the window display width of a character, highlight the character in the Width Table and click Change. This window appears:



- 7 Select a new width for the character and click Ok. You return to the Font Properties window. Click Ok in the Font Properties window. You return to the Font List window.

**NOTE:** Remember, changes made in these steps change only the window display of bitmap fonts. These changes do not alter the way the font prints.

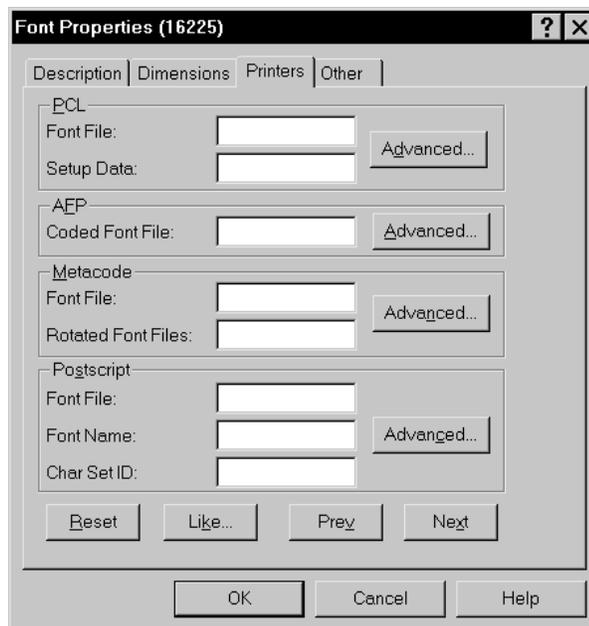
### Printers tab

The Printers tab lets you enter printer-specific information for PCL, AFP, Metacode, and PostScript printers. The Other tab lets you enter the same kind of information for printers other than those mentioned above. Here are short descriptions of PCL, AFP, Metacode, and PostScript:

Printer	Description
PCL	Print Control Language (PCL), designed and developed by Hewlett Packard, incorporates commands in compact escape sequence codes that are embedded in the print data stream.
AFP	Advanced Function Printing (AFP), developed by IBM for its Print Services Facility (PSF), is a print server language that generates data streams of objects. The data streams merge with print controls and system commands, to generate IPDS (Intelligent Printer Data Stream). The IPDS is then sent to an IPDS-compatible printer.

Printer	Description
Metacode	Metacode, developed by Xerox, is the native language of its Centralized Printing Systems. Metacode contains code that defines printing functions to the hardware. Metacode lets you position data via page addressing and to specify multiple fonts and data orientations.
PostScript	PostScript, developed by Adobe Systems, is a page description language that translates or describes a document from a computer composition system to a raster output printing system. PostScript describes pages at a high level as a series of abstract graphic objects.

- 1 To enter printer-specific information for PCL, AFP, Metacode, or Postscript printers, click Printers.



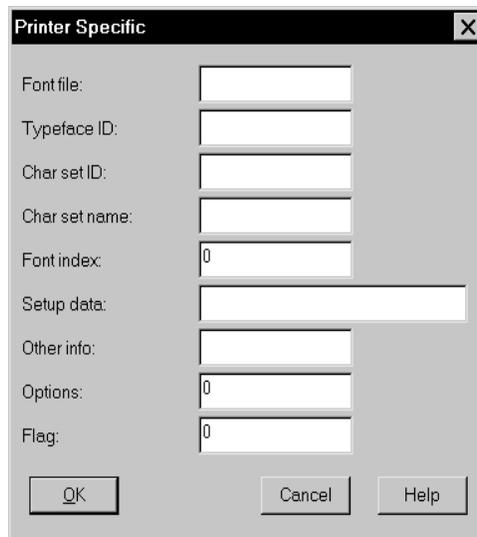
- 2 You only need to make entries into the fields for the printer you use.

Type	Field	Enter the...
PCL		

Type	Field	Enter the...
	Font File	Font file name, including the .PCL extension. For printing to PCL printers, this PCL bitmap font must be located in the FONTLIB master resource directory so that it may be downloaded to the printer if requested. For printing to PostScript printers, this PostScript Type 1 font must be located in the FONTLIB master resource directory so that it may be downloaded to the printer if requested. For printing to AFP printers, this file name must be the name of an AFP coded font file installed on the printer. For printing to Metacode printers, this file name must be the name of a Xerox font installed on the printer.
	Setup Data	Actual PCL printer sequence required to select a font. Normally, the setup data must appear in this format: ~(11018X where 11018 is the Font ID. The font ID must match the font ID you defined on the Description tab. The X must be uppercase. Your setup data may differ if you are using internal printer fonts. Check your printer manual and the online Help for the proper setup data sequence for internal printer fonts.
AFP		
	Coded Font File	Font file name. AFP font file names do not have an extension.
Metacode		
	Font File	Font file name (limited to six characters for Metacode printers). No extension.
	Rotated Font Files	File names or 90, 180 and 220 degree fonts separated by semicolons, such as <i>FNT90;FNT180;FNT270</i>
Postscript		

Type	Field	Enter the...												
	Font Name	Font file name, including the .PFB extension.												
	Font Name	Name of the font, such as Times-Roman. Font Manager fills this field when you insert a PostScript font. The font name also appears in the font .AFM file. All type 1 PostScript fonts require two files for each font family name: .AFM and .PFB. For more specific information about these files, talk with your support representative.												
	Char Set ID	<p>A character set (also known as a symbol set) identifies the set of symbols provided by the font.</p> <p>Some printers require that you refer to a character set by its ID number instead of its name.</p> <p>Used by PostScript printing to build an internal code page. Use W1 for the ANSI code page. This value should match the character set ID specified in the CODEPAGE.INI file. For instance, if you enter 1004 as the code page on the Printers tab, enter W1 here.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Codepage</th> <th>Char Set ID</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1004</td> <td>W1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>863</td> <td>CF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>850</td> <td>PM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>437</td> <td>PC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>37</td> <td>Z1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Codepage	Char Set ID	1004	W1	863	CF	850	PM	437	PC	37	Z1
Codepage	Char Set ID													
1004	W1													
863	CF													
850	PM													
437	PC													
37	Z1													

- Beside each type of printer listed on the Printers tab is an Advanced button you can use to enter additional information. Click the Advanced button to display the Printer Specific window.



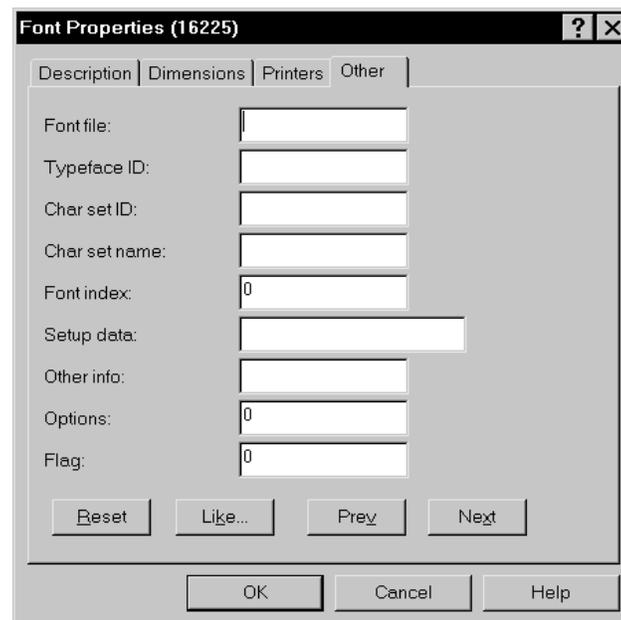
- Enter the Font File and Setup Data information. Most of the other fields (Typeface ID, Char Set Name, Font Index, Other, Options, and Flag) are not used in the base system. The Char Set ID field is used for PostScript fonts. Click Ok.

---

**NOTE:** The HPINTL.FXR and HPINTLSM.FXR files use PCL escape sequences in the Setup Data field to use internal fonts on a PCL printer. If you use Font Manager to edit a font in the HPINTL(sm).FXR file, you will see the PCL escape sequence in this field.

---

**Other tab** The Other tab can be used for custom implementations of printers other than PCL, AFP, Metacode, or PostScript. You do not need to enter information in these fields.



## Copying Font Information

The Copy button lets you copy a font and assign a new font identification number or other necessary information. Copy duplicates a font that is in your current font set. You can then open the Font Properties window and change the ID number or other descriptive information associated with the copied font.

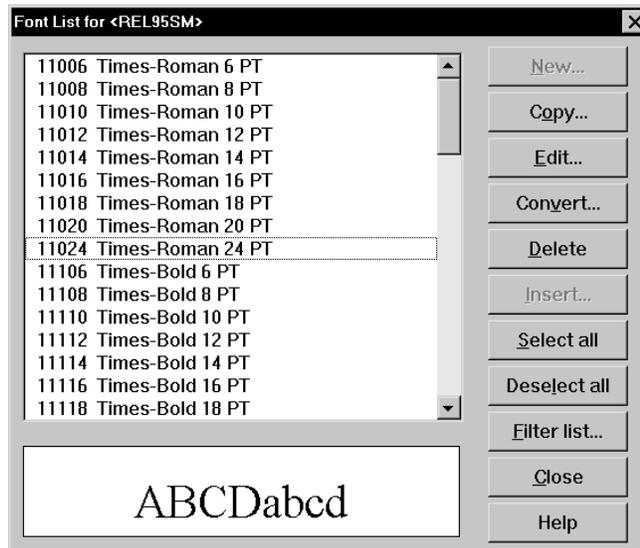
---

**NOTE:** Image Editor gives you a quick way to change all the fonts in a section (FAP file). For example, suppose you have a section designed with Helvetica Regular 10 point (font ID 16010) and you want to change all text using this font to Times (Roman) 10 point (font ID 17010). You can quickly do this by selecting the Edit, Font Change option.

---

To copy a font, follow these steps:

- 1 Start Font Manager by selecting Font Manager from the system folder, or by selecting Font Manager from the Image Editor Tools menu.
- 2 Select the appropriate font set. The Font List appears.

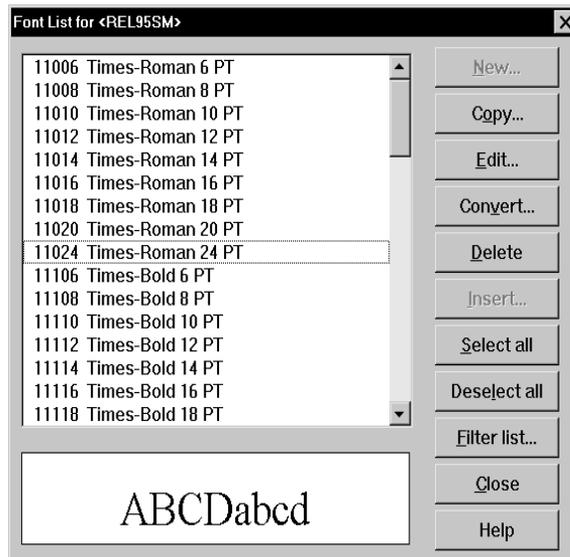


- 3 Click on the font you want to copy to highlight it and click Copy. The Font Properties window appears.
- 4 The system automatically assigns the next number in the list. To change the number to a different font ID, click on the newly added font, then click the Edit button.
- 5 Edit any other font information as necessary. When finished, click Ok.

### Editing Font Information

The Edit button gives you a way to edit the information about fonts and printers.

- 1 Start Font Manager by selecting Font Manager from the system folder, or by selecting Font Manager from the Image Editor Tools menu.
- 2 Select the appropriate font set. The Font List appears.



- 3 Highlight the font you want to edit information for and click Edit. The Font Properties window appears.
- 4 Edit any font information as necessary and click Ok.

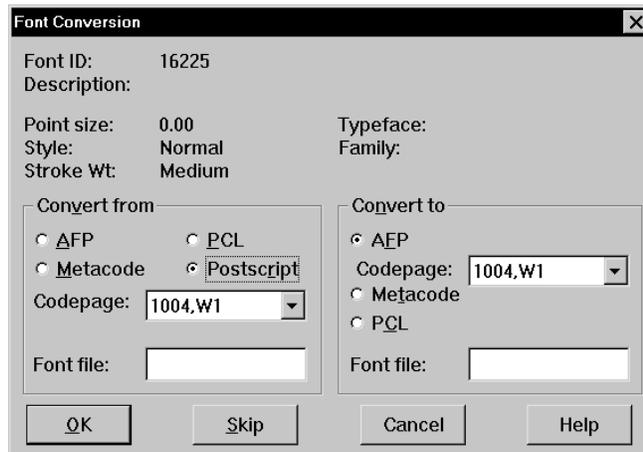
### Converting Fonts

Converting fonts lets you modify fonts so you can use the same font for different types of printers. If you want to use the fonts on AFP, PCL, and Xerox printers, you can convert the standard fonts that are included with the system. The standard fonts are PostScript fonts supported only by PostScript printers in pre-converted format. You can also convert fonts for your different printers.

Before you convert fonts, make sure the font files reside in your master resource library. PostScript fonts are loaded in the FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB directory of your system. If you want to convert other fonts, make sure you load the font files into your font directory. Check with your system supervisor for assistance.

Follow these steps to convert a font:

- 1 From the Font List window, select the font you want to convert, and click Convert. The Font Conversion window appears.



- 2 The window shows information about the current font, such as font ID, description, point size, and so on. This information also appears on the Description tab of the Font Properties window.
- 3 In the Convert From field, click the option associated with the font type you want to convert.
- 4 If you are converting a PostScript font, enter 1004 or an appropriate code page in the Codepage field.

---

**NOTE:** If a font file appears in the Convert To field, the font may already be converted. Click Skip to display the next font in the list. By selecting Skip or Cancel, you will not overwrite the converted font.

---

- 5 In the Convert From field, accept or type the font file name in the Font File field. Remember that you use the pre-converted font file name.
- 6 In the Convert To field, click the option for the font type to which you want to convert. If you convert to an AFP font, enter 1004 in the Codepage field.

---

**NOTE:** If you are converting to an AFP font, your font file name has to have an extension of 300. Also files entered in convert from and convert to should have a file extension.

---

- 7 In the Convert To field, enter the new font file name in the Font File field.
- 8 Click Ok to convert the font, or click Skip to stop the conversion. When you select Ok, the system creates a copy of the font in your font directory, and retains a copy of the original pre-converted font.

---

**NOTE:** If you selected multiple fonts to convert, information pertaining to the next font displays when you select Skip.

---

### Converting fonts from other vendors

If you purchase additional fonts from a third party vendor, you must convert the fonts for use on your printers. You must also install the fonts onto your computer and printers. Copying the new, converted fonts onto your hard drive lets the system display them accurately on screen.

---

**NOTE:** Your resource library setup tells Image Editor where your font files and your cross-reference files reside.

---

There are several legal issues to be aware of before converting fonts from other vendors. Font vendors generally copyright the fonts they create. You can legally convert fonts only if the font vendor grants permission.

The converted font is bound by the same copyright restrictions that apply to the original font. For example, if your license does not permit you to use the font on more than one computer at a time, then you are not permitted to use the converted font on more than one computer at a time. In addition, it may be a copyright violation to copy converted fonts to other platforms running on the same computer.

Here is a list of some TrueType and PostScript font vendors:

Vendor	Phone	Web site
BitStream	1.800.522.3668	www.bitstream.com
COPI	1.888.999.COPI	www.888999copi.com
Xerox Font Center	1.800.275.9376	www.xerox.com
Bigelow & Holmes Inc.	1.310.260.8580	
Carter & Cone Type Inc.	1.800.952.2129	
URW++ Design & Development	1.603.882.7445	http://urwpp.de
Monotype Imaging, Inc.	+44 (0)1737 765959 1.800.424.8973	www.monotype.com www.agfamonotype.com

### Working with multiple printers

If you are working in a multi-printer environment, your combination of printers and specific printing needs dictates your options and entries. You may also need to run the font conversion utility to convert fonts to various printer platforms. You should convert the fonts you want to use for each printer, then define the font on the appropriate printer Font Properties window.

The system includes several font cross-reference files. The REL103SM.FXR file contains all information for Courier, Univers, and Times (Roman) fonts for PCL, AFP, Metacode and PostScript printers.

The DESKJET.FXR provides font information for HP Deskjet printers. Unless you use only Deskjet printers at your company, your system uses the REL103SM.FXR file. The following tables list the font file names used in the standard font cross-reference file.

If you are working in a multiple printer environment, follow these steps:

- 1 Load the font files into the system.

- 2 If the fonts are from a specific printer, copy the font files to the master resource library where you store your fonts, such as FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\.
- 3 Select the font to convert; then select Convert. The Font Conversion window appears.
- 4 Convert the font to a specific printer platform, following the conversion steps outlined in [Converting Fonts on page 203](#).
- 5 Copy the converted font to your printer.
- 6 Compare the font names with the printer font names.

Repeat these steps for each font you select for use by multiple printers.

Description	PCL font file	Metacode font file	AFP font file
<b>Courier</b>			
7 pt	COM_7_X.SFP	COM7X	Xo42107C
8 pt	COM_8_X.SFP	COM8X	Xo42108C
10 pt	COM_10X.SFP	COM10X	Xo421001
12 pt	COM_12X.SFP	COM12X	Xo4210BC
<b>Courier Bold</b>			
7 pt	COB_7_X.SFP	COB7X	Xo44107C
8 pt	COB_8_X.SFP	COB8X	Xo44108C
10 pt	COB_10X.SFP	COB10X	Xo44100C
12 pt	COB_12X.SFP	COB12X	Xo4410BC
<b>Courier Italic</b>			
7 pt	COO_7_X.SFP	COO7X	Xo43107C
8 pt	COO_8_X.SFP	COO8X	Xo43108C
10 pt	COO_10X.SFP	COO10X	Xo43100C
12 pt	COO_12X.SFP	COO12X	Xo4310BC
<b>Courier Bold Italic</b>			
7 pt	COBO_7_X.SFP	COBO7X	Xo45107C
8 pt	COBO_8_X.SFP	COBO8X	Xo45108C
10 pt	COBO_10X.SFP	COBO10X	Xo45100C
<b>Helvetica</b>			
6 pt	HV_6_X.SFP	HV6X	XoH2106

Description	PCL font file	Metacode font file	AFP font file
7 pt	HV___7_X.SFP	HV7X	XoH2107C
12 pt	HV___12X.SFP	HV12X	XoH210BC
14 pt	HV___14X.SFP	HV14X	XoH210DC
16 pt	HV___16X.SFP	HV16X	XoH210FC
24 pt	HV___24X.SFP	HV24X	XoH210NC
<b>Helvetica Bold</b>			
6 pt	HVB__6_X.SFP	HVB6X	XoH4106C
12 pt	HVB__12X.SFP	HVB12X	XoH410BC
14 pt	HVB__14X.SFP	HVB14X	XoH410DC
16 pt	HVB__16X.SFP	HVB16X	XoH410FC
18 pt	HVB__18X.SFP	HVB18X	XoH410HC
<b>Helvetica Italic</b>			
6 pt	HVO__6_X.SFP	HVO6X	XoH3106C
12 pt	HVO__12X.SFP	HVO12X	XoH310BC
14 pt	HVO__14X.SFP	HVO14X	XoH310DC
16 pt	HVO__16X.SFP	HVO16X	XoH310FC
<b>Helvetica Bold Italic</b>			
6 pt	HVBO_6_X.SFP	HVBO6X	XoH5106C
12 pt	HVBO_12X.SFP	HVBO12X	XoH510BC
14 pt	HVBO_14X.SFP	HVBO14X	XoH510DC
16 pt	HVBO_16X.SFP	HVBO16X	XoH510FC
<b>Helvetica Symbol</b>			
Symbol 10 pt.	SY___10X.SFP	SY10X	Not available

Here is an example which shows how to convert and add a single font (Times (Roman), Normal, 18 point) from the PostScript font set, for an AFP, PCL, and Metacode printer.

Let's assume this is the font name (found in the FAP font directory): (**TIR\_\_\_PFB**).

- 1 Insert the PostScript font into your FXR file.

- 2 Open the Font Conversion utility within the Font List window. Then convert the font to AFP, PCL, and Metacode format in this sequence. See [Converting Fonts on page 203](#) for specific conversion steps. Refer to each respective printer manual for font file naming convention guidelines.
- 3 Copy the appropriate converted font file to the associated printer.

## Deleting Fonts

The Delete option lets you exclude a font from your font set. If you delete a font, it is not deleted from the system. The font is simply no longer available in the font set.

---

**NOTE:** If you compose a section with a font which is later deleted from the font set, you must revise the section. You can verify that all the fonts within a section are valid fonts in the current font set by using the Font Check tool, available from the Image Editor Tool menu.

---

Follow these steps to delete a font:

- 1 From the Font List, highlight the font or fonts you want to delete.
- 2 Click Delete. A confirmation message appears.
- 3 Click Yes to confirm or No to cancel.

## Inserting Fonts

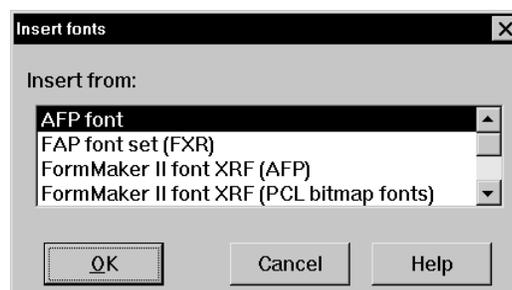
Use Insert to quickly add font information to your font set files. Insert lets you add multiple font information or individual font information to the font set or FXR file. If necessary, you can edit font information to change the font ID, typeface, family, and printer specific information. (Use New to manually add fonts to your font set; use Insert to automatically add font information.) You can also use Insert to add fonts to your font set. Using Insert is quicker and more efficient since you do not have to manually enter the specific characteristics of each font as you do with the New option.

To insert fonts, click Insert in the Font List window to display the Insert Fonts window.

---

**NOTE:** Insert is active only if no font is selected. If the Insert button is not active, click the Deselect All button to make sure no fonts are selected. This will activate the Insert button.

---

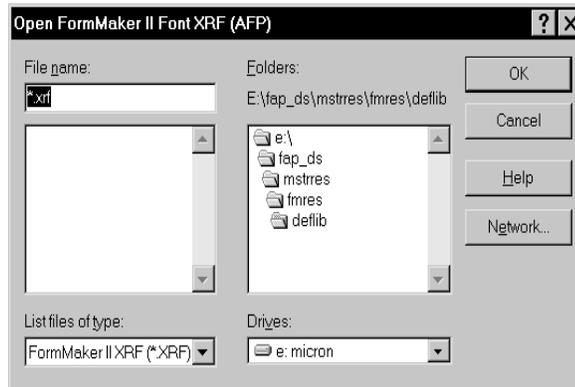


- 1 Click the font type or the fonts you want to insert. You can insert multiple fonts. The following is a brief description of the several font types that are available:

Font Type	Description
AFP font	This option lets you select an AFP coded file to import. AFP character set files begin with the letter X, such as XoDATIN8.FNT. A coded font file contains references to a specific character set and a specific code page. The corresponding character set and code page files must be in the same directory as the coded font file to import it. The font information imported from the AFP font is assigned a font ID which is one greater than the largest font ID contained in the font cross-reference file (FXR).
FAP font set (FXR)	Inserts font information stored in another system font set. Cross-reference files usually end with an FXR file extension. Once you select an import FXR file, you will see a list of the fonts referenced in the file. You can import any or all of the fonts contained in the file.
FormMaker II font XRF* (AFP)	Inserts a FormMaker II cross-reference file and the associated AFP bitmap fonts into the cross-reference file (FXR) you are currently using.
FormMaker II font XRF* (PCL bitmap fonts)	Inserts a FormMaker II PCL cross-reference file and the associated PCL bitmap fonts into the cross-reference file (FXR) you are currently using. You retain the original FormMaker II PCL cross-reference file.
FormMaker II screen font def.* (FON)	Inserts a single FormMaker II window font. Use this option only when a printer font is not available.
PCL bitmap font	Inserts a PCL bitmap font. The font information imported from the PCL font will be assigned a font ID which is one greater than the largest font ID contained in the font cross-reference file (FXR).
PostScript font	Inserts a PostScript scaleable font.
TrueType font	Inserts a TrueType scaleable font.
Xerox Metacode fonts	Inserts a Xerox bitmap font. The font information imported from the Metacode font will be assigned a font ID starting at one greater than the largest font ID contained in the font cross-reference file (FXR).

\*These font file formats are from FormMaker II DOS System.

- 2 Click Ok. Depending on the fonts or font type you selected, either an open fonts or load font window will appear:



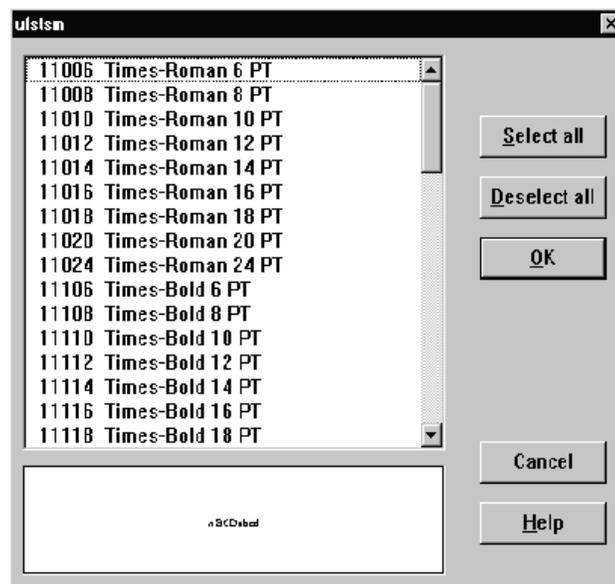
- 3 Select the file you want to open or load. If the file is in a different directory or folder, use the Drives and Folders fields to find the file. Click Ok.

**NOTE:** There is a Windows Network button available in this window; use it to map network drives.

- 4 To continue with inserting bitmap fonts and FXR files, follow the instructions below. To finish inserting PostScript and TrueType fonts, see [Inserting PostScript and TrueType Fonts on page 211](#).

#### Inserting bitmap fonts and FXR files

Once you open a FormMaker II XRF file (AFP or PCL) or an FXR file, the Font List window appears.



Here is a summary of your options:

To	Click
Choose all fonts in the FXR or XRF file	Select All
Deselect all fonts currently selected	Deselect All
Choose specific fonts in the FXR or XRF file	The specific fonts
Insert selected fonts into your font set	Ok

Keep in mind...

- If you select a font ID already present in your font cross-reference file, the system will give you the option of replacing the existing font, or assigning the imported font an ID at the end of the font list.
- The font information imported is assigned a font ID which is one greater than the largest font ID contained in the font cross-reference file.
- You may need to modify the font ID, typeface, family, and printer specific information for the bitmap fonts after they have been inserted into your current FXR.
- If you install fonts supplied by an outside vendor, you may need to copy those font files to the proper directory in your resource library, such as:

C:\FAP\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\

Remember, the master resource setup tells Image Editor the directory location of your fonts and your FXR file.

### Inserting PostScript and TrueType Fonts

To insert PostScript and TrueType fonts into an FXR file, you must have these files and INI options:

File name	Description
IFW32.DLL	Intellifont Runtime DLL Postscript, TrueType font reader You must store this file in the system's DLL directory.
IF.FNT	Intellifont Typeface Index file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.
UIF.SS	Intellifont Symbol Set file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.
UMT.SS	MicroType Symbol Set file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.
UTT.SS	TrueType Symbol Set file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.

File name	Description
PLUGIN.TYQ	Intellifont Plugin and Typeface Library file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.
PLUGIN.TTF	TrueType Plugin and Typeface Library file Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.
CODEPAGE.INI	List of code pages Store this file in the directory specified in the DEFLib option in the FMRes control group. See below for more information.

For example, if your INI file contained this option:

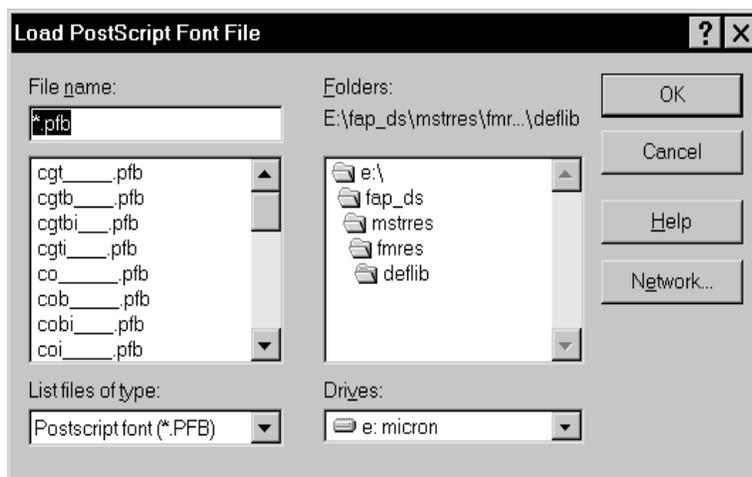
```
< FMRes >  
  DEFLib = c:\fap\fonts
```

the system would look for these files (IF.FNT, UIF.SS, UMT.SS, UTT.SS, and so on) in the C:\FAP\FONTS directory. If you omit the DEFLib option, the system looks for these files in the ..\MSTRRES\FMRES\DEFLIB\ directory.

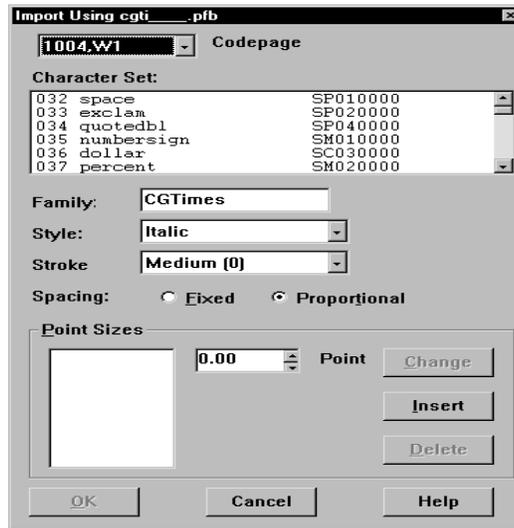
Follow these steps to insert PostScript and TrueType fonts:

- 1 Open your font cross-reference file and click Insert. Select the font type in the Insert Fonts window. The system shows you the appropriate Load Font File window. If you select a PostScript font from the Insert Fonts window, the Load PostScript Font File window appears.

**NOTE:** The insertion procedure is the same for both font types.



- 2 Select the file you want to insert and click Ok. The Import Using [font name] window appears.



Because PostScript and TrueType fonts are scalable fonts, you can select the point sizes you want to import. See [Font Terminology on page 150](#) for help understanding this window's fields.

- 3 Select 1004 in the Codepage field. The system displays the characters associated with the code page in the Character Set field. See [Using Code Pages on page 156](#) for information about various code pages.
- 4 Click the font you want to insert.
- 5 Select any changes you want to make in the Style, Stroke, and Spacing fields.
- 6 In the Point field, use the scroll arrows to select the font point size you want to include in the font set and click Insert. The font point size appears to the left of the Point Sizes field. Repeat this step for each point size you want to include in your font set.

---

**NOTE:** To select the point size, enter -1 in the point field of the Import Using (font name) window. Then click Insert. The system tells you that you have entered an illegal character in a numeric only field and asks you to correct the entry before continuing. Click Ok in the message. The system will then fill in the point values in the Point Sizes field for you.

---

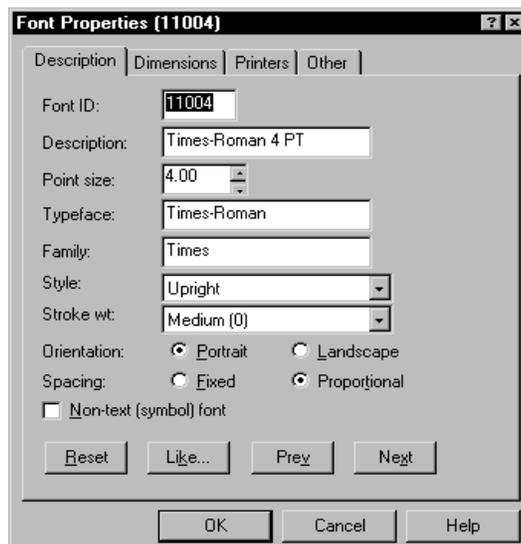
- 7 Click Ok to include the various font point sizes in your font set. The font information imported from the PostScript or TrueType font is assigned a font ID starting at one greater than the largest font ID contained in the font cross-reference file (FXR).
- 8 Image Editor redisplay the Font List. You can insert additional fonts in your font set if necessary.

## CHOOSING SCREEN FONTS

After inserting fonts into the FXR, or if your company uses fonts other than those distributed with the system, you can use the Like button in the Font Properties window to select screen fonts which more closely resemble the printer fonts.

Follow these steps to choose a screen font:

- 1 Open the FAP font set in Font Manager to display the Font List window.
- 2 Select a font in the font list and click Edit. The system displays the Font Properties window.



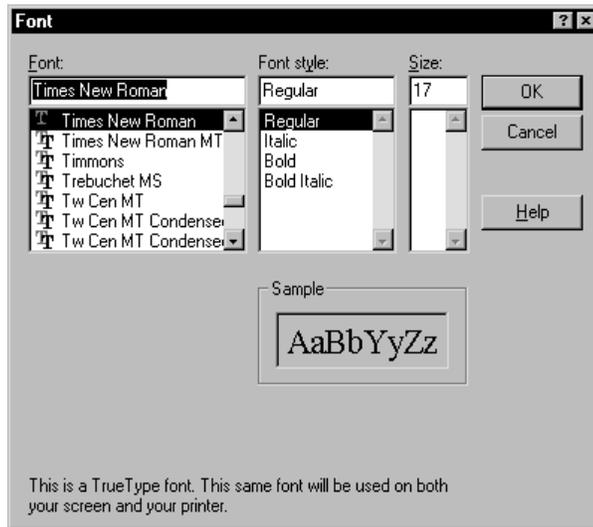
The FXR file contains the names of the screen and printer fonts to use. When you insert fonts into the FXR, the Font File fields on the Printers tab display the names of the printer fonts to use. The Family field on the Description tab contains the name of the Windows screen font to use based on the printer font file you inserted into the FXR. This means the Family field may not contain the name of a valid Windows screen font.

- 3 Click Like to display the Font window.

---

**NOTE:** Using the Like option can affect GDI printing which creates output based on what appears on the screen.

---



The Font window lists the Windows screen fonts installed on your computer.

- 4 Select the Windows display font that most closely resembles the printer font and make any necessary adjustments to the style and size. Click Ok to return to the Font Properties window. The screen font you selected will be displayed in the Family field and the style and size will be set for the font. This affects any object to which you can assign a font ID.
- 5 Click Ok in the Font Properties window to apply these changes and close the window. You can elect to save the changes to your FXR file when you select Close in the Font List window.

### Understanding the System

If you plan to use your modified FXR file to create FAP files, be sure to make the FXR file available to anyone working with the FAP files. Keep in mind that those users will also need the same fonts installed on their systems.

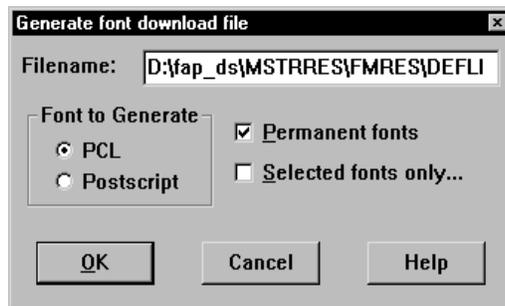
## GENERATING FILES USING FONT MANAGER

Use Font Manager's File, Generate menu option to quickly generate FNT, XRF, and PFM files. FNT files are used to download fonts to a PCL or PostScript printer. XRF files are FormMaker II font cross-reference files. PFM files are Docuflex font format files.

### GENERATING AN FNT FILE

The Generate FNT File option lets you automatically generate an FNT file for downloading fonts to a PCL or PostScript printer. Follow these steps to generate an FNT file:

- 1 Select the Resources, Fonts option from the system menu or click on the Fonts icon. The Open FAP Font Set window appears.
- 2 Select the font set you want to generate an FNT file for and click Ok. The Font List window appears.
- 3 Drag the screen to the right to display the Font Manager window. Then select File, Generate, FNT File. The Generate Font Download File window appears.



- 4 Check the name in the File name field. The system defaults to the name of the font cross-reference file with the *FNT* extension. Make any necessary changes.
- 5 Select either PCL or Postscript for the type of font to generate.
- 6 Select Permanent fonts or Selected fonts as necessary. This does not apply to Postscript fonts.

Your permanent, selected, and temporary font choices are defined in this table:

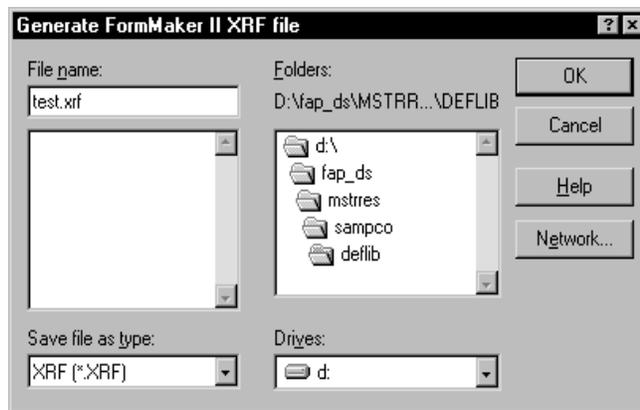
Fonts	Description
Temporary fonts	Downloaded PCL fonts that are deleted during a printer reset. A printer can be reset via a command in a PCL print stream or from the console. Temporary fonts are deleted from memory when the printer is reset or turned off. This field has no effect on PostScript fonts.
Permanent fonts	Downloaded PCL fonts that remain in the system during a printer reset. Permanent fonts are deleted from memory when the printer is turned off. Permanent fonts are not deleted during a printer reset. This field has no effect on PostScript fonts.
Selected fonts	Selected fonts lets you select specific font IDs to build the FNT file. If you leave this field unchecked, the system includes all font IDs in the FXR file.

- 7 Click Ok.

## GENERATING AN XRF FILE

With Font Manager you can use a FAP font set to generate a FormMaker II XRF file. To begin, open Font Manager by selecting Resources, Font. The Open FAP Font Set window appears.

- 1 Select the font set you want to work with and click Ok. The system displays the Font List window.
- 2 Drag the screen to the right to display the Font Manager window; then select File, Generate, XRF File. The Generate FormMaker II XRF File window appears.



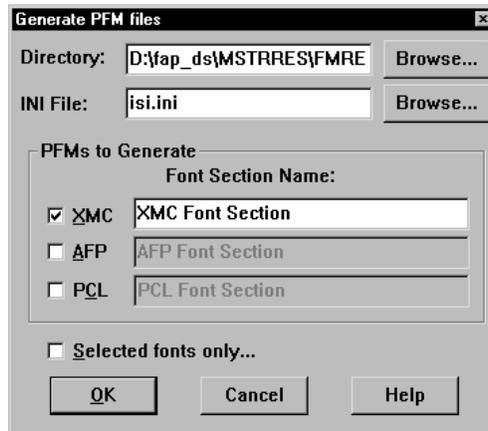
- 3 Enter a name for the XRF file in the File Name field; be sure you have the file path set to the library you want. You can use the Windows Network button if you need to map a drive path. Click Ok to generate the XRF file.
- 4 The system displays a confirmation message stating that the XRF file generated successfully.

## GENERATING PFM FILES FROM AN FXR FILE

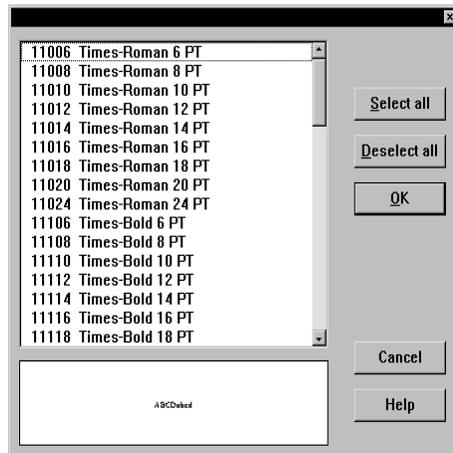
Font Manager can generate Docuflex font format files, known as PFM files. These files are listed in the font section of Docuflex INI files and are used when converting a document from one format to another.

To create a PFM file, select Resources, Fonts to start Font Manager. The system displays the Open FAP Font Set window.

- 1 Select a font cross reference file (FXR) and click Ok. The Font List window appears.
- 2 Drag the screen to the right to display the Font Manager window; then select File, Generate, PFM Files. The following window appears.



- 3 Enter the destination directory for the PFM files in the Directory field. Use the Browse button to change the destination directory.
- 4 Enter the name of the INI file in the INI File field, or use the Browse button to select an INI file.
- 5 In the PFMs to Generate field, select which type of PFM files for which printer type to generate.
- 6 If you want to use all the fonts in the FXR file, leave the Selected Fonts Only field unchecked and click Ok. Font Manager generates the PFM files.
- 7 If you only want to generate PFM files for specific fonts, click the Selected Fonts Only field then click Ok. The system displays a list of the fonts in the FXR file:



- 8 Select the fonts and click Ok. The system displays a message confirming that the PFM files were successfully generated.

A PFM file is generated for a particular printer type and information for that font goes in the font record. For example, in the REL95SM.FXR file there are 68 fonts, but there is only setup data for all 68 fonts for the AFP printer. There is XMC and PCL information for only 64 of the fonts, so there could be a maximum of 64 PFM files of the XMC and PCL printer types for that FXR file.

The name of each PFM file is determined from the setup data in the font record for each printer type. For example, in REL95SM.FXR for font number 11012, the XMC font is FXTINB.PFM, the AFP font is XoDATINB.PFM, and the PCL font is FPTINB.PFM.

When Font Manager generates the PFM files, it also creates an extract file which is, by default, called *ISI.INI*. You can insert the contents of this file into your Docuflex INI files as one of the FontSection control groups. The extract files are placed in the same directory as the generated PFM files.

---

**NOTE:** If the ISI.INI file exists, the system appends the font section information in the existing file. If you do not include a path for the ISI.INI file, the system creates or updates the file in the directory from which you ran Font Manager, such as `..\FAP\DLL`.

---

Here's a sample ISI.INI file:

```
[XMC Font Section] Fonts=64 FontThreshold=70000
Font1=E:\LIBRS\FMRES\DEFLIB\FXTIN6.pfm; 11006 Times-Roman 6 point
Font2=E:\LIBRS\FMRES\DEFLIB\FXTIN8.pfm; 11008 Times-Roman 8 point
Font3=E:\LIBRS\FMRES\DEFLIB\FXTIN0.pfm; 11010 Times-Roman 10 point
Font4=E:\LIBRS\FMRES\DEFLIB\FXTINB.pfm; 11012 Times-Roman 12 point
Font5=E:\LIBRS\FMRES\DEFLIB\FXTIND.pfm; 11014 Times-Roman 14 point
```

When you use these PFMs to read or write FAP files in the Docuflex system, be sure to use the accompanying extract files in the FontSection control groups in the Docuflex INI files. The numbers after the semicolons are used by the system to identify font numbers in FAP records.

## MAPPING FONTS FOR FILE CONVERSIONS

When converting a file from one format to another, you may need to convert the fonts used in the document. You can use INI control groups and options to map fonts in a source document to the fonts you want to use in the destination document. For instance, if you are converting an RTF file into a FAP file, you can use the following control group:

```
< RTFFontMAP >  
    Arial = Swiss
```

This tells the system to convert all Arial fonts into Swiss fonts. Use this control group when converting DCD files into FAP files:

```
< FontFamilyMatching >  
    Arial = Swiss
```

Place these control groups and options in the FAPCOMP.INI file.

RTF and DCD files contain font information about the generic font families used. For example, Arial and Univers, both sans serif proportional fonts, belong to a generic font family called *Swiss*.

The RTF and DCD converters in the system use the RTFFontMap and FontFamilyMatching control groups to assign a font when other means of mapping fonts from the RTF or DCD file fails.

In Windows environments, there are several generic font families, as shown in this table:

Family	Description
Decorative	Specifies a novelty font, such as Old English.
Dontcare	Specifies a generic family name. This name is used when information about a font does not exist or does not matter. The default font is used.
Modern	Specifies a monospace font with or without serifs. Monospace fonts are usually modern fonts, such as Pica, Elite, and Courier New.
Roman	Specifies a proportional font with serifs, such as Times New Roman.
Script	Specifies a font that is designed to look like handwriting, such as Script and Cursive.
Swiss	Specifies a proportional font without serifs, such as Arial.

## CHAPTER 6

# Setting Up Printers

The system supports printing on a variety of printers ranging from network laser printers to high volume production printers. This chapter describes how to set up the system to print on this wide array of printers.

In this chapter you will find information on the following topics:

- [AFP Printers on page 222](#)
- [Metacode Printers on page 232](#)
- [PCL Printers on page 256](#)
- [PostScript Printers on page 266](#)
- [Using the GDI Print Driver on page 273](#)
- [Using Pass-through Printing on page 278](#)
- [Creating PDF Files on page 280](#)
- [Creating RTF Files on page 281](#)
- [Emailing a Print File on page 284](#)
- [Choosing the Paper Size on page 288](#)
- [Creating Print Streams for Docusave on page 300](#)
- [Handling Multiple Paper Trays on page 305](#)

For each type of printer, this chapter discusses set up issues, printer resources, special features, performance considerations, troubleshooting, and more.

## AFP PRINTERS

IBM created the Advanced Function Printing (AFP) language. The data streams produced by Skywire Software applications for AFP printers are called *Mixed Object Document Content Architecture* (MO:DCA) data streams. MO:DCA data streams are sometimes referred to as AFP data streams (AFPDS).

You must have a program such as IBM's Print Services Facility (PSF) to convert AFP data stream into the printer's native language. PSF is the umbrella software that brings the AFP resources (created by AFP or system utilities) together in one print job and sends it to the printer.

---

**NOTE:** All system print drivers support 24-bit color logos. If your printer does not support color, the print driver will automatically convert the color logos into monochrome logos. Keep in mind that for the best performance you should avoid color logos.

---

## AFP INI OPTIONS

You define the necessary printer options for the system to produce AFP data streams. These options specify how the system creates AFP output. Most of the AFP-related options are found in a `PrtType:XXX` control group, where `XXX` indicates the different printer types. `PrtType:AFP` is a common control group name used to contain AFP settings. The most common AFP printer options are shown below (default values are bold):

Option	Values	Description
Device	Any file or device name	The name of the file or device (LPT1) where the AFP data stream should be written. This setting is ignored by the GenPrint program but is used by the Image Editor and other system programs.
Module	AFPPRT	The name of the program module which contains the system's AFP print driver. See also the discussion of the Class option.
PrintFunc	AFPPrint	The name of the program function that is the main entry point into the system's AFP print driver.
Resolution	240/300	The dots per inch (dpi) resolution of the printer which receives the AFP data stream
SendOverlays	Yes/No	Set to Yes if you created AFP overlays for each FAP file
ChartResolution	120/150/ 240/300	Used when printing charts as inline bitmap graphics on an AFP printer that does not have graphics (GOCA) support. Defaults to one-half of the Resolution option setting.

Option	Values	Description
LandscapeSupport	Yes/No	Although not required for printing, you can set this option to <i>Yes</i> if your printer supports landscape medium maps. Generally, AFP printers using cut-sheet paper <i>do not</i> support landscape medium maps.
SplitText	Yes/No	Used to minimize the print differences between 240 and 300 dpi printing.
SplitPercent	0 to 100 (50)	Percentage of the width of the space character used to determine when the rounding error between 240 and 300 dpi printing has caused a significant difference and the text string should be split into smaller strings.
FudgeWidth	any number (0)	Can be used when building page overlays for images smaller than a page.
GraphicSupport	0, 1, 2, 3	0 = no graphics (GOCA) support 1 = inline bitmap graphics support 2 = GOCA charts support 3 = inline bitmap graphics and GOCA charts support
PageNumbers	Yes/No	Set to <i>Yes</i> to turn on form or form set page numbering
PrintViewOnly	Yes/No	If set to <i>Yes</i> , the view only images will print. This does not apply to entry only images, which are never printed. Entry only images are usually worksheets. If the image is marked as hidden and view only, it will not print.
PrePrintedPaper	Yes,Disabled	Determines if the check box which lets you print or not print pre-printed objects appears on the Print window. Also determines the default for this check box—checked or unchecked. You must add this option to the INI file if you want the check box to appear on the Print window.  The default for this option includes the checkbox on the Print window and leaves it unchecked. All objects except fields can be designated as pre-printed on the object's Properties window in the Image Editor.

Option	Values	Description
Class	<i>(first three characters of the Module option)</i>	Specifies the printer classification, such as AFP, PCL, XER, PST, or GDI. If you omit this option, the system defaults to the first three letters from the Module option.  Some internal functions expect a certain type of printer. For instance, all 2-up functions require an AFP printer. The internal functions check the Class option to make sure the correct printer is available before continuing.
OnDemandScript		Use this option to add comments to the print stream. This lets you handle archiving using OnDemand.  Enter the name of the DAL script you want the system to run. This DAL script creates the On Demand records and adds them as comments.  The AddComment function is also used in DAL scripts to add OnDemand command records. For more information about this and other functions, see the <a href="#">DAL Reference</a> .
TLEScript		Enter the name of the DAL script to execute to add Tagged Language Element (TLE) records to the print stream.  See <a href="#">Adding TLE Records on page 304</a> for more information.
TLESeparator		Enter the character you want to use to separate the key and value portions of the TLE comment string.
TLEEveryPage	Yes/No	Optional. If you enter Yes, the TLE DAL script will be executed at the start of every page. If you enter No, the TLE DAL script is executed at the start of every form set. The default is No.
PaperSize	0, 1, 2, 3, 98	Use this option to set a default paper size when converting AFP print streams using the Internet Document Server or the MRG2FAP utility.  Enter 0 for letter size (default) Enter 1 for legal size Enter 2 for A4 size Enter 3 for executive size Enter 98 for a custom size

Option	Values	Description
DocusaveScript		Use this option to add comments to the print stream. This lets you handle archiving using Docusave.  Enter the name of the DAL script you want the system to run. This DAL script creates the Docusave records and adds them as comments.
SendColor	Yes/No	Enter Yes to send color information to the printer. AFP highlight color printing on printers from Xerox and Oce is supported.  Make sure the objects you want to print in color (text, lines, shades, and so on) are set to print in color. The Print in Color option is on the Color Selection window in Image Editor. You can display this window by clicking the Color button on the object's Properties window.
NamedColors		Use this option to tell the system to use only specific AFP named colors. For example, if you wanted all highlight (non-black) colors mapped to blue, you would set the NamedColors option to <i>blue</i> .  To allow the mapping of the colors you assigned to the objects in the FAP file to multiple colors, separate each color with a semicolon (;). For example, to use red, blue, and magenta, set the NamedColors option as shown here:  <code>NamedColors = red;blue;magenta</code> The order you list the colors does not matter.
SkipChartColorChange	Yes/No	Enter Yes to suppress color changes normally done to enhance 3D bar charts.
SkipChartPatternChange	Yes/No	Enter Yes to suppress pattern changes normally done to enhance 3D bar charts.

There are some additional options you can use to print inline graphics logos. Be aware that not all AFP printers support these settings. You'll find these options in the AFP control group.

AFP Options	Values	Description
OutputHalfRes	Yes/No	Scales the bitmap loaded from the logo to half resolution in memory before writing the output.
DoubleOutputRes	Yes/No	Does not change the bitmap loaded from the logo, but would tell the printer to double its resolution when printed. This lets the system load logos that are half resolution already.

AFP Options	Values	Description
SuppressZeroData	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Suppresses data containing a series of zeros (white space in the bitmap).
TrimWhiteSpace	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Suppresses data containing zeros (white space) at the right edge of the bitmap.
MultiLinesPerCommand	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Tries to combine AFP commands into fewer records when printing the bitmap. You cannot use this option with the SuppressZeroData option.

### Printing highlight colors

The system supports AFP highlight color printing on printers from Xerox and Oce. Like other color printer support, the SendColor option must be set to Yes and the objects, such as text, lines, and shades must be set to *Print In Color*.

The RGB (red,green,blue) color setting for each FAP object is mapped to the closest AFP named color. The names of the available colors are as follows: blue, red, magenta, green, cyan, yellow, dark\_blue, orange, purple, dark\_green, dark\_cyan, mustard, gray, and brown.

You use the NamedColors option in the AFP printer group to specify certain AFP named colors. For example, if you wanted all FAP (non-black) colors to be mapped to brown, you would use this INI option:

```
NamedColors = brown
```

To let the system map FAP colors to multiple colors, separate each color with a semicolon (;). For example, to use all of the default AFP named colors except brown, you would use this INI option:

```
NamedColors = Red;Blue;Magenta;Green;Cyan;Yellow
```

---

**NOTE:** The order in which you name the colors does not matter. In addition, the LOG2PSEG and FAP2OVL utilities include a /C=color parameter, where color is the one of the named AFP colors.

---

## AFP PRINTER RESOURCES

**FormDef** The system uses copy groups from its own FormDef named *F1FMMST.DAT*. Each copy group in a FormDef contains information about paper size, duplex, tray selection, jog, orientation, and so on. The FormDef must be available to PSF to print AFP data streams. You can use the AFPFMDEF utility to create or modify the FormDef.

**Fonts** AFP fonts are designed solely for AFP printers. For more information about fonts, see [Working with Fonts on page 149](#). In IBM AFP terminology, a font is described by three components:

**CODED FONT.** A coded font file contains references to specific character set and specific code page. Coded font files always begin with the letter *X*, such as *XoDATIN8*.

**CODE PAGE.** In IBM AFP terminology, a code page file maps code points to an AFP character name in a character set file. Code page files always begin with the letter *T*, such as *T1DOC037*.

**CHARACTER SET.** A character set file contains the bitmap image of each character in the character set. Character set files always begins with the letter *C* (such as *CoFATIN8.240* or *CoFATIN8.300*). The character set file name extension (*240* or *300*) indicates whether the bitmap images are drawn at 240 or 300 dots per inch.

**Monotype fonts** Skywire Software has licensed for use and distribution with its systems, fonts from Monotype Imaging, Inc. The system includes both 240 and 300 dpi AFP fonts.

**Overlays** Use the FAP2OVL utility to create AFP overlays from FAP files. The OVLCOMP utility also lets you create AFP overlays from FAP files. These overlays must be available to PSF to print AFP data streams when the SendOverlays option is set to Yes.

**Page segments** Use the LOG2PSEG utility to create AFP page segments from logos (LOG files). These page segments must be available to PSF to print AFP data streams.

---

**NOTE:** For information on system utilities, see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

---

**AFP 2-up support** The system include rules you can use to generate and merge print streams for AFP printing for printers that support 2-up printing. See [Handling 2-up Printing on page 58](#) in the [Documaker Server System Reference](#) for more information.

## AFP TROUBLESHOOTING

### Floating image limitations

The system lets you compose a page from several images. The system also lets you create overlays for these images. There is one limitation when you print these images on a landscape page. Overlays on a landscape page can only be placed vertically on the page. Overlays on a landscape page *cannot* be placed horizontally on the page.

This means, in your SetOrigin rule, you *cannot* specify any non-zero, positive number for the X-relative displacement. Create your FAPs accordingly, but keep in mind that they can be moved down but not across. This limitation exists only for AFP overlays, and only in landscape mode.

### Objects extending beyond the edges

Another type of error can occur if the overlay for a custom-sized image is too small for the objects (text, lines, logos, and so on) contained within it. If the AFP overlay's page size is too small, objects may be clipped to the page size, printed as solid black rectangles, or trigger error messages.

The Image Editor contains an Auto-size option which you can use to make sure the custom-sized image is large enough to contain all objects placed within it. Use this feature to prevent most custom page size problems.

Be careful placing text at the extreme left edge of the image because it may cause errors that the Image Editor's Auto-size option cannot detect. For instance, suppose you have this text label positioned on the left edge of the FAP file (left offset = 0):

## *Beneficiary*

When printed, black rectangles or an error message may appear instead of the text.

This can occur because some of the characters in the italic font (Times New Roman) have a *negative left offset*. This means that the characters print to the left of where they would normally start. A negative left offset may be easier to understand by looking at these characters:

*ef*

Notice how the bottom of the *f* goes under the *e*. This is an example of a negative left offset. Because it is positioned to the left of where it would normally start, the character is now positioned off the left edge of the overlay.

This kind of detailed character information is not stored in the FXR file so the Image Editor has no way to know there may be a problem. You can, however, move the text labels in the FAP file to correct the problem.

### Conflicts between page and form orientation

If you create a custom-sized page, be aware of any conflict between page orientation and the form orientation. If the form orientation is not the same as the page orientation, the page will not print according to the page orientation, but will follow the form's orientation.

---

**NOTE:** This happens only in case of custom size pages. Standard size pages obey the page orientation.

---

**Multi-page FAP limitation**

There is a problem when a landscape, multi-page FAP has different page sizes on each page. All pages of a multi-page FAP file should be the same size. As a workaround, use the Image Editor to correct the page sizes. To do so, choose the Page Properties option from the Format menu and click Ok on the Page Properties window. After saving the FAP file, you can then generate proper AFP overlays.

**Printing rotated variable fields**

Here is a list of field options you can specify in the NAFILE.DAT file:

Option	Description
E	Error
M	Manual
P	Protected
G	Global scope (entire form set)
F	Form scope
H	Hidden field – a dummy field, not displayed or printed
N	Nonprintable field (displayed, not printed)
C	Send-copy-to field (receives current recipient name at print time)
9	Rotated 90 degrees
8	Rotated 180 degrees
7	Rotated 270 degrees

Some of these options require the FAP field attributes to be available at runtime, since the DDT file does not include the necessary information. Use the CheckImageLoaded rule to make sure this information is available.

**AFP 240 dpi print problems**

Due to differences in resolution on 240 and 300 dpi printers, a text string may print with slightly different lengths. One example where this may be noticeable is when the text is printed inside of a boxed region. Another example where this may be noticeable is when a text area contains an embedded variable field.

To minimize the print differences between 240 and 300 dpi printing, use the SplitText option. Make sure these options are in your printer PrtType:xxx control group:

```
< PrtType:AFP >
  SplitText    = Yes/No (default is No)
  SplitPercent = ###    (% of space-width as max rounding error)
  Resolution   = ###    (default is 300)
```

If you set the SplitText option to Yes, each text string is checked to see if it needs to be split into sections for printing. The SplitPercent value helps determine when a text string must be split into sections for printing.

The SplitPercent option sets the percentage of the width of the space character to use as the maximum amount of rounding error that can accumulate in a string before it is broken into sections.

The SplitPercent value is from zero (0) to 100. Do not enter a value greater than 100. For example, if you set the SplitPercent option to 75, the string is broken into sections if the accumulated rounding error is greater than 75% of the width of the space character. This value is set to 50 by default.

---

**NOTE:** Using 50 as the SplitPercent value is a good trade-off between the appearance and the performance impact on the GenPrint program and print spool size. Setting the SplitPercent option to a smaller value gives you a more accurate printout but slows the GenPrint program, increases the size of the print spool, and increases the amount of time it takes to print.

---

The Resolution option determines the rounding error. Most FXRs are built using 300 dpi fonts. This causes rounding errors when the FXR is used for printing to a 240 dpi printer. If you omit the Resolution option, the system uses the default setting of 300.

You need to know whether the FXR you are using was built by importing 300 dpi fonts or 240 dpi fonts. The standard FXRs are built using 300 dpi fonts. When an FXR is built using 300 dpi fonts, there are rounding errors when printing to a 240 dpi printer.

Here are some examples of options to use in different situations:

- If your font cross-reference (FXR) file was built from 300 dpi fonts and your printer resolution is 240 dpi, set the options as shown here:

```
< PrtType:AFP >  
  SplitText    = Yes  
  SplitPercent = 50  
  Resolution   = 240
```

- If your font cross-reference file was built from 240 dpi fonts and your printer resolution is 300 dpi, set the options as shown here:

```
< PrtType:AFP >  
  SplitText    = Yes  
  SplitPercent = 50  
  Resolution   = 300
```

- If your font cross-reference file was built from 300 dpi fonts and your printer resolution is 300 dpi, you do not need to set the SplitText option.
- If your font cross-reference file was built from 240 dpi fonts and your printer resolution is 240 dpi, you do not need to set the SplitText option.

## INCLUDING DOCUMERGE FORM-LEVEL COMMENT RECORDS

You can include Documerge form-level comments in AFP print streams produced by Documaker. You may want to include form-level comments if you have a reprint utility program that needs information about a form before it can reprint it.

To include form-level comment records, add the `FormNameCR` option in your AFP printer control group and set it to `Yes`, as shown here:

```
< PrtType:AFP >
  FormNameCR      = Yes
  Module          = AFPPRT
  PrintFunc       = AFPPrint
  SendOverlays   = Yes,Enabled
  ...
```

Here is an example of the AFP records in an AFP print stream which includes the Documerge form level comment (NOP) records:

```
000, Begin, Document, 29,
001, Data, NOP, 84, %%DMGFORMBEG%% DEC PAGE          00001
AFP Docucorp 000001
002, Map, Medium Map, 16, PLUD
...
033, End, Page, 16,
034, Data, NOP, 84, %%DMGFORMEND%% DEC PAGE          00001
AFP Docucorp 000001
035, Data, NOP, 84, %%DMGFORMBEG%% LETTER           00001
AFP Docucorp 000002
036, Begin, Page, 16,
...
053, End, Page, 16,
054, Data, NOP, 84, %%DMGFORMEND%% LETTER           00001
AFP Docucorp 000002
173, End, Document, 16,
000, Begin, Document, 29,
001, Data, NOP, 84, %%DMGFORMBEG%% OP714            00001
AFP Docucorp 000001
002, Map, Medium Map, 16, PLUO
...

```

## METACODE PRINTERS

The Metacode language is the native mode language for Xerox 4000 and 9000 series printers. This language is superior to printing using line data with Xerox Laser Printing Systems (LPS). The advantages of using Metacode over line data printing include support for portrait and landscape text on the same page, support for different fonts on the same line, precise text positioning, and text justification. In addition, Metacode lets you merge multiple forms onto a single page.

---

**NOTE:** All system print drivers support 24-bit color logos. If your printer does not support color, the print driver will automatically convert the color logos into monochrome logos. Keep in mind that for the best performance you should avoid color logos.

---

### Required JSL INI Options

The system does not require you to use a special JSL on your printer to print its Metacode output. The Xerox Metacode printer driver is configurable based on options to produce Metacode which match your existing JSL settings. Here is an example of the PrtType:XER control group which contains these options:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  DJDEIden      = A'@@@DJDE'
  DJDEOffset    = 0
  DJDESkip      = 8
  OutMode       = BARR
  ImageOpt      = No
  CompressMode  = LIN
  JDEName       = META
  JDLCODE       = NONE
  JDLData       = 0,255
  JDLHost       = IBMONL
  JDLName       = CBA
  PaperSize     = 0
  Device        = dummy.txt
  RelativeScan  = Yes
```

Several of these options are based on the comparable parameter values in the settings of the printer's JSL. A JSL may contain many JDLS from which to choose, or there may be multiple JSLs compiled into multiple JDLS.

A portion of a JDL may look like the following:

```

CBA:      JDL;
T1:      TABLE      CONSTANT=X'121212121212121212';
T2:      TABLE      CONSTANT=X'131313131313131313';
T3:      TABLE      CONSTANT=X'FFFF26FFFF';
C1:      CRITERIA    CONSTANT=(0,9,EQ,T1);
C2:      CRITERIA    CONSTANT=(0,10,EQ,T2);
C3:      CRITERIA    CONSTANT=(1,5,EQ,T3);
VOLUME   HOST=IBMONL;
LINE     DATA=(0,255);
IDEN     PRE=A'@@@DJDE',
         OFF=0,
         SKIP=8;
ROFFSET  TEST=C1;
RSTACK   TEST=C2, DELIMITER=YES, PRINT=NONE;
RPAGE    TEST=C3, SIDE=NUFRONT, WHEN=NOW;

/* 8.5 x 11 job */
USA1: JDE;          /* JOB can be used in place of JDE */
OUTPUT          PAPERSIZE=USLETTER;

/* 8.5 x 14 job */
META: JOB;
VOLUME         CODE=NONE

/* Default job */
DFLT: JDE;
VOLUME         CODE=EBCDIC
END;

```

Here are the required options which are based on settings in the printer's JSL file.

**JDLName** Represents the name of the JDL to use. The following table shows the relevant JSL statement for the earlier example and the proper option to use based on the JSL example.

<b>JSL statement</b>	CBA: JDL;
<b>INI option</b>	JDLName = CBA

**JDEName** Represents the name of the job to use. A JDL may contain many jobs (JDEs) from which to choose. This JDE must contain a *VOLUME CODE=NONE* statement. The following table shows the relevant JSL statements for the earlier example and the proper option to use based on the JSL example.

<b>JSL statements</b>	META: JOB; VOLUME CODE=NONE
<b>INI option</b>	JDEName = META

DJDEIden, DJDEOffset,  
and DJDESkip

Represent the IDEN statement of the JDL. The value of the DJDEIden setting is a string constant. The types of string constants supported are ASCII (A'string'), EBCDIC (E'string'), Character ('string'), and Hex (X'string'). Octal, H2, and H6 strings *are not* supported.

Strings containing repeat counts, embedded hex values, and upper/lower case toggles *are not* supported. The following table shows the relevant JSL statements for the earlier example and the options to use based on the JSL example.

JSL statements	IDEN PRE=A'@@@DJDE', OFF=o, SKIP=8;
INI options	DJDEIden = A'@@@DJDE' DJDEOffset = o DJDESkip = 8

JDLCode

Represents the type of input format expected by the Xerox printer. Character translation occurs as necessary. Currently, the supported code types are *EBCDIC*, *ASCII*, *NONE* (same as ASCII), *BCD*, *H2BCD*, *H6BCD*, *IBMBCD*, and *PEBCDIC*. User-defined code translations are not supported.

Referring to the sample JSL, if the printer is normally started with STA DLFT,CBA then the JDLCode option must be set to *CODE = EBCDIC*. The system's option must contain the value of the CODE statement for the printer's normal operation. This table shows the relevant JSL statements for the earlier example and the proper option to use based on the JSL example.

JSL statements	DFLT: JDE; VOLUME CODE=EBCDIC
INI option	JDLCode = EBCDIC

JDLData

Represents the starting position and length of the print line data within an input data record. The LINE statement contains a DATA entry that holds these values. This table shows the relevant JSL statement for the earlier example and the proper option to use based on the JSL example.

JSL statement	LINE DATA=(o,255);
INI option	JDLData = o,255

JDLHost

Represents whether the printer is normally in an on-line or off-line state. Currently, the only values we accept for this option are *IBMONL* (on-line) and *IBMOS* (off-line). The following table shows the relevant JSL statement for the earlier example and the proper option to use based on the JSL example.

JSL statement	VOLUME HOST=IBMONL;
INI option	JDLHost = IBMONL

## Additional Required INI Options

Below are the additional required options not based on the printer's JSL file.

### OutMode

The OutMode option indicates the output format for the Metacode data stream generated by Skywire Software applications.

Use *BARR*, if the Metacode output is to be transmitted to the Xerox printer via BARR SPOOL hardware and software. When using the BARR setting, a length byte is placed at the start and end of each Metacode record.

Use *BARRWORD*, if the Metacode output is to be transmitted to the Xerox printer via BARR SPOOL hardware and software. BARRWORD should be used *only* if the Xerox printer can handle records longer than the 255 characters.

Use *PCO*, if the output is transmitted to the Xerox printer via PCO hardware and software (from Prism). When using the PCO setting, a 4-byte length field is placed at the start of each Metacode record.

---

**NOTE:** The PCO interface has not been tested, but should work.

---

Use *JES2*, if the Environment option is set to MVS.

Use *MRG4*, if you will transmit the Metacode output to the mainframe using Commcommander or if you will archive it in Docusave (see [Creating Print Streams for Docusave on page 300](#) for more information).

Use *LAN4235*, if the output is generated for a Xerox 4235 printer attached to a network.

Here is an example:

```
OutMode      = BARR
```

### ImageOpt

The ImageOpt option specifies if the logos are being saved on Xerox printer as *IMG* files or as *FNT* files. To use IMG files, the printer needs a special GVG or GHO hardware installed. Also, in the JSL you have to specify GRAPHICS = YES. If you are using IMG files, set the ImageOpt option to *Yes*; otherwise set it to *No*. Also, if you want to print charts, you must set the ImageOpt option to *Yes*. Metacode printers have a limit of sixteen (16) images on a page. Here is an example:

```
ImageOpt     = No
```

### CompressMode

The CompressMode option compresses bitmaps output as inline graphics, such as charts and logos with the inline graphics flag set. There are four compression modes available, which you can specify using the CompressMode option in the PrtType:XER control group:

- CompressMode = UNC
- CompressMode = ENC
- CompressMode = HTN
- CompressMode = LIN

*UNC* is the uncompressed or raw bitmap mode. If none is specified, the system defaults to *HTN* mode.

To demonstrate the effects of Metacode graphics compression, the following chart shows the GenPrint program run times and file sizes with the different compression options for a test environment containing in-line images.

Test	GenPrint time	File size
No charts (ImageOpt=No)	182 seconds (3:02)	697,599
UNC – uncompressed	309 seconds (5:09)	9,011,058
LIN compression	290 seconds (4:50)	1,589,226
ENC compression	301 seconds (5:01)	2,248,302
HTN compression	296 seconds (4:56)	1,831,050

Which compression method yields the smallest file size or the quickest compression time depends on the graphic bitmaps you are printing. In general, HTN or LIN compression provides the best results. HTN generally does best with graphics which contain more filled-in or shaded areas, while LIN performs better with graphics which contain more line art. Experiment with your images to determine the best compression method.

The results of compression can be dramatic, as the table shows. The uncompressed print-ready file is over nine megabytes in size, while the compressed file size ranges from 18% to 25% of the uncompressed file. However, keep in mind that while the reduced file sizes save disk space and reduce transmission times, these files must be decompressed by the printer at print time, which is done automatically by the print controller.

#### CompileInStream

The `CompileInStream` option determines whether the FAP files have been loaded. If set to `Yes`, the print driver compiles the print stream using FAP files. Make sure the `DownloadFAP` option in the `RunMode` control group is set to `Yes`. If set to `No`, pre-compiled MET files are used.

The print driver creates the print stream using pre-compiled Metacode files. Use the `FAP2MET` utility to create pre-compiled Metacode files. The GenPrint program loads pre-compiled Metacode members from the `PMETLIB` PDS under `MVS`. On other platforms, the `PMetLib` option specifies the directory which contains the pre-compiled MET files. If you do not set this option, the system uses the setting for the `FormLib` option in the `MasterResource` control group.

---

**NOTE:** To use FRM files in your Metacode print stream, set the `CompileInStream` INI option to `No` in the Xerox printer control group. Using FRM files enhances performance in high volume situations that use a repeated background form on every page.

---

#### Device

This is the name of the file or device, such as `LPT1`, where the Metacode print stream should be written. This option is ignored by the GenPrint program but should not be left blank or omitted. For instance, you could enter `dummy.txt`.

**RelativeScan** When set to Yes, the RelativeScan option tells the system to consolidate all records in the print stream. When set to No, this option tells the system to omit Relative Scan records when consolidating records. If you are using GenPrint version 9.0 or higher you will probably want to leave this option at its default setting (Yes) for maximum optimization.

## Specifying Installable Functions

For the Xerox print driver, you must specify the following set of installable functions in the PrtType:XER control group:

```
OutputFunc      = XEROutput
OutMetFunc      = XEROutMet
InitFunc        = XERInit
TermFunc        = XERTerm
Module          = XERW32
PrintFunc       = XERPrint
```

## Optional INI Options

### Setting the end of the report

Use the JDLRStack option to set the criteria which signals an *end of report* condition to the printer. In the JDL sample listed earlier, the RSTACK statement performed a criteria test named C2. The C2 test checks a specific part of each input line against the string named T2. If the string T2 matches an input data record at position zero (0) for a length of 10 bytes, an *end of report* condition is signaled. Only CONSTANT criteria using an EQ operator are supported.

Setting the JDLRStack option is optional. If your printer is used for both Metacode and text file print jobs, you *must* set this option. Using the JDL sample listed earlier, the option should be:

JSL statements	T2: TABLE CONSTANT=X'13131313131313131313'; C2: CRITERIA CONSTANT=(0,10,EQ,T2); RSTACK TEST=C2,DELIMITER=YES,PRINT=NONE;
INI option	JDLRStack = 0,10,EQ,X'13131313131313131313'

### Starting new pages

Use the JDLRPage option to set the criteria which signals a *jump to front side of a new sheet* to the printer. In the JDL sample listed earlier, the RPAGE statement performed a criteria test named C3. The C3 test checks a specific part of each input line against the string named T3. If the string T3 matches an input data record at position zero (0) for length of 5 bytes, a *jump to new sheet* condition is signaled because of the *SIDE=NUFRONT* statement. Only CONSTANT criteria using an EQ operator are supported. For the JDLRPage option to work properly, the *SIDE=NUFRONT* and *WHEN=NOW* statements must be used as a part of the RPAGE settings in the JSL file.

Setting the JDLRPage option is optional. If the print job contains duplex pages alternating with simplex (one-sided) pages, this option provides a way to leave blank the backsides of certain pages. Using the JDL sample listed earlier, the option should be:

JSL statements	T3: TABLE CONSTANT=X'FFFF26FFFF'; C3: CRITERIA CONSTANT=(1,5,EQ,T3); RPAGE TEST=C3,SIDE=NUFRONT,WHEN=NOW;
INI option	JDLRPage = 1,5,EQ,X'FFFF26FFFF'

The Metacode print driver automatically places the SIDE=NUFRONT statement on all front pages when operating in duplex mode. This lets the system support print stream sorting facilities such as Mobius InfoPak. Also, the SIDE=NUBACK statement is now added to blank back pages when in duplex mode.

These statements eliminate the need for the ADDPAGES utility which some systems used with Mobius InfoPak support. Without this functionality the first page of an output may print on the back of a previous output.

You will need to add the SIDE=NUFRONT statement on all front pages printed, not only those pages that specify a tray change. This is necessary to handle the end of job condition where the last page prints on the front and is moved by InfoPak.

Also, the system will now add a SIDE=NUBACK statement for pages that start on the back side of the page, leaving the front side blank.

---

**NOTE:** You cannot configure these statements. The system automatically enters them into the print stream. You do not need to add SIDE=NUFRONT and SIDE=NUBACK statements to your Xerox printer control group (PrtType:XER).

---

### Jogging pages

Use the JDLROffset option to set the criterion that tells the printer to initiate a page offset in the output bin. This option has not been fully implemented.

In the JDL sample, the ROFFSET statement performed a criteria test named C1. The C1 test checks a specific part of each input line against the string named T1. If the string T1 matches an input data record at position zero (0) for length of 9 bytes, a page offset is initiated. Only CONSTANT criteria using an EQ operator are supported.

Setting the JDLROffset option is optional. Using the JDL sample listed earlier, the option should be:

JSL statements	T1: TABLE CONSTANT=X'1212121212121212'; C1: CRITERIA CONSTANT=(0,9,EQ,T1); ROFFSET TEST=C1;
INI option	JDLROffset = 0,9,EQ,X'1212121212121212'

You can also jog form sets by transaction instead of by batch. In some situations, this can make manual assembly easier. To do this, set the OffsetLevel option to Formset, as shown here:

```
< PrtType:XER >  
  OffsetLevel = Formset
```

This adds an additional 'OFFSET' parameter to the SIDE=NUFRONT command, which tells the printer to jog after each transaction.

### Specifying spot color

Use the `PrinterInk` option to specify the color of ink loaded on a Xerox highlight color printer. You can set this option to one of the following colors:

Blue	Red	Green	Ruby	Violet	Brown
Gray	Cardinal	Royal	Cyan	Magenta	

Blue is the default if you omit this option. This option is used with the `SendColor` option. If you set the `SendColor` option to *Yes*, be sure to also set the `PrinterInk` option. Here is how you would specify cyan as the color of the ink stored on the printer:

```
PrinterInk = cyan
```

### Chart performance and print quality

By default, charts are rendered at 150 dpi (dots per inch) in a Metacode print stream. This setting typically provides for a smaller print stream and optimal performance from the GenPrint program.

Charts are scaled by the printer to their proper size and are printed as 300 dpi bitmaps. Because fewer dots are used at these lower dpi settings, you may notice some loss of detail in the printed output and effects such as:

- The circle which makes up the pie chart is less precise
- The lines used in a chart are thicker

Test charts printed to see if the loss of detail is acceptable. In general, horizontal and vertical lines scale with little or no loss of precision. Arcs and diagonal lines may lose some detail.

To disable rendering charts at 150 dpi, add the following option to the Xerox printer control group, usually named `PrtType:XER`:

```
ChartResolution = 300
```

The only other acceptable value for this option is 150. This option does not affect logos printed as inline graphics.

### Optimizing Metacode print streams

The GenPrint program lets you produce optimized Metacode print streams. You may want to consider using optimization if your Metacode output causes the printer to cycle down (wait) while printing.

This condition can occur when Metacode records cannot be transferred fast enough to the printer. Optimization helps remedy this situation by combining Metacode print records into larger and fewer records. Reducing the number of records that must be transmitted reduces the amount of time needed to spool the Metacode print stream to the printer. The cost is decreased GenPrint performance. You can also use the METOPT utility to optimize normal (non-optimized) Metacode output. For more information on this utility, see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

To have the GenPrint program produce optimized Metacode output streams, add this `FSISYS.INI` option to have the GenPrint program sort and consolidate records to create more efficient print streams:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  Optimize = Yes
```

The `Optimize` option defaults to `No`, which tells the GenPrint program to run without sorting and consolidating records.

You can enable some extra error checking during optimization. If optimization encounters critical errors, such as the inability to find or open a file, it will notify you and stop immediately. It can report actual or potential non-critical problems it encounters while it runs. For instance, if optimization finds Metacode records that may prevent the file from printing, it can warn you.

To have optimization notify you if it spots potential problems, add the following option to your `PrtType:XER` control group:

```
< PrtType:XER >  
ValidLevel = 0 (default)
```

Enter zero (0) to tell the utility not to report non-critical problems. Enter one (1) to tell the utility to report warnings for non-critical problems, but continue optimizing. Enter two (2) to tell the utility to report warnings for non-critical problems and attempt to fix the problems. Enter three (3) to tell the utility to report warnings for non-critical problems and exit immediately.

Regardless of the option you choose, if you receive any warnings, be sure to closely check both the original and, if applicable, the optimized file.

### Using a common font list

The `METOPT` utility and the Metacode print driver let you use common font lists at the beginning of a Metacode print stream. A common font list names all of the Xerox fonts that will be used by the print job.

By knowing all of the fonts up front, the Metacode driver can issue a single `DJDE FONTS` command once at the beginning of the job and avoid issuing `DJDE FONTS` commands on subsequent pages. This helps some Metacode printers print jobs at their highest rated speed.

In the `CommonFonts` control group, you will see a list of options similar to these:

```
< CommonFonts >  
Names = 28  
Name1 = FORMSX  
Name2 = FXUNBD  
Name3 = FXUNN6  
Name4 = FXCON6  
Name5 = FXUNN8  
Name6 = FXUNN0  
Name7 = FXUNBH  
...  
Name28 = FXUNI0
```

The first option, `Names`, defines the number of font name entries that follow. The following options specify the Xerox fonts which will be used in the print job.

---

**NOTE:** The format used for the `CommonFonts` control group is the same as that used by Documerge. Therefore, if you used this in Documerge, you can copy that INI control group into your Documaker INI file.

---

To use common font lists, you must use the METOPT utility or use the Metacode print driver and have the following INI options in the Xerox print group:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  Optimize = Yes
  MaxFonts =
```

Option	Description
Optimize	To use common font lists, set this option to Yes.
MaxFonts	Set this option to the maximum number of fonts your printer can handle in a single DJDE command. This number will vary based upon the printer's memory and configuration. The maximum value is 99 and the default is 20.

If the number of fonts in your common font list exceeds the MaxFonts value, the system outputs the MaxFonts number of fonts in the DJDE FONTS command. The DJDE FONTS command will contain the names of the fonts used on that page plus additional fonts from the common fonts list until the MaxFonts number of fonts is reached.

If the system encounters a page that uses a font not specified in the common fonts list (or the prior DJDE FONTS command to be more precise), it issues a new DJDE FONTS command which appends to the common font list the new fonts for that page.

### Setting a default paper size

Use the PaperSize option to set a default paper size when converting Metacode print streams using the Internet Document Server or the MRG2FAP utility.

```
< PrtType:XER >
  PaperSize = 0
```

Enter	Description
zero (0)	for letter size (default)
1	for legal size
2	for A4 size
3	for executive size
98	for a custom size

### Inline graphic logo performance and print quality

Logos at 75, 100, or 150 dpi, printed using inline graphics, are scaled by the printer to their proper size and printed as 300 dpi bitmaps. Because fewer dots are used at these lower dpi settings, you may notice some loss of detail in the printed output and effects such as:

- Arcs and circles are less precise
- The lines used in a logo are thicker

Test logos printed as inline graphics to see if the loss of detail is acceptable. In general, horizontal and vertical lines scale with little or no loss of precision. Arcs and diagonal lines may lose some detail.

To avoid scaling inline graphic logos, use the Logo Manager to scale your logos to 300 dpi. Most logos are normally 300 dpi and most logos are not printed as inline graphics. For more information about the Logo Manager, see the [Docucreate User Guide](#).

### Adding color to charts

Use the ColorCharts option to print the graphic portion of the chart in color.

```
ColorCharts = Yes
```

This option is used with the SendColor and PrinterInk options.

### Using named paper trays

By default, Metacode output specifies the main tray for pages that use Tray 1. The AUX tray is specified for all other trays. If you have named trays in your JSL, specify these named trays in your options. An example of this option is shown here:

```
Tray1 = ONE1  
Tray2 = TWO2  
Tray3 = THREE3  
Tray4 = FOUR4
```

### Specifying the printer model

Use the PrinterModel option to specify the particular printer model you are using. There may be subtle differences between printer models that can affect the output sent to the printer. Currently, only the 3700 printer requires this setting. An example of this option is shown here:

```
PrinterModel = 3700
```

### Specifying the resolution

Use the Resolution option to specify the printer's dots per inch resolution. Currently, only 300 dpi is supported, which is also the default.

```
Resolution = 300
```

### Displaying console messages

Use the OTextString option to display a message on the printer console. The text you specify is sent before the print job starts. For example, this lets you display the message, *Put BLUE paper in tray 1* before a print job starts. Here is an example:

```
OTextString = "Put BLUE paper in tray 1"
```

The system also supports multiple OTEXT messages in the Metacode print driver at a print batch level. Additionally, the system lets OTEXT messaging generate multiple messages per print batch. To turn on multiple OTEXT messaging, add this option to the FSISYS.INI file

```
< PrtType:XER >  
MultipleOText = Yes
```

The default is No.

This tells the system to ignore the OTextString value in the PrtType control group and instead use the ones found in the appropriate print batch group.

For example, if you have three print batches, called BATCH1, BATCH2, and BATCH3, under each separate batch group, put required number of sequential messages for that batch:

```
< BATCH1 >
...
OTextString1 = "Batch 1 OText String1"
OTextString2 = "Batch 1 OText String2"
OTextString3 = "Batch 1 OText String3"
< BATCH2 >
...
OTextString1 = "Batch 2 OText String1"
OTextString2 = "Batch 2 OText String2"
OTextString3 = "Batch 2 OText String3"
< BATCH3 >
...
OTextString1 = "Batch 3 OText String1"
OTextString2 = "Batch 3 OText String2"
OTextString3 = "Batch 3 OText String3"
***
```

Keep in mind that the index tags OTextStringX (where X is a number) must start with one (1) and be sequential. The system stops writing OTEXT records to the batch when it finds a tag that is out of sequence. Here is an example:

```
OTextString1 = "Batch 3 Otext String 1"
OTextString3 = "Batch 3 Otext String 3"
```

In this example, only the first one would display on the screen, because OTextString2 is not encountered next.

### Stapling forms

Some Metacode printers include a stapling feature. The system supports this feature, but it has not been tested and is not warranted.

Using this feature, forms printed on certain Metacode printers can be stapled if you specify a StapleJDEName option in the PrtType control group. This causes a new JDE to be specified on forms that need to be stapled.

It is assumed that the Staple JDE option has the same settings as the normal JDE specified except for the additional STAPLE command. You specify which forms should be stapled using the Form Set Manager, which is part of Docucreate or via Documaker Studio.

This option only affects implementations which print to Metacode printers with the optional stapling feature. For more information on this feature, see the [Docucreate User Guide](#). An example of this option is shown here:

```
StapleJDEName = JDESTP
```

### Duplex switching

In earlier versions of the system, a Metacode print stream began and continued as a simplex job until the system encountered a page that needed to be duplex. At that point, the duplexing option was turned on. From that point forward, the print stream remained in duplex mode. For performance reasons, the system did not switch out of duplex mode. Research showed that for most cases, this was the most efficient way to drive the printer.

If, however, you are directing the printer output stream to a *value-added* process, you may want to include the actual duplex selection information with each form set. Without the commands to specify the duplex state, some value-added processes may not work properly. By setting the DJDELevel option to **Formset**, each form set will include a duplex command which specifies either simplex or duplex mode (DJDE DUPLEX=YES or NO always appears at the beginning of every new form set). A value other than *Formset* causes the duplex commands to be output as before. Here is an example:

```
DJDELevel = Formset
```

### Using VSAM to store resources

The system lets you store DDT files, precompiled Metacode resources, NA and POL files, and transaction trigger files in VSAM KSDS (Virtual Storage Access Method/Key Sequence Data Set) data sets. If you use this feature, you must set the following options in the VSAM control group in the FSISYS.INI file:

```
< VSAM >
  DDTVSAM = DD:DDTVSAM      DDT files
  METVSAM = DD:PMETVSAM    PreCompiled Metacode files
  VSAMRCPTB = DD:SETRCPVS  Transaction Trigger file
  VSAMNA = DD:NAFILE       NA and POL files
```

For more information on implementing VSAM support under MVS, see *Optimizing Performance in the Installation Guide*.

### PrintViewOnly

If set to Yes, this option tells the system to print the view only images. The default is No. This does not apply to entry only images, which are never printed. Entry only images are usually worksheets. If the image is marked as hidden and view only, it will not print.

### Caching files to improve performance

The following options let you minimize the opening and closing of frequently used PDS members by retaining, or caching, file handles and file data. In many cases the default values are sufficient, but for specific cases in which you use many different images, you may need to increase these caching values to improve performance.

Here are the options you can customize:

```
< Control >
  CacheFAPFiles =
  RuleFilePool =
  LogCaching =
  CacheMethod =
```

Option	Description
CacheFAPFiles	Specifies the number of FAP files to keep available for re-use without re-loading them from disk. The default is 100.
RuleFilePool	Specifies the number of DDT files to keep available for re-use without re-loading them from disk. The default is 100.
LogCaching	Enter No if you do not want the system to log caching statistics. The default is Yes.
CacheMethod	Use to set the type of caching method. You can choose from <i>LFU</i> (least frequently used), <i>LRU</i> (least recently used), or <i>LFUO</i> (least frequently used optimized). <i>LFUO</i> is the default.

MET files contain pre-compiled Metacode information produced by the FAP2MET utility. The GenPrint program loads MET members from the PMETLIB PDS under MVS. On other platforms, the PMetLib option specifies the directory containing the pre-compiled MET files.

If not set, the system uses the setting for the FormLib option in the MasterResource control group. The CacheFiles option keeps frequently used MET members available for re-use. This option is placed in the PrtType:XER control group in the FSISYS.INI file, as shown here:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  CacheFiles = 100   (default is 100)
  InitFunc   = XERInit
  TermFunc   = XERTerm
```

Caching statistics for FAP files, DDT files and Xerox resources such as pre-compiled Metacode files (PMETs) and forms (FRMs) are collected and can be placed in the LOGFILE.DAT file. These statistics show the following information:

Item	Description
Method	The caching method you are using (LFUO, LFU, or LRU).
Size	The size of the caches. The default is 100.
Hits	The number of times the system tried to load a resource from the cache and found it there.
Misses	The number of times the system tried to load a resource from the cache and did not find it there.
Total	The combined hits and misses. This represents the number of times the system tried to load a resource from the cache.
Purges	The number of times the system had to remove a resource from the cache to put another resource into the cache. The system decides which resource to remove based on the method. If you are using LFUO or LFU, the least frequently used resource is removed. If you are using LRU, the least recently used resource is removed.

### Using the loader

The system lets you load print-ready Metacode files. For this feature to work, the print-ready Metacode file must have the same extension as the Ext option in the Loader:MET control group in the FAPCOMP.INI file. Here is an example:

```
< Loader:MET >
  Desc       = Xerox Metacode (*.MET)
  Ext        = .MET
  LoadFunc   = XERLoadMet
  Module     = XERW32
< Loaders >
  Loader     = MET
```

Along with the Image Editor's Metacode loader feature, another INI option is required in the PrtType:XER control group. The DefaultFont option defines the default font to use to indicate the names of any graphics in the print-ready Metacode file.

The graphics do not display in the Image Editor when the print-ready Metacode file is opened. Instead the name of the graphic appears, in the default font, and the space taken by the graphic is indicated. In addition, the default font is also used for displaying any text that references a font not present in the font cross-reference file.

To set the default font, enter the name of a Xerox font file contained in the font cross-reference file as shown here:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  DefaultFont = FXTIN8
```

If there are any logos in the MET file, the system requires a LOGO.DAT file in the FormLib directory so it can display logos properly for all rotations. The LOGO.DAT file, which is a semicolon-delimited file, should look similar to this:

```
[file name for 0° rotation];[file name for 90° rotation];[file name
for 180° rotation];[file name for 270° rotation];
```

Here are a few points to keep in mind when using this feature:

- The PrtType settings must match the setting used to produce the print-ready Metacode file.
- Rotated text will not display properly.
- Blank pages are created for simplex forms printed in duplex mode.
- This feature slows the printing of large print-ready files (more than 100 pages).
- If there is a reference to a FRM file in the MET file, the system cannot display the MET file.
- The system cannot display charts and logos.

### Using the Class option

You can use the following INI option to specify the printer classification, such as AFP, PCL, XER, PST, or GDI. If you omit this option, the system defaults to the first three letters from the Module option.

```
< PrtType:XER >
  Class = XER
```

Some internal functions expect a certain type of printer. For instance, all 2-up functions require an AFP printer. The internal functions check the Class option to make sure the correct printer is available before continuing.

### Adding user-defined DJDE statements

You can place the AdditionalDJDE option anywhere in the PrtType:XER control group. Each AdditionalDJDE value represents a distinct and separate DJDE statement, given verbatim. You can include as many AdditionalDJDE statements as needed. All of the located AdditionalDJDE statements are inserted into the print stream. You can also specify the batch in which to output the DJDE statement. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  AdditionalDJDE = "BATCH1";FEED=COVER,;
  InitFunc      = XERInit
  ...
  AdditionalDJDE = "BATCH1";STOCKS=BLUE,;
  ...
  AdditionalDJDE = JDL=DPLJDL,JDE=STRTON,;
```

The first two occurrences only apply to the BATCH1 batch. The third occurrence has no batch specified, so this DJDE statement is written to all print batches.

Keep in mind that these user-defined DJDE statements are placed after the BEGIN DJDE record and before the other DJDEs that are always inserted, such as FONTS. Make sure the DJDE syntax is correct and that the new DJDE records do not interfere with the ones automatically inserted into the print stream by the system.

Also, it is very important that you follow the correct syntax when coding the INI line. If you enter an invalid batch name, no corresponding batch will be found and the DJDE line will be ignored or not output in any batch. And, if the DJDE syntax is incorrect, the printer will issue error messages or unpredictable print results may occur.

#### Using third-party software to read Metacode files

If you use third-party software to read Skywire Software Metacode files and that software needs the DJDE, RSTACK, and RPAGE commands to begin with a carriage control value other than the default value of *oxo1*, you can use the DJDECarrControl option to handle this. You simply enter a value in the form of a string constant. These string constants are supported:

- ASCII (A'string')
- EBCDIC (E'string')
- character ('string')
- hex (X'string')

---

**NOTE:** The character string produces an EBCDIC string, same as E'string'.

---

The default value is 1 (X'o1'). Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:XER >  
  DJDECarrControl = X'09'
```

Keep in mind that any carriage control value will be accepted and no attempt is made to make sure a valid carriage control is used.

## METACODE PRINTER RESOURCES

A number of resources are used in the printing process. These resources generally reside on the printer's disk drive.

**Fonts** Xerox fonts are ASCII fonts. Xerox fonts are not scalable and do not rotate. There is one font file for each rotation and different files are required for different sizes. The file extension is *FNT* and file names are up to six characters long. Skywire Software has licensed for use and distribution with its systems, fonts from Monotype Imaging, Inc. Xerox fonts for all four rotations are included.

**Forms** Xerox forms are precompiled electronic files containing static text, boxes, logos, and so on, ready to be merged with variable data. Forms always have the extension *FRM*. Like fonts, the maximum file name is six characters. You use the *FAP2FRM* utility to create Xerox forms from *FAP* files.

**Images** Xerox images are large bitmaps or raster patterns that are stored in a special file format. These images are merged onto the forms which are then merged with the variable data. The file extension is *IMG* and the maximum file name is six characters.

---

**NOTE:** You must install a GVG hardware card on the printer to print *IMG* files. You can use the *LOG2IMG* utility to create Xerox images from *LOG* files.

---

**Logos** Logos are small bitmaps stored in a different format than *IMG* files. Extension is *LGO* and the file name is six characters long. You can only use Xerox logos inside a *FRM* file. You cannot invoke them directly in the data stream.

---

**NOTE:** These *LGO* files are quite different than *LOG* files used in the Logo Manager—even though both are called *logo* files. The system does not use Xerox logo files.

---

## METACODE LIMITATIONS

**Xerox images** The maximum number of images and inline graphics per page is 16.

**HMI support** HMI (horizontal motion index) is supported for zero (0) and 270 degree rotated text on portrait forms only. HMI combines separate text labels which are positioned on the same line and which use the same font into a single Metacode record. *FAP* files with justified paragraphs can benefit from this feature. Use the *FAP2MET* utility to implement HMI into pre-compiled *MET* files.

**Changing the paper size on the 4235 printer** You can not easily change paper sizes in one job. Each job is controlled by a *JDE*. If you need to pull paper from bins of different sizes, you have to call a different *JDE* each time you change from one paper size to another. This is similar to staple support. There is no code to invoke different *JDEs* for change of paper size.

**Xerox forms** If a Xerox form (*FRM* file) contains more than 48 blocks (each block is 512 bytes), your printer may not have enough memory to print it.

The CD (Character Dispatcher) memory is divided into three regions. The first region loads all fonts used on a page. The second region is used for TL/DLs which contain inline Metacode (may only be variable data if you use an FRM). The third region loads the TL/DLs from an FRM file, if one is being used for the page.

If you have version 2 of the printer software, your printer supports eight TL/DL buffers of 3K each (same as 48 blocks of 512 bytes each) for inline Metacode. With version 3.5 of the printer software, the limit was increased to 16 buffers of 3K each.

---

**NOTE:** Skywire Software's testing shows that with version 3.5, TL/DLs from FRMs (the third region of CD memory) are still limited to 8 TL/DL buffers of 3K each (same as 48 blocks of 512 bytes each).

---

Typically, Xerox 9700 and 9790 printers still have the older release installed. If so, you may want to upgrade to version 3.5. The Xerox 4000 series printers (4050, 4850, and so on) always come with version 3.5 or higher.

When you are not using FRM files in a print stream, the system does not use the CD memory reserved for FRM files.

## METACODE TROUBLESHOOTING

### Unexpected color output

Even though you set the SendColor option set to *No*, you still get color output when printing. This occurs when:

- You specified *Print in color* for some elements of the FAP file
- You precompiled the FAP files with the */C* option on FAP2MET
- A *SUB INK* command was issued on the printer

If ink substitution occurred because of an operator command, such as *SUB INK BLUE* (or *RED* or *GREEN*), the colored components of the precompiled MET file will be brought in with color attribute turned on and printed with color. This happens regardless of how you set the SendColor option. To print in black and white, either re-run the FAP2MET utility with no */C* flag, or use the *END* command to cancel ink substitution on the printer.

### Unexpected black and white output

Even though you set the SendColor option to *Yes*, you still get black and white output when printing. Use this checklist to make sure you have done everything to print in color:

- Make sure you specified *Print in color* for the color elements in your FAP file, such as text, shaded areas, lines, and so on.
- Make sure you precompiled the FAP files with the */C* option on FAP2MET;
- If you are using precompiled FAP files, make sure you compiled those FAPs using the FAP2CFA utility.
- Make sure you run the GenPrint program with the SendColor option set to *Yes*.

**Highlight color should match the PrinterInk option**

The PrinterInk option causes a DJDE ILIST command which specifies the highlight color to use. If a different highlight color is installed on the printer, the printer follows the procedure specified in the ABNORMAL statement in the JDL and JDE loaded. The ABNORMAL procedure specifies whether the job should continue, abort, or stop. If no ABNORMAL procedure is declared, the default is for the printer to stop so a new ink cartridge can be loaded. Besides the ABNORMAL statement, the printer operator can override the ink setting using the SUB command (for example, SUB INK BLUE or SUB INK CURRENT).

**Logo orientation**

To print a portrait image which contains a logo on a landscape form using pre-compiled MET files, set the LoadFAPBitmap option to Yes. This is necessary because the logo name must change from the portrait (zero degrees) name to the landscape (270 degrees) name.

**Output catching up with the input**

If your printer cycles down and displays a message stating that the output caught up with the input, it indicates the average number of records per physical page is greater than the maximum number of records that can be transferred across the channel in the time allowed for a page.

This situation causes the printer to cycle down so it can buffer more pages before it continues. This table shows the maximum average number of records that can be transferred across the channel in time to support the printer running at rated speed:

Printer	Maximum Records Per Page
4050	285
4090	155
DP96	149
41/4635	105
DP180	78

To resolve this problem, you need to optimize the Metacode print stream. For more information, see [Optimizing Metacode print streams on page 239](#).

**Printing rotated variables**

Here is a list of field options you can specify in the NAFIELD.DAT file:

Option	Description
E	Error
M	Manual
P	Protected
G	Global scope (entire form set)
F	Form scope
H	Hidden field (such as a dummy field, neither displayed nor printed)

Option	Description
N	Nonprintable field (displayed, not printed)
C	Send-copy-to field (receives current recipient name at print time)
9	Rotated 90 degrees
8	Rotated 180 degrees
7	Rotated 270 degrees

Some of these options require the FAP field attributes to be available at runtime, since the DDT file does not include the necessary information. You can use the `CheckImageLoaded` rule to make sure this information is available.

### Multi-page images

When you use multi-page FAP files (images) and pre-compiled MET files, you must use the `EjectPage` rule. This rule enables the printing of multi-page images. Here are the steps to apply the rule:

- 1 Open the FAP file in the Image Editor
- 2 Select Format, Image Properties and then click the Load DDT button.

The Image Editor detects that the image contains multiple pages and inserts into the DDT file as many `EjectPage` rules as there are pages.

---

**NOTE:** You must have a variable field on each page. The variable field can be a dummy field that is hidden.

---

When you implement multi-page FAP files and pre-compiled MET files, keep these requirements in mind:

- Only multi-page FAP files are applicable.
- Multi-page FAP files cannot be mixed with single page FAP files on the same form. The system cannot easily determine the page number in this case.
- The multi-page FAP file came from the Image Editor and therefore there is only one image per page, hence, each page on the form has an image list that contains one and only one image.
- The index of the page on which that image resides within that form is the number of the page.
- Multi-page images can be duplexed by setting the form to either *Front* (long edge binding) or *Short* bind (short edge binding). Internally created images will be set to *Rolling* for the remaining pages.

---

**NOTE:** If a form begins with a rolling duplex option, the print drivers begin printing on the blank back page of the previous form. Any form that starts with rolling and begins a form set is treated as the front page of a rolling set.

---

Operator command,  
FEED, causes duplex  
problems

If you enter an operator command to specify an input tray—because for instance, one paper tray is empty and while you refill it you want the printing to continue using another tray—you can no longer select trays from DJDEs in the job stream. Instead, you will get messages which tell you tray selection was suspended by an operator override.

All paper feed from that point forward, will be from the tray specified in the operator command. This can cause duplex jobs to print incorrectly if you have completed printing on a front page and the next page should print from a different tray.

To correct this situation, enter a *FEED=MAIN* command. This command tells the printer to switch to tray 1 and enables tray selection through DJDE commands so the next paper selection command is obeyed.

Line density errors

As the speed of the printer increases, there is less and less time available to the character dispatcher to form the scan line and send it to the image generator. Here is some information on how this affects the various Xerox printers:

- Since the 4135 printer is the fastest of the Xerox printers using the older CD/IG, the chances of running out of time and causing a *line density error* are greatest with this model.
- The Xerox 4050 and 4850 printers are too slow for this to be a problem. These printers allow more fetches from the font memory per scan line.
- The Xerox 4635 printer's image generation module has been revamped to such an extent that Xerox almost guarantees there will never be a line density exceeded error on a 4635 printer.
- The 4235 printer is slow and works quite differently than the centralized printers.
- If a job works fine on a 9790 printer but fails on a 4135, the number of character fetches is likely on the borderline of failure.

If you experience line density problems, check your FAP files for the following:

- Text superimposed on shaded areas.
- Large number of text lines with small fonts.
- Large number of horizontal lines whose thickness is measured in an odd number of dots. If you change the thickness of a horizontal line from three dots to two or four dots (0.01" to .006666" or 0.013333" — 24 FAP units to 16 or 32 FAP units), it reduces the character count from two to one.

The Xerox line drawing font has three horizontal line drawing characters which specify lines with thicknesses of two, four, and eight dots (.006666", .013333" and .026666" or 16, 32, and 64 FAP units). Odd thicknesses require the printer to overlay or overlap multiple lines.

- Large number of small boxes, many of which have common boundaries. On paper it looks like one line. Actually, there may be two or more character fetches for the same black dots. Create these kinds of boxes by drawing lines rather than boxes.

### Output data length validation

Metacode printer JSL specifies the length of data that can be received. This data length must match the value output into the Metacode print stream. You specify the data length in the JSL as shown here:

```
LINE DATA = (0,213)
```

You specify the data length in the PrtType:XER control group in the FSISYS.INI file, as shown here:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  JDLData = 0,213
```

In this example, the JSL specifies a maximum data length of 213, so the INI option has a matching value. The maximum length value is also used in the Metacode print driver to make sure no more than the specified amount of data is output in any Metacode record. If the amount of data to be emitted in the record exceeds this amount, an error message such as the following appears:

```
Record Length 214 is too long - maximum length is 213.
```

---

**NOTE:** Under MVS, Metacode output files are VB datasets. The JCL specifies a maximum length of a record (LRECL). If an attempt is made to write a record longer than the LRECL value, the write will fail and an error message appears.

Be advised that under MVS, with VB datasets, the LRECL size includes a 4-byte record length, known as the *RDW*. The RDW is implicitly added to the front of each variable length record. Therefore, you should set the LRECL value for the Metacode output dataset to a number equal to the JSL maximum length plus four to account for the RDW bytes at the front of the record. For the above example, set the LRECL of the Metacode output file to 217.

---

## Using Xerox Forms (FRMs)

The system lets you use Xerox form (FRM) resources when you print to Xerox Metacode printers. FRMs are printer resident resources that contain static full-page images. The system can use FRMs during the print process.

You can convert frequently used static full-page images into FRMs using the FAP2FRM utility. To indicate an image is resident on the printer as a FRM file, use the Form Set Manager. The Printer Resident field indicates the image is a pre-compiled resource resident on the printer—as opposed to a pre-compiled resource that needs to be downloaded to the printer. For more information on the Form Set Manager and the Printer Resident field, see the [Docucreate User Guide](#).

Here are some guidelines for using Xerox forms (FRMs):

- Create one FAP file per page. If there is a text area, do not put variable data within the text area.
- The image size must be one of the standard paper sizes, such as US Letter, Legal, A4, or Executive.

- Because Xerox printers can only accept file names up to six characters in length, the image name can be up to six character long. If, however, the image is a multi-page FAP file, the name can consist of no more than four characters to accommodate the two-character number added by the FAP2FRM utility. Here are some examples: *TEST01.FRM* for the first page, *TEST02.FRM* for the second, and so on.
- Use the FAP2FRM utility to convert FAP files into FRM files. For multi-page FAP files, create multiple FRM files. The names are appended with two-digit numeric suffixes.
- On workstations, store the FRM files in the same directory as the FAP files. On MVS, keep them in a PDS attached to the PFRMLIB DD name. On AS400 systems, use the FRMFile option in the Data control group to specify where the FRM files are stored.
- Use the Printer Resident field in the Form Set Manager to mark individual forms as *printer resident*. After you do this, the FORM.DAT file contains the *V* image option which indicates the image is resident on the printer. When you run the GenPrint program, a *DJDE FORMS=fname* command is inserted for the corresponding images. The remainder of the images are printed by inline Metacode, possibly using precompiled MET files.
- Install the FRM files on the Xerox printer using the XERDNLD utility. Copy the resulting \*.DAT files to the printer. To make sure the forms are installed on the printer, use the SAMPLE console command to print the form files.

## BARRWRAP

The BARRWRAP utility converts Metacode output from JES2 format into BARR format.

The BARR interface attachment for Metacode printers requires that the Metacode print stream files contain BARR specific information. The BARRWRAP utility adds this information to an existing Metacode print stream file, which lets you print the output file via the BARR interface.

After you run the utility on a Metacode file, *76 1A FF 00* is added at the beginning of the file. This tells BARR the file is a Metacode file. A byte denoting the record length is also added at the beginning and end of each record in the file.

Use this utility when you test the GenPrint program on MVS. If the MVS system is not directly channel-attached to the Xerox printer, you must download the print streams to an OS/2 system—use no ASCII translation, but do use CRLF. Then, using BARRWRAP, the print stream is packaged to successfully pass through BARR/SPOOL.

---

**NOTE:** Occasionally, the binary data contained in a Metacode file has a sequence of hex bytes (*x'oDoA'*) which could be misinterpreted as a carriage return/line feed. This is true particularly for charts and other inline graphics. Convert such data streams using the BARRWRAP utility on the MVS platform before you download them with the no ASCII and no CRLF (binary) options.

---

### Transferring Files from Xerox Format Floppies

Resources saved on a 5 1/4-inch floppy, using *FLOPPY SAVE file.ext*, are saved in a special Xerox format. For use in the system, or for transferring to a 4235 printer, you must convert these resources into DOS format. You can use the following software packages to perform this required conversion:

- FloppyCopy by Lytrod Software – Inexpensive, easy to use
- Elixir – More expensive, but includes additional features.
- LaserLinx – No longer marketed.

## PCL PRINTERS

Hewlett-Packard created the Printer Control Language (PCL) to provide a way for application programs to control a range of printer features across a wide array of printing devices.

The PCL language has evolved over time. For the most part, system-produced PCL output will run on any printer that supports PCL 5 or PCL 6. There are separate drivers for these two versions of the PCL language.

To support color printing, the printer must support PCL 5c, which contains color extensions. To support more than two paper trays, the printer must support PCL 5e.

---

**NOTE:** All system print drivers support 24-bit color logos. If your printer does not support color, the print driver will automatically convert the color logos into monochrome logos. Keep in mind that for the best performance you should avoid color logos.

---

## PCL INI OPTIONS

You must define the necessary printer options for the GenPrint program to produce PCL output. These options specify PCL output and are located in a *PrtType:xxx* control group, such as *PrtType:PCL* for PCL 5 or *PrtType:PXL* for PCL 6. Common PCL printer options are shown below, with default values in bold:

Option	Values	Description
Device	any file or device name	The name of the file or device (LPT1) where the PCL print stream should be written. This setting is ignored by the GenPrint program but is used by Studio, Image Editor and other Documaker system programs.
Module	PCLW32	The name of the program module which contains the PCL print driver. See also the Class option. For PCL6, enter <b>PXLW32</b> .
PrintFunc	PCLPrint	The name of the program function that is the main entry point into the PCL print driver. For PCL6, enter <b>PXLPrint</b> .
Resolution	<b>300</b>	The dots per inch resolution of the printer which will receive the PCL data stream.
SendOverlays	Yes/No	Set to Yes if you created PCL overlays for each FAP file. This option is not supported for PCL 6.

Option	Values	Description
OverlayPath	any directory	<p>Set to the directory containing the PCL overlays for each FAP file. The default is the FormLib option of the MasterResource control group. Here is an example:</p> <pre>&lt; MasterResource &gt; FormLib = &lt;CONFIG:Batch Processing&gt; FormLib = &lt;CONFIG:Batch Processing&gt; FormLib = ./forms/</pre> <p>This option is not supported for PCL 6.</p>
OverlayExt	any file extension (OVL)	<p>The file extension of the PCL overlays. This option is not supported for PCL 6.</p>
PageNumbers	Yes/No	<p>Set to Yes to enable form or form set page numbering.</p>
SendColor	Yes/No Enabled/ Disabled/ Hidden	<p>Set to Yes to enable color printing.</p> <p>Enabled = Option appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked).</p> <p>Disabled = Option appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked).</p> <p>Hidden = Option does not appear in the Print window.</p>
HighlightColor	Yes/No	<p>Set this option and the SendColor option to Yes to use simple color mode. See <a href="#">Using Simple Color Mode on page 262</a> for more information. This option is not supported for PCL 6.</p>
DownloadFonts	Yes/No	<p>Set to Yes to enable downloading of PCL fonts. For PCL6, you must enter Yes because internal font selection is not supported.</p>
TemplateFields	Yes/No	<p>Set to Yes to test print Xs in variable fields.</p>
FitToWidth	Yes/No	<p>Not supported by either PCL print driver.</p>
AdjLeftMargin	Yes/No	<p>Automatically adjusts the left margin to compensate for the 1/4-inch left margin added by PCL printers.</p> <p>Yes = Automatically adjust the left margin. Forms print exactly as they appear on screen (default).</p> <p>No = Do not adjust the left margin. Forms may not print correctly on PCL printers after performing a retrieve function.</p> <p>This option is not supported for PCL 6.</p>

Option	Values	Description
SelectRecipients	Yes/No Enabled/ Disabled/ Hidden	Set to <i>No</i> to disable the ability to select recipients. Enabled = Appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked). Disabled = Appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked). Hidden = Does not appear in the Print window.
PrintViewOnly	Yes/ <i>No</i>	If set to Yes, the view only images will print. This does not apply to entry only images, which are never printed. Entry only images are usually worksheets. If the image is marked as hidden and view only, it will not print.
PrePrintedPaper	Yes,Disabled	Determines if the check box which lets you print or not print pre-printed objects appears on the Print window. Also determines the default for this field—checked or unchecked. You must add this option to the INI file if you want the field to appear on the Print window. The default includes the field on the Print window and leaves it unchecked. All objects except fields can be marked pre-printed on the object's Properties window.
Class	<i>(first three characters of the Module option)</i>	Specifies the printer classification, such as AFP, PCL, XER, PST, or GDI. If you omit this option, the system defaults to the first three letters from the Module option. Some internal functions expect a certain type of printer. For instance, all 2-up functions require an AFP printer. The internal functions check the Class option to make sure the correct printer is available before continuing.
StapleBin		Set this option to the PCL printer escape sequence that selects the bin that contains the staple attachment. Use a tilde character (~) in place of the binary escape character. This option is not supported for PCL 6.
PJLCommentScript		To add PJI comments to a PCL print stream, enter the name of the DAL script you want the system to run. This DAL script creates the control strings and adds them as ASCII comments. This option is not supported for PCL 6.
PJLCommentOn	<b>batch</b> /formset	Use this option to add PJI comment records to the beginning of every form set or batch. This option is not supported for PCL 6.

Option	Values	Description
OutputBin		Enter the printer escape sequence to select the normal output bin (for non-stapled forms) if non-stapled forms are being sent to the wrong bin. This option is not supported for PCL 6.

**NOTE:** The default FAPCOMP.INI file should include the PrtType:GDI control group and options in addition to the PrtType:PCL or PrtType:PXL control group.

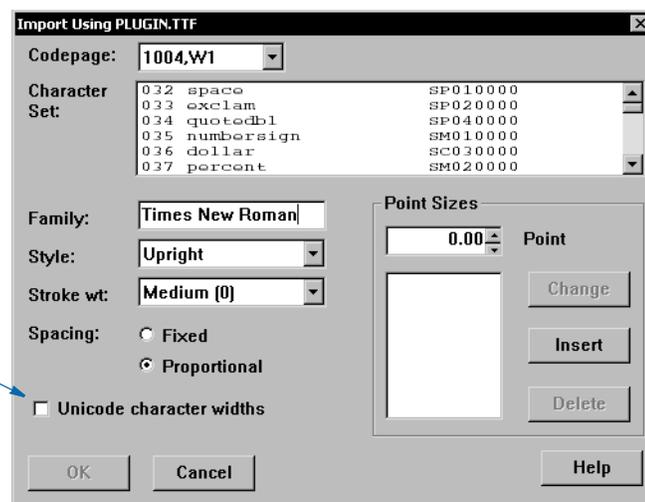
### Using PCL 6

PCL 6 is a stack-based protocol (similar to PostScript) composed of attributes and operators that let you define paths, clip paths, pens, brushes, fonts, raster patterns, and so on. PCL6 also supports 16-bit character codes which makes it a better choice for supporting Unicode than PCL 5.

The PCL 6 driver lets you download both PCL bitmap fonts and TrueType fonts. You must specify the TrueType font file name in the Font File entry of the PCL printer section in the font cross-reference (FXR) file.

To turn on Unicode support, check the Unicode Character Widths field when you insert a TrueType font into the FXR file. Unicode support lets you use additional characters and languages supported by the TrueType font.

Click here to turn on Unicode support.



Keep in mind...

- The PCL 6 driver supports PCL bitmap fonts so you can use master resource libraries (MRLs) designed for PCL 5. Just remember to make the appropriate changes to your INI options.
- When printing using a TrueType font, only the characters used on the form are downloaded into the print stream. This reduces the size of print stream files, particularly if the TrueType font includes support for Asian languages.

In comparison to the PCL 5 printer driver, the PCL 6 driver has these limitations:

- No overlay support
- No support for a separate downloadable font file which contains multiple PCL fonts
- No internal printer font support
- Less paper tray support, no INI options to specify which PCL commands to use
- No INI options to specify PCL commands to output bin or staple bin
- No highlight color support
- No comment script support

### Printing Under Windows

Windows XP/2000 does not recognize printer ports such as LPT1. If you are using Windows XP/2000, you must change the PrtType control group in the FSIUSER.INI file to reflect the print server name and print device. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
Device = \\FSISRV03\OPTRA1
```

### Using High-Capacity Trays 3 and 4 on HP 5SI Printers

The system defines document attributes in a device-independent fashion. In prior versions, PCL support was based on options available to PCL 5 and similarly configured printers. The newer HP 5SI printer offers additional capabilities which depend upon (at least somewhat) commands that exist in PCL 5e. To add to the confusion, HP is not always consistent with its own terminology. Here is how the system treated PCL in prior versions:

**NOTE:** The ability to define trays or use the Tray# option is not supported for PCL 6.

System term	PCL command	PCL term	HP 4 term	HP 4si term	HP 5si term
Tray 1 (Main)	~&l1H	Tray 2 (upper)	PC Tray	Upper tray	Tray 2 (upper drawer)
Tray 2 (Aux)	~&l4H	Tray 3 (lower)	MP	Lower tray	Tray 3 (lower drawer)
Tray 3 (Man)	~&l2H	Manual feed	Tray 1	Manual feed	Tray 1 (manual side feed)
Tray 4 (Env)	~&l3H	Envelope feed	Tray 1	Manual feed	Tray 1 (manual side feed)
n/a	~&l5H	HCI, first tray	LC Tray	n/a	First tray of HCI

System term	PCL command	PCL term	HP 4 term	HP 4si term	HP 5si term
n/a	~&l20H	HCI, second tray	n/a	n/a	Second tray of HCI

The terms for the current version are shown below, with changes highlighted:

System term	PCL command	PCL term	HP 4 term	HP 4si term	HP 5si term
Tray 1 (Main)	~&l1H	Tray 2 (upper)	PC Tray	Upper tray	Tray 2 (upper drawer)
Tray 2 (Aux)	~&l4H	Tray 3 (lower)	MP	Lower tray	Tray 3 (lower drawer)
Tray 3	~&l5H	HCI, first tray	LC Tray	n/a	First tray of HCI
Tray 4	~&l20H	HCI, second tray	n/a	n/a	Second tray of HCI

The command ~&l5H (first high-capacity tray) is supported by PCL 5, but the hardware is not typically found on HP printers. The command ~&l20H requires PCL 5e.

You can use these INI options:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  Tray1 = pcl command sequence (default is ~&l1H)
  Tray2 = pcl command sequence (default is ~&l4H)
  Tray3 = pcl command sequence (default is ~&l5H)
  Tray4 = pcl command sequence (default is ~&l20H)
```

Keep in mind the paper size overrides the tray selection.

**NOTE:** See also for [Handling Multiple Paper Trays on page 305](#) more information.

If you depend on the prior sequence, you can return to the original operation by specifying:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  Tray3 = ~&l12H
  Tray4 = ~&l13H
```

**NOTE:** The tilde (~) represents the escape character and is translated internally. The third character in each sequence shown is a lowercase *L*.

### Using a staple attachment

In your PCL printer group, usually `PrtType:PCL`, add the `StapleBin` option to use a staple attachment on your PCL printer.

Set the `StapleBin` option to the PCL printer escape sequence that selects the output bin which contains the staple attachment. Use a tilde (~) in place of the binary escape character.

Here is an example:

```
~&l2G (tilde, ampersand, lower case l, 2, upper case G)
```

This example shows the escape sequence used to select an optional lower (rear) output bin that may have a staple attachment. Check with your printer manual for the escape sequence you should use.

The `OutputBin` option should contain the printer escape sequence needed to select the normal output bin (for non-stapled forms). Using the `OutputBin` option is not necessary unless you notice the non-stapled forms are being sent to the wrong output bin. This INI option is only necessary when you have both stapled and non-stapled forms in the same print batch.

### Using Simple Color Mode

The PCL print driver supports PCL simple color mode in addition to full RGB color support. PCL simple color mode uses a 3-plane CMY palette. The 3-plane CMY palette contains these indexed colors:

- 0 - White
- 1 - Cyan
- 2 - Magenta
- 3 - Blue
- 4 - Yellow
- 5 - Green
- 6 - Red
- 7 - Black

To specify highlight color printing for PCL, include these INI options:

```
< PrtType:PCL >  
  SendColor = Yes  
  HighlightColor = Yes
```

### Marking objects to print in color

For any object, such as lines, boxes, or text, select the `Print in Color` option on the `Color Selection` window if you want the object to print in a color other than black. Keep in mind...

- If the object is black and is not marked as `Print in color`, the system prints the object using a black color index.
- If the object has a color other than black and is marked as `Print in color`, the system prints it using a highlight color index.
- Charts print in black, although you can print chart labels in the highlight color.

### Specifying the highlight color to use

You can use these INI options to specify the PCL color commands to use for printing the black and highlight colors. The default values are shown here:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  HighlightColorCmd = ~*v3S
  HighlightBlackCmd = ~*v7S
```

Note that the tilde (~) is used in place of the PCL escape character (hex 1B) and that the number used in the command corresponds to the color indexes specified earlier, such as 3=Blue and 7=Black.

To use a different highlight color, include the HighlightColorCmd option. To use a different black color, specify the HighlightBlackCmd option.

### Printing on different types of printers

Printing black and white, highlight color, and full color print streams on black and white, highlight color, and full color PCL printers will produce varying results.

You can usually send a color PCL print stream to a black and white PCL printer without any problem—everything comes out black and white. PCL printers usually ignore any commands they do not understand.

If, however, you send a highlight color PCL print stream to a full color PCL printer, the results may be slightly different than if you had sent the print stream to a highlight color printer.

Bitmaps (logos) in a highlight color print stream may print as cyan on a full color printer. Bitmaps are a sequence of binary data—zeros (0) and ones (1)—so the zeros may print as white, while the ones may print as cyan. On a highlight color printer, the bitmap is printed as expected using the black or highlight color.

If you send a full color PCL print stream to a highlight color printer, your results may vary based on the printer model and printer settings.

### Creating Compressed PCL Files

You can create compressed PCL files using Documaker. This capability is typically used with IDS because Windows does not let you print files that are a mixture of simplex and duplex pages from Acrobat. The whole document has to be printed the same way. IDS, however, lets you print a file to a local PCL printer which preserves the file's duplex information.

To create compressed PCL files, set these INI options. These options call the PRTZCompressOutPutFunc function to compress an output file, such as a PCL print batch file:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  OutputMod = PRTW32
  OutputFunc = PRTZCompressOutputFunc
```

**NOTE:** The output is compressed, regardless of the file's extension. You must decompress the file before you can print it.

## Adding Printer Job Level Comments

Printer Job Language (PCL) comments are supported by some PCL printers (not PCL 6). One type of command lets you add a comment to your PCL print stream. The PJJ comment does not affect printing but can pass information to other products that look for specific information in PJJ comment records, such as an imaging system.

---

**NOTE:** Imaging products can be used to archive PCL print streams. These products often require a control record at the beginning of the PCL print stream. These options and DAL functions let you create that control record.

---

To add PJJ comments, add the following INI option to the PCL print group:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  PJJCommentScript = imaging.DAL
```

The PJJCommentScript option specifies the DAL script you want to run. This DAL script creates a control string and adds it as an ASCII comment. Here is an example of the DAL script:

```
* Add imaging comment - use default APPIDX record.
Comment = AppIdxRec( )
AddComment(Comment,1)
Return('Finished!')
```

Notice the use of the second parameter to the AddComment DAL function. The `1` indicates the string should be an ASCII string. If you omit this parameter, the system converts the string into an EBCDIC string.

You can also use the PJJComment option to tell the system to add PJJ comments to the beginning of every form set or print batch. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  PJJCommentScript = imaging.DAL
  PJJCommentOn = formset
```

## Adding Data for Imaging Systems

The PCL print driver can add free form text or data at the beginning of a batch or each form set within the batch. This can help you interface with imaging systems such as RightFax.

Use the TEXTScript INI option to specify the DAL script you want to run. This DAL script creates a free form data or text buffer and adds it to the print stream.

Here is an example of the DAL script:

```
* Populate the PCL stream comment with these values from RCBDFFD
faxnum = trim(GVM('FaxNumber'))
faxname = trim(GVM('FaxName'))

AddComment('<TOFAXNUM:' & faxnum & '>',1)
AddComment('<TONAME:' & faxname & '>',1)

Return
```

Notice the use of the second parameter to the AddComment DAL function. The 1 indicates the string should be an ASCII string. If you omit this parameter, the system converts the string into an EBCDIC string. You can also use the TEXTCommentOn option to tell the system to add free form text or data to the beginning of every form set or print batch. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:PCL >  
  TEXTScript      = imaging.DAL  
  TEXTCommentOn  = formset
```

## PCL PRINTER RESOURCES

A number of resources are used in the printing process. These resources reside in directories specified in the MasterResource control group.

**Fonts** The system supports PCL bitmap fonts. These fonts reside in the directory specified in the FontLib option in the MasterResource control group when you set the DownloadFonts option to Yes. The system includes utilities for creating PCL fonts from PostScript, TrueType, Xerox, or AFP fonts.

**Overlays** Use the OVLCOMP utility to create PCL overlays from FAP files. These overlays must reside in the directory specified in the OverlayPath option in the MasterResource control group when you set the SendOverlays option to Yes.

---

**NOTE:** Because the PCL 6 driver supports PCL bitmap fonts, you can use master resource libraries (MRLs) designed for PCL 5. Just remember to make the appropriate changes to your INI options.

---

## POSTSCRIPT PRINTERS

Adobe Systems created the PostScript language. It is an interpretive programming language with powerful graphics capabilities. For the most part, system-produced PostScript output will run on any printer that supports PostScript Level 2.

---

**NOTE:** All system print drivers support 24-bit color logos. If your printer does not support color, the print driver will automatically convert the color logos into monochrome logos. Keep in mind that for the best performance you should avoid color logos.

---

### POSTSCRIPT INI OPTIONS

You must define the necessary printer related options for the GenPrint program to produce PostScript output. These options specify PostScript output and are located in a `PrtType:xxx` control group, such as `PrtType:PST`. Common PostScript printer options are shown below, with default values in bold:

Option	Values	Description
Device	any file or device name	The name of the file or device (LPT1) where the PCL print stream should be written. This setting is ignored by the GenPrint program but is used by the Image Editor and other system programs.
Module	PSTW32	The name of the program module which contains the PostScript print driver. See also the Class option.
PrintFunc	PSTPrint	The name of the program function that is the main entry point into the PostScript print driver.
Resolution	<b>300</b>	The dots per inch resolution of the printer which will receive the PostScript data stream.
SendOverlays	<b>Yes/No</b>	Set to Yes if you have created PostScript overlays for each FAP file.
DSCHeaderComment		Use to specify PostScript Document Structure Convention (DSC) comments you want added to the header portion of the generated PostScript print stream. You can include as many DSCHeaderComment options as are necessary. See <a href="#">Adding DSC Comments on page 269</a> for more information.

Option	Values	Description
OverlayPath	any directory	<p>Set to the directory which contains the PostScript overlays for each FAP file. The default is the FormLib option of the MasterResource control group.</p> <p>Instead of using the above control groups and options, you could use the following options:</p> <pre>&lt; MasterResource &gt; OverlayPath = &lt;CONFIG:Batch Processing&gt; OverlayPath = &lt; CONFIG:Batch Processing &gt; OverlayPath = .\PstOvl\</pre> <p>The default is the FormLib directory pointed to by the FormLib option in the MasterResource control group., as shown here:</p> <pre>&lt; MasterResource &gt; FormLib = &lt;CONFIG:Batch Processing&gt; FormLib = &lt; CONFIG:Batch Processing &gt; FormLib = ./Forms/</pre>
OverlayExt	any file extension <b>(OVL)</b>	The file extension of the PostScript overlays.
PageNumbers	<b>Yes/No</b>	Set to <i>Yes</i> to enable form or form set page numbering.
SendColor	<b>Yes/No</b> Enabled/ Disabled/ Hidden	<p>Set to <i>Yes</i> to enable color printing.</p> <p>Enabled = Option appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked).</p> <p>Disabled = Option appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked).</p> <p>Hidden = Option does not appear in the Print window</p>
DownloadFonts	<b>Yes/No</b>	Set to <i>Yes</i> to enable downloading of PostScript fonts.
PrinterModel	file name (omit extension)	Contains the name of the PostScript Printer Definition ( <i>PPD</i> ) file. This file contains information about printer-specific features. This file must be in the directory specified by the DefLib option of the FMRES control group.
TemplateFields	<b>Yes/No</b>	Set to <i>Yes</i> to test print Xs in variable fields
FitToWidth	<b>Yes/No</b>	Not supported by the PostScript print driver
PrintViewOnly	<b>Yes/No</b>	If set to <i>Yes</i> , the view only images will print. This does not apply to entry only images, which are never printed. Entry only images are usually worksheets. If the image is marked as hidden and view only, it will not print.

Option	Values	Description
PrePrintedPaper	Yes,Disabled	<p>Determines if the check box which lets you print or not print pre-printed objects appears on the Print window. Also determines the default for this check box—checked or unchecked. You must add this option to the INI file if you want the check box to appear on the Print window.</p> <p>The default for this option includes the checkbox on the Print window and leaves it unchecked. All objects except fields can be designated as pre-printed on the object's Properties window in the Image Editor.</p>
Class	<i>(first three characters of the Module option)</i>	<p>Specifies the printer classification, such as AFP, PCL, XER, PST, or GDI. If you omit this option, the system defaults to the first three letters from the Module option.</p> <p>Some internal functions expect a certain type of printer. For instance, all 2-up functions require an AFP printer. The internal functions check the Class option to make sure the correct printer is available before continuing.</p>
LanguageLevel	Level1 <b>Level2</b>	<p>Level2 is the default setting and is required for complex printing tasks, such as duplexing, tray selection, and so on.</p> <p>Only use Level1 if your printer only supports PostScript Level 1 language features.</p>
StapleOn StapleOff	see description	<p>These options work in a similar fashion to the Tray# options which let you specify PostScript commands directly as a quoted string or to look up the PostScript commands to use in your printer's PPD file.</p> <p>For detailed information, see <a href="#">Stapling Forms on page 270</a>.</p>
SelectRecipients	<b>Yes/No</b> <b>Enabled/</b> Disabled/ Hidden	<p>Enabled = Option appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked).</p> <p>Disabled = Option appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked).</p> <p>Hidden = Option does not appear in the Print window.</p>

## Printing under Windows

Windows XP/2000 does not recognize printer ports such as LPT1. Change the PRTTYPE control group in the FSIUSER.INI file to reflect the print server name and print device. Here is an example:

```
< PRTTYPE:PST >
    Device = \\FSISRV03\OPTRA1
```

## Generating PostScript Files on OS/390

You can generate PostScript output files on OS/390 (MVS) systems with an updated (version 11.0 or later) PSTLIB. Be sure to include these settings in your FSI SYS.INI file to print PostScript on OS/390:

```
< Printer >
    PRTTYPE = PST
< PRTTYPE:PST >
    Module = PSTW32
    Printfunc = PSTPrint
    SendOverlays = (Yes or No)
    SendColor = (Yes or No)
    DownloadFonts = (Yes or No)
```

## Adding DSC Comments

Use the DSCHeaderComment option to specify the PostScript Document Structure Convention (DSC) comments you want added to the header portion of the generated print stream. You can include as many DSCHeaderComment options as are necessary.

This example shows how, in addition to specifying PostScript commands in the Tray# options, you can also include DSC comments you want added to the header portion of the generated PostScript print stream:

```
< PRTTYPE:PST >
    Device = test.ps
    DownloadFonts = Yes,Enabled
    DSCHeaderComment = %%DocumentMedia:Media1 612 792 75 (White)
(Tray1)
    DSCHeaderComment = %%+ Media2 612 792 75 (White) (Tray2)
    DSCHeaderComment = %%+ Media3 612 792 75 (White) (Tray3)
    DSCHeaderComment = %%+ Media4 612 792 75 (White) (Tray4)
    LanguageLevel = Level2
    Module = PSTW32
    PageNumbers = Yes
    PrinterModel = XDP92C2
    PrintFunc = PSTPrint
    Resolution = 300
    SendColor = No,Enabled
    Tray1 = "<< /MediaType (Tray1)/MediaColor(White) /MediaWeight
75>>
        setpagedevice"
    Tray2 = "<< /MediaType (Tray2)/MediaColor(White) /MediaWeight
75>>
        setpagedevice"
    Tray3 = "<< /MediaType (Tray3)/MediaColor(White) /MediaWeight
75>>
        setpagedevice"
```

```
Tray4 = "<< /MediaType (Tray4)/MediaColor(White) /MediaWeight
75>>
    setpagedevice"
SendOverlays = Yes,Enabled
```

The DSC header comments are added at the beginning of the generated PostScript print stream as shown here:

```
%!PS-Adobe-3.0
%%Title: INSUREDS COPY
%%Creator: FormMaker PostScript Driver
%%CreationDate: Thu Apr 04 17:50:57 2002
%For: INSURED
%%Pages: (atend)
%%DocumentData: Clean7Bit
%%DocumentSuppliedResources: font (atend)
%%DocumentMedia:Media1 612 792 75 (White) (Tray1)
%%+ Media2 612 792 75 (White) (Tray2)
%%+ Media3 612 792 75 (White) (Tray3)
%%+ Media4 612 792 75 (White) (Tray4)
%%EndComments
```

## Stapling Forms

Use the `StapleOn` and `StapleOff` INI options in the PostScript printer control group to control staple support. These options work in a similar fashion to the `Tray#` INI options which let you specify PostScript commands directly as a quoted string or to look up the PostScript commands to use in your printer's PPD file.

By default, the PostScript print driver will use these commands:

```
< PrtType:PST >
...
StapleOn = "<</Staple 3 >> setpagedevice"
StapleOff = "<</Staple 0 >> setpagedevice"
```

You can override PostScript staple commands by providing an alternate PostScript command to use via the `StapleOn` and `StapleOff` options in your PostScript printer control group.

You can issue PostScript staple commands in these forms:

- A quoted string containing the PostScript commands. The quoted string should contain the appropriate PostScript commands for turning stapling on or off. Here is an example:

```
StapleOn = "1 dict dup /Staple 0 put setpagedevice"
```

- A UI keyword from a PPD file. UI keywords represent features that commonly appear in a user interface (UI). They provide the code to invoke a user-selectable feature within the context of a print job, such as the selection of an input tray or manual feed. The entries of UI keywords are surrounded by these structure keywords:

```
*OpenUI/*CloseUI or *JCLOpenUI/*JCLCloseUI
```

Here is an example of an `OpenUI` structure for `XRXFinishing`:

```
*OpenUI *XRXFinishing/Finishing: PickOne
*OrderDependency: 60.0 AnySetup *XRXFinishing
*DefaultXRXFinishing: None
```

```

*XRXFinishing None/None: "
1 dict dup /Staple 0 put setpagedevice"
*End

*XRXFinishing Single_Portrait_Staple/Single Portrait Staple: "
2 dict dup /Staple 3 put
  dup /StapleDetails 2 dict dup /Type 1 put dup /StapleLocation
(SinglePortrait) put
  put setpagedevice"
*End

*XRXFinishing Single_Landscape_Staple/Single Landscape Staple: "
2 dict dup /Staple 3 put
  dup /StapleDetails 2 dict dup /Type 1 put dup /StapleLocation
(SingleLandscape) put
  put setpagedevice"
*End

*XRXFinishing Dual_Portrait_Staple/Dual Portrait Staple: "
2 dict dup /Staple 3 put
  dup /StapleDetails 2 dict dup /Type 1 put dup /StapleLocation
(DualPortrait) put
  put setpagedevice"
*End

*XRXFinishing Dual_Staple/Dual Landscape Staple: "
2 dict dup /Staple 3 put
  dup /StapleDetails 2 dict dup /Type 1 put dup /StapleLocation
(DualLandscape) put
  put setpagedevice"
*End

*?XRXFinishing: "(Unknown) = flush"

*CloseUI: *XRXFinishing

```

A PostScript Printer Definition (PPD) file is supplied with a PostScript printer. This file contains information about printer-specific features. You specify the PPD file you want to use in the PrinterModel option in your PostScript printer control group (just the file name, no drive, path, or file extension). If the PrinterModel option contains the name of a PPD file, this file must be in the directory specified in the DefLib option in the FMRes control group.

This example shows a PostScript printer group that uses a PPD file for a DocuPrint 65 printer (XRD60651.PPD) and specifies StapleOn and StapleOff options using keyword settings from the PPD file:

```

< PrtType:PST >
...
PrinterModel = XRD60651
StapleOn = *XRXFinishing Single_Portrait_Staple/Single Portrait
Staple:
StapleOff = *XRXFinishing None/None:

```

## POSTSCRIPT PRINTER RESOURCES

A number of resources participate in the total printing process. They reside in directories specified in the MasterResource control group.

**Fonts** The system supports PostScript Type 1 fonts. These fonts must reside in the directory specified in the FontLib option in the MasterResource control group when the DownloadFonts option is set to *Yes*.

**Overlays** Use the OVLCOMP utility to create PostScript overlays from FAP files. These overlays must reside in the directory specified in the OverlayPath option in the MasterResource control group when the SendOverlays option is set to *Yes*.

**PostScript Printer Definition (PPD) Files** A PostScript Printer Definition (PPD) file is supplied with a PostScript printer. This file contains information about printer-specific features. If the PrinterModel option contains the name of a PPD file, this file must be in the directory specified in the DefLib option in the FMRES control group.

## USING THE GDI PRINT DRIVER

Skywire Software developed a Graphics Device Interface (GDI) print driver because it provides many opportunities for Windows platform users. For example, by using a GDI driver, you can now fax, since fax drivers can be installed into Windows as a GDI Windows printer driver.

Also, printing using GDI lets you print to printers that do not support any of the printer languages the system supports, such as inkjet printers. To make this driver even more useful, it includes the ability to scale output, which lets you shrink the printed output to the size of the paper.

The advantages of using the Graphics Device Interface (GDI) include:

- Ability to print to any printer attached via a Windows print driver
- Ability to print to any fax machine attached via a Windows print driver
- Ability to scale edge to edge forms to print within the printable area defined by the Windows print driver.

The disadvantages of using the Graphics Device Interface (GDI) include:

- Print quality is often poorer
- Inability to print a mixture of portrait and landscape forms
- Inability to print a mixture of simplex and duplex forms
- Inability to address the same printable area available when using our native print drivers.

---

**NOTE:** If you do not specify the option for sending color to a GDI printer, the system converts color (4-, 8-, or 24-bit) logos into monochrome before sending them to the printer driver. Depending on the bitmap, this conversion from color to monochrome may not yield acceptable results. Be sure to consider your printers capabilities when you are creating logos.

If you elect to send color, including color logos, to a GDI printer that does not support color, the printer driver determines what to do. Some ignore the color commands (printing in black), and some apply a gray-scale adjustment to the output to simulate the color changes. Some GDI printer drivers cannot accept color commands at all. If printing to your Windows-attached printer causes a program fault, or print failure, try turning off the Send Color option via Skywire Software's Print window and sending the output again.

---

### How it works

Most Windows applications print using the Windows GDI application programming interface. Essentially, the application uses commands similar to display commands to send print commands to the operating system. Windows, in turn, sends the commands to the currently installed Windows printer driver.

---

**NOTE:** Printer manufacturers provide Windows printer drivers for their printers. These come on install disks from the manufacturer, or sometimes ship with Windows itself. Other types of drivers (such as fax drivers) can be installed as Windows printer drivers.

---

When a Windows program talks to the operating system using GDI, printer commands are not emitted in the native language of the printer by the program. The program *prints* to Windows, and Windows then *prints* to the installed printer driver.

The printer driver then produces the native printer language commands, including the bitmap font definitions. If the printer driver belongs to a PCL printer, the print driver issues PCL commands, including fonts. In contrast, our PCL printer modules produce the PCL commands and fonts.

When you use Skywire Software's GDI driver, a Windows print driver will use the Windows screen fonts to print the document with its goal being to make the document look like it does on your screen.

---

### Understanding the System

In Documaker implementations, users typically decide what fonts they want to use and then install those fonts on the production printer. Skywire Software applications try to make the screen look like the printed output, not the other way around. Information from the production printer fonts is loaded into the font cross-reference file. The system uses this information to try to represent the printer fonts on screen. The system can also convert production printer fonts into PCL bitmap fonts. The PCL fonts the system produces look like the fonts used on your production printer.

---

GDI print quality, by definition, is based on the fonts used for display. The attributes which describe fonts in the font cross-reference file determine which screen fonts are used. The screen fonts used determine what you see on the screen and how GDI printed output will look.

So, the key to improving GDI print is to improve the fonts used in the display system. Some of this can be improved by making sure the font's character widths and family name is correct. There are INI options for improving the screen font substitutions, if names cannot be matched up.

For the best results, you should use exact matching screen fonts. The system comes with a set of TrueType fonts that match the printer fonts included with the system. Install and use these fonts for best results.

---

**NOTE:** If you are instead working backward from existing production fonts, as is often the case, either an approximation must take place, or you have to find screen fonts built from the printer fonts.

---

### The GDI driver and GenPrint

It is possible to use the GDI driver with the GenPrint program, but it is not recommended. You may experience problems if you try to use GDI features which require user interaction

If you are simply wanting to print directly to a printer, set a port, such as LPT1, to be attached to the print device and route the GenPrint output to that port. You can even send the output directly to a device using the network name, such as:

```
\\FSISRV01\HPPRINTER
```

## GDI PRINTER DRIVER INI OPTIONS

You define the necessary printer options to print using the GDI printer driver. These options specify GDI output and are located in a `PrtType:xxx` control group, such as `PrtType:GDI`. Common GDI options are shown below, with default values in bold:

Option	Values	Description
Device	any file or device name	Not used by the GDI print driver.
Module	GDIW32	The name of the program module which contains the system's GDI print driver. See also the Class option.
PrintFunc	GDIPrint	The name of the program function that is the main entry point into the system's GDI print driver.
Resolution	<b>300</b>	Not used by the GDI print driver.
SendOverlays	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Not used by the GDI print driver.
OverlayPath	any directory	Not used by the GDI print driver.
OverlayExt	any file extension ( <b>OVL</b> )	Not used by the GDI print driver.
PageNumbers	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Set to <i>Yes</i> to enable form or form set page numbering.
SendColor	Yes/ <b>No</b> Enabled/ Disabled/Hidden	Set to <i>Yes</i> to enable color printing. Enabled = Option appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked). Disabled = Option appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked). Hidden = Option does not appear in the Print window
DownloadFonts	<b>Yes</b> / <b>No</b>	Not used by the GDI print driver.
FitToWidth	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Scale pages to fit on the paper. This option will, if necessary, reduce the size of the page. It will not increase it.
TemplateFields	Yes/ <b>No</b>	Set to <i>Yes</i> to test print Xs in variable fields.
SelectRecipients	<b>Yes</b> / <b>No</b> <b>Enabled</b> / Disabled/Hidden	Enabled = Option appears in the Print window and is active (available to be checked). Disabled = Option appears in the Print window but is grayed out (not available to be checked). Hidden = Option does not appear in the Print window.

Option	Values	Description
PrintViewOnly	Yes/No	If set to Yes, the view only images will print. This does not apply to entry only images, which are never printed. Entry only images are usually worksheets. If the image is marked as hidden and view only, it will not print.
PrePrintedPaper	Yes,Disabled	Determines if the check box which lets you print or not print pre-printed objects appears on the Print window. Also determines the default for this check box—checked or unchecked. You must add this option to the INI file if you want the check box to appear on the Print window.  The default for this option includes the checkbox on the Print window and leaves it unchecked. All objects except fields can be designated as pre-printed on the object's Properties window in the Image Editor.
Class	<i>(first three characters of the Module option)</i>	Specifies the printer classification, such as AFP, PCL, XER, PST, or GDI. If you omit this option, the system defaults to the first three letters from the Module option.  Some internal functions expect a certain type of printer. For instance, all 2-up functions require an AFP printer. The internal functions check the Class option to make sure the correct printer is available before continuing.
SuppressDlg	Yes/No	Set to Yes to suppress the Windows Print window.
GDIDevice		Specifies the Windows printer name. Click Start, Settings, Control Panel, Printers to see a list of the printers you can choose from.  If you set the SuppressDlg option to Yes and leave this option blank, the system suppresses the Print window and automatically prints to the default printer.

Include these options in your FSISYS.INI file (for Documaker Workstation) and FAPCOMP.INI files (for Docucreate).

In addition, you can add the following INI setting to automatically select landscape mode when printing any of the specified images:

```
< VBPrOptions >
    Landscape = (list of landscape images)
```

Beside the Landscape option, list the images you want printed landscape. Separate each image with a comma.

Users can override this option at print time.

---

## Understanding the System

If you do not set the *SuppressDlg* option to *Yes*, the Windows Print window appears when you use the print device to spool the job. If you omit the *SuppressDlg* option or set it to *No*, the user can select which Windows print device to spool the output through. By setting this option to *Yes*, the Windows Print window (not the system's Printer window which normally appears first), will be automatically completed for the user.

If you set the *SuppressDlg* option to *Yes*, the default Windows printer is used unless the *GDIDevice* option specifies a printer. You can use the *GDIDevice* option to name a specific Windows print device for spooling the raw output. The name you specify must match one of the installed printers. You can see these printer names by going to the Control Panel and clicking the Printers icon.

If you misspell the printer name or specify one not installed for the *GDIDevice* option, the system will send the output to the default printer device or you will get an error and printing will stop. On Windows, an incorrect setting sends the raw output to spool to the default printer device.

Don't confuse the *SuppressDlg* option with the *SuppressDialog* option in the Printer control group in the FSISYS.INI file. The *SuppressDialog* option suppresses the system's internal Printer Selection window—the one that names which *PrtType:XXX* group from the INI file you wish to use. The *SuppressDlg* option suppresses the operating system's (Windows 32-bit) Printer Selection window.

---

## AVOIDING PROBLEMS WITH FAX DRIVERS

Use the *FullSupport* option to prevent problems with FAX drivers which can occur when you are printing from Documaker Workstation or PPS.

The GDI driver first looks for this INI option in the control group whose name reflects the Windows print driver, such as *HP LaserJet 4050 Series PS*.

If the *FullSupport* option is set to *Yes*, the GDI driver assumes the Windows print driver contains full print support and can handle form sets with mixed simplex and duplex forms (some FAX drivers crash when presented these kinds of forms).

Here is an example:

```
< HP LaserJet 4050 Series PS >  
FullSupport = Yes
```

If not found there, the GDI driver looks for the *FullSupport* option in the control group for the printer type, such as *PrtType:GDI*. If you place the *FullSupport* option in the *PrtType:GDI* control group, it serves as a default for all GDI printers. Putting the option in for specific devices overrides this default.

## USING PASS-THROUGH PRINTING

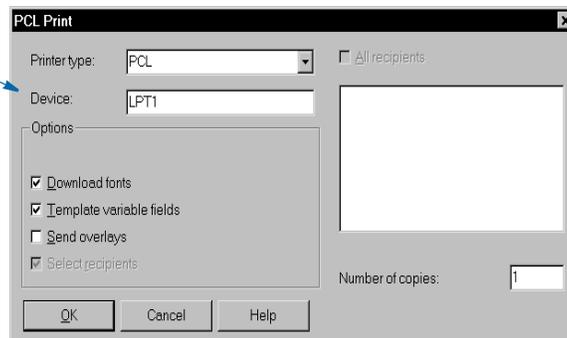
There are some problems which occur when you print to LPT1 on Windows platforms. One problem occurs if you run Netware Client 32 for Windows 95. Although you can open LPT1 from the system, you may receive errors when printing large amounts of data. Downloading PCL fonts usually causes this.

Another problem occurs when a print queue adds additional printer commands to system-created print jobs. This causes invalid output to be sent to the printer. The HP 5si print driver can cause this problem. Another problem affects other software which redirects printers and expects all print output to use the Windows GDI mechanism.

Skywire Software provides a GDI print driver that uses Windows-native calls for printing, which is how most applications print under Windows. However, the Windows system print drivers have problems handling some system printing requirements, such as enhanced font selection, the ability to combine duplexing with landscape forms, and so on.

To solve these problems, Skywire Software print drivers can produce the commands for controlling the printer while still using an installed Windows printer device. To use this feature, leave the Device field blank on the Print window, where you select the printer driver you want to use.

Leave this field blank



Normally, the Device field contains the name of the device (LPT1) or the name of the file (D:\OUTPUT.PCL) the system should print to. When you leave this field blank, you tell the print driver you want to print through an installed printer device. After you click Ok, the Windows Print window appears so you can select which printer device to send the print job.

This printer device must be associated with a printer supported by the system's print driver. If you have a printer device available that is associated with a printer not supported by the system's print driver, the results are unpredictable. For example, if you select PCL as the system printer type (print driver), but choose a printer device associated with an AFP printer, the AFP printer will not understand the PCL output and will print garbage.

Unlike the GDI driver, Skywire Software print drivers control the printed output. The Windows Print window is the standard print window provided by Windows. Skywire Software applications cannot control or change this window. In addition, since Skywire Software's print driver is controlling the printer, most of the options on the Windows Print window will be ignored. The only options you can use are:

- Select a printer device.
- Select the Cancel button and the print process is canceled.
- Check the Print to File field and the system will print the document to the file you specify.

---

**NOTE:** Not all Windows print drivers support pass-through printing. If you receive an error while printing in this manner, you are probably using a Windows print driver that does not support pass-through printing.

---

## CREATING PDF FILES

Adobe Systems created the Portable Document Format (PDF). It is the native file format of the Adobe Acrobat family of products. The original PDF file format was version 1.0.

The system produces PDF files which adhere to PDF file format version 1.3 (or version 1.4 if 128-bit encryption is used). This version supports compression and page-at-a-time downloading. With page-at-a-time downloading (byte-serving), a web server sends only the requested page of information to the user, not the entire PDF document.

---

**NOTE:** When you use Acrobat Reader to view a PDF document, you do not have to do anything to make it download a page at a time. Acrobat Reader and the web server handle this for you.

If you want the entire PDF document to continue downloading in the background while you view the first page in Acrobat Reader, choose File, General Preferences and select the Allow Background Download of Entire File option.

---

For additional information about creating PDF files with Skywire Software applications, please refer to the following documents:

For	See
Docupresentation	Please see the <a href="#">Internet Document Server User Guide</a> for more information on PDF support.
Documaker Server (z/OS)	Please see the additional configuration steps in the <a href="#">Documaker Server Installation Guide</a> .
For all other products and for general PDF information	Please see <a href="#">Using the PDF Print Driver</a> .

## CREATING RTF FILES

The RTF print driver lets you create a medium-fidelity export of the contents of a form set in a format you view or edit with most popular word processors. The email print driver uses this capability to email form sets. See [Emailing a Print File on page 284](#) for more information.

To use the RTF print driver, you need these INI settings:

```
< Printers >
  PrtType      = RTF
< PrtType:RTF >
  Module       = RTFW32
  PrintFunc    = RTFPrint
```

You will also need to specify an output device name on the Print window.

---

**NOTE:** The RTF print driver does not support logos (bitmaps), charts, or bar codes.

---

### Generating separate files

You can generate separate files for each transaction when you choose RTF (or PDF) from WIP or batch print.

The name of the files will have a rolling number appended to the end of the name that starts the process and is filled in on the Print window. This is automatically handled and you do not have to set INI options to get the WIP or batch print to work as long as your PrtType name is PrtType:RTF.

There are several INI options you can use to override the naming process and also name other print drivers that require this unique handling.

```
< BatchPrint >
  NoBatchSupport = RTF
  PreLoadRequired= RTF
```

These are the default settings and cannot be overridden. However, you can specify other PrtType print driver definitions you want to fall into these same categories.

Option	Description
NoBatchSupport	Indicates that the named PrtType items, separated by semicolon, do not really support batch transactions and require special handling.
PreLoadRequired	Lets you specify all the PrtType items, separated by semicolon, that should be forced to load the form set prior to the starting print. Most print drivers don't require this special requirement, but some, such as PDF do.

Also, you can name PrtType specific items under the BatchPrint control group to override the normal Device naming option. Here is an example:

```
< BatchPrint >
  PDF = ~HEXTIME .PDF
  RTF = ~HEXTIME --KeyID .RTF
```

Any batch print sent to PrtType:PDF (picking PDF on the Print window) will override the name and store the current hexadecimal date and time, such as BCF09CA4.PDF, which is an eight-character name, as the name of each transaction's output.

Also, you can combine INI built-in calls as shown in the RTF example. Here any WIP or batch print sent to RTF will name the files using the HEXTIME and the KeyID from the WIP transaction. This will result in names similar to this: BCF099A4-123456.RTF

Note that you must leave a space after the built-in INI function name for it to work properly. That space will not appear in the resulting output name.

#### Adding or removing frames

By default, the RTF print driver uses frames to replicate the look of a document. If you do not want the frames, which print as boxes around the various document objects, to appear, set the WriteFrames option to No.

```
< PrtType:RTF >  
WriteFrames =
```

For instance, you can use the RTF driver to print form sets to an RTF file. Once the RTF file is created, you can then open it in a word processor. To avoid having frames in the file, you would set this option to No.

#### Creating form fields

You can use the RTF print driver to convert variable fields into RTF form fields. For example, a variable address field is converted into an RTF form field. The format of the field is retained. If, for example, the address field contained all uppercase characters, this would be reflected in the corresponding RTF form field.

To print form fields, include this INI option:

```
< PrtType:RTF >  
AllowInput = Yes
```

---

**NOTE:** This works with print types RTF and RTF\_NoFrame.

---

You may also need to include the WordTimeFormats and WordDateFormats control groups. You can use these control groups in case you are using a time or date format that has no equivalent in Word. The following groups and options let you map a Documaker format to a Word format.

```
< WordTimeFormats >  
hh:mm XM =  
< WordDateFormats >  
bD/bM/YY =
```

To the left of the equals sign, you list the Documaker format used on the image. To the right, you list the Word format you want to use.

## Setting margins

The RTF print driver produces margins by calculating what is required and putting the result in the RTF output. You can, however, set minimum required margins using the RTF print type control group.

You must set the minimum required margins in FAP units (2400 dots per inch). Here are the default settings:

```
< PrtType:RTF >
  MinTopMargin    = 400
  MinLeftMargin   = 600
  MinRightMargin  = 600
  MinBottomMargin= 400
```

Margin values specified in the INI file override those set in the FAP file if the page margins in the FAP file are smaller.

---

**NOTE:** The changes in the margins are noticeable when you open the document in an application such as Microsoft Word. You will see the left and right margins shifting based on what you specified in the INI file. The top and bottom margins (seen on the left side of the page) will also vary based on what you specified in the INI file.

---

## Removing the contents of headers and footers

Use these options to remove the contents, including graphics and text, from headers and footers when creating RTF files:

```
< PrtType:RTF >
  EmptyFooters = Yes
  EmptyHeaders = Yes
```

Option	Description
EmptyHeaders	Enter Yes to remove the contents from any headers in the file. This includes both text and graphics. The default is No.
EmptyFooters	Enter Yes to remove the contents from any footers in the file. This includes both text and graphics. The default is No.

## EMAILING A PRINT FILE

The system lets you set up an RTF (Rich Text Format) print driver which lets you create a print-ready file that you can email to another user. The recipients can immediately print the file.

---

**NOTE:** If you have the Internet Document Server, you can also use the included PDF print driver to create print-ready files you can email.

---

You install the email print driver (EPTLIB) by setting up INI options so the system will know how to use the driver. Since EPTLIB is essentially a *wrapper* for a real print driver, the INI options must also include a reference to the actual print driver the system will use to create the print-ready file, such as the PDFLIB or PCLLIB. There are also INI options for the email processing, in addition to the regular email INI options.

### Creating EPTLIB print files for Documaker Workstation

The INI options for EPTLIB are as follows:

```
< Printers >
  PrtType = EPT
```

This option lets the system know that EPTLIB is a print driver so it will include it on the Print window when you print from Documaker Workstation.

You can use the PrtType:EPT control group to further customize the email print driver. For instance, you can add subject and message information and use the email address book when printing from Documaker Workstation using the EPT print driver. This lets you select print, choose form set (form or page), then select the EPT print type.

The system would then display the email address book. You select the recipients and a window appears into which you can enter the subject and message text. You then choose to send or cancel the message.

Here is an example of the INI options you would set up:

```
< PrtType:EPT >
  Device      =
  Filename    = EPTFILE.RTF
  InitFunc    = EPTInit
  KeepFile    = No
  Message     = Please respond ASAP
  Module      = EPTW32
  PrintFunc   = EPTPrint
  PrtType     = RTF
  RecipFunc   = CSTSetMailRecipgvm
  RecipMod    = CSTW32
  Recipient   =
  Subject     = New Application
  TermFunc    = EPTTerm
  KeepFile    = No
```

## Creating EPTLIB print files for Documaker Server

Set up your INI options as shown here:

```
< Printer >
  PrtType = EPT
< PrtType:EPT >
  Module = EPTW32
  PrintFunc = EPTPrint
  InitFunc = EPTInit
  TermFunc = EPTTerm
```

These options tell the system which functions to call to execute the printing process.

```
PrtType = RTF
```

This tells the EPTLIB print driver which real print driver to use to create the print-ready file. If omitted, it defaults to the RTF print driver (Rich Text Format).

```
FileName = EPTFILE.RTF
```

This option gives the name of the output file to create. This is only used if the Device Name field is empty in the GUI print window (the batch file name is used for GenPrint). If the device name is empty and the FileName option is omitted, a temporary file name is used. Use a file name with an extension that matches the print driver type, such as *RTF*. For GenPrint, the file name is the name of the print batch.

```
KeepFile = No
```

The KeepFile option tells EPTLIB whether or not to keep the output file after it has been emailed. The default is No.

```
< Print >
  CallbackFunc = MultiFilePrint
  MultiFileLog = data\rtflog.dat
```

These options tell the system to divide large RTF files into smaller RTF files. If you omit these options, you will be able to view the first transaction, but not the following ones.

The RTFLOG.DAT file stores the information that defines which RTF file contains which transaction for which batch.

```
Recipient = Email Recipient
Subject = File from Documaker User
Message = PDF file attached
```

Use these INI options to set mail settings for EPTLIB. The Subject and Message options specify the Subject line and Message text for the email message. For the Recipient option, you can either include the actual email recipient or you can specify a field name where the system can go to look up the recipient. Here are some examples:

```
Recipient = Stephen Petersen; send to internal email recipient
Recipient = spetersen@skywire.com; send to Internet email address
Recipient = Fieldname:ADDRESS2; use text in ADDRESS2 field
```

If the email system cannot resolve recipients, or if you leave the Recipient option blank, an email address window appears so you can select an email address from the address book. The field lookup is a feature of the default recipient function in EPTLIB, which you can replace using these INI options:

```
RecipMod = CSTW32
RecipFunc = CSTSetMailRecip
```

These options tell the system which module and function to use to determine the recipient. Omit these options and the system uses EPTLIB's default recipient function.

The `CSTSetMailRecip` function displays a window which shows the subject and message text and lets you edit this text. This window also lets you provide the email recipient for Documaker Workstation. Documaker Server lets you use these functions to set up recipients:

```
RecipMod = CUSW32
RecipFunc = CUSSetMailRecip
```

or

```
RecipFunc = CUSSetMailRecipGVM
```

Function	Description
<code>CUSSetMailRecip</code>	This function finds the print recipient and looks up the recipient in the <code>RECIP_MAIL</code> control group to get the email address of the recipient. Here is an example:  <pre>&lt; RECIP_MAIL &gt; AGENT = myagent@sampco.com COMPANY = support@sampco.com</pre>
<code>CUSSetMailRecipGVM</code>	This function finds the recipient in a global variable, the name of which is defined in this INI option:  <pre>&lt; PrtType:EPT &gt; Recipient = EAddress</pre> <p>Instead of using <code>EAddress</code> as the recipient name, the system uses it as the variable name to look up to find the recipient name. This global variable can have any name.</p>

The recipient functions have the following syntax:

```
DWORD _VMMAPI EPTDefSetRecipient(VMMHANDLE objectH,
                                char FAR * recip,
                                size_t len);
```

Parameter	Description
<code>objectH</code>	The object being printed (form set, form, or page)
<code>recip</code>	The recipient buffer
<code>len</code>	Length of the buffer, currently 80 characters

The return value should be `SUCCESS` or `FAILURE`. If `FAILURE`, then the message is not sent and `FAILURE` is returned from `EPTPrint`. To set the recipient function without INI options, use the `EPTSetRecipFunc` function:

```
EPTRECIPIFUNC _VMMAPI EPTSetRecipFunc(EPTRECIPIFUNC newfunc);
```

Call it with the address of the recipient function:

```
EPTSetRecipFunc(func);
```

The `EPTSetRecipFunc` function returns the previous installed function, which can be used to set it back.

## Creating PDF print files

If you are creating PDF files, use these INI options:

```
< Printers >
  PrtType      = PDF
< PrtType:PDF >
  Module       = PDFW32
  PrintFunc    = PDFPrint
```

Keep in mind that when the PDF driver is called from the EPT driver, the current printer control group remains PrtType:EPT, not PrtType:PDF. Therefore, unless you add PDF-specific options, the system uses the INI settings it finds for PrtType:EPT.

Many print options, such as the DownloadFonts option, are set before the system calls EPT, which then redirects the print to another driver. So, to have the system use the correct PDF options, set your PrtType:EPT control group to look like this:

```
< PrtType:EPT >
  PrtType      = PDF
  DownloadFonts = [PrtType:PDF] DownloadFonts =
  SendColor    = [PrtType:PDF] SendColor =
```

This way, if you change the options in the PrtType:PDF control group, those changes are automatically picked up in the PrtType:EPT control group.

## Overriding attached files

Keep in mind that the EPT (email print) driver can use the FSRSetFileAttachment API. This lets you create custom hooks to override the attached file and handle situations where you need to remove the attached file but still send the message.

## Using email aliases

Multiple recipient addresses are not supported with the EPT PrtType. If you need to send an email to, for instance, all agents, use an Email Application Server, such as Microsoft Exchange (MailType = MSM) or ccMail (MailType = CCM). With these products you can define an alias to represent a group of email addresses. You cannot set the MailType option to SMTP unless your SMTP server understands aliases.

Email Application Servers usually run on top of an SMTP service and let you manage email messaging more efficiently. When using an application such as Exchange, you can create a group (such as *TestGroup*) and you can specify the group name when you specify the Recipient option.

For example, if you set the MailType option to MSM in the Mail control group and you have this defined for the Recipient option:

```
< PrtType:EPT >
  Recipient = TestGroup
```

This option is sent to the Exchange server which converts the alias (*TestGroup*) into its SMTP equivalent value, such as a list of email address similar to this:

```
hbean@skywire.com;jgaramond@skywire.com;tbottle@skywire.com...
```

The result is a message sent to the entire group represented by *TestGroup*.

---

**NOTE:** To use this feature, you must set up email-related INI options. These options are discussed in the [Documaker Workstation Supervisor Guide](#).

---

## CHOOSING THE PAPER SIZE

The system supports a variety of paper sizes including US and international sizes. The following tables show the paper sizes you can choose from:

- [US Standard Sizes on page 289](#)
- [ISO Sizes on page 290](#)
- [Japanese Standard Sizes on page 293](#)

You can also find the following related information in this topic:

- [Printer Support for Paper Sizes on page 294](#)
- [Paper Sizes for AFP Printers on page 298](#)

---

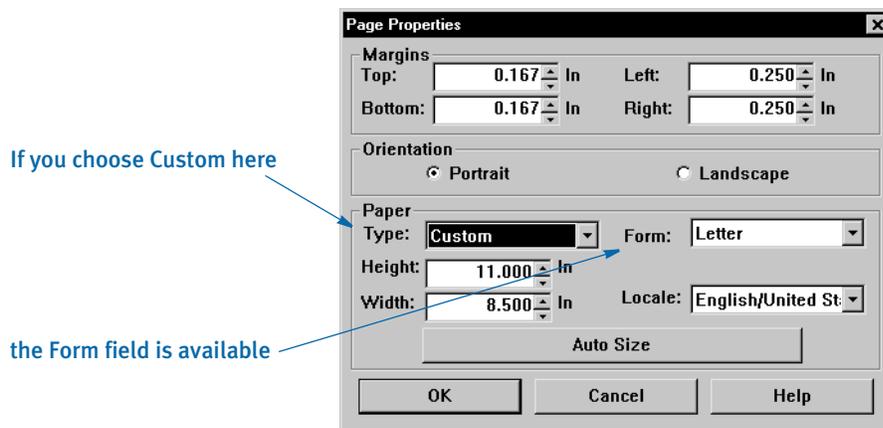
**NOTE:** Please note that the NA file stores the actual section height and width for custom sized images. This information is stored in the SIZE entry in the NAFILE.DAT file. Here is an example:

```
\NA=q1snam, LN=1, DUP=LB, SIZE=3360x18600, TRAY=U, X=600, Y=600 . . .
```

The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch).

---

The Page Properties window in Image Editor (choose Format, Page Properties) includes a field called Form. This field is available when you set the paper type to Custom.



If you choose Custom here

the Form field is available

The Form field helps identify what type of paper to use when you print the custom image. For example, if the dimensions of the custom image are 12x14, the system needs to know what size paper to use when you do a test print of the image.

The system defaults to the size of paper that will contain the custom image, but you must tell it what paper is installed on your printer. For images small enough to fit on letter size paper, the system defaults to letter.

---

**NOTE:** This affects image printing from Image Editor and has no effect on Form Set Manager or Form (FOR) definitions.

---

## US STANDARD SIZES

These paper sizes are commonly used in the United States and Canada. The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch), millimeters, and inches. The inch dimensions are approximate.

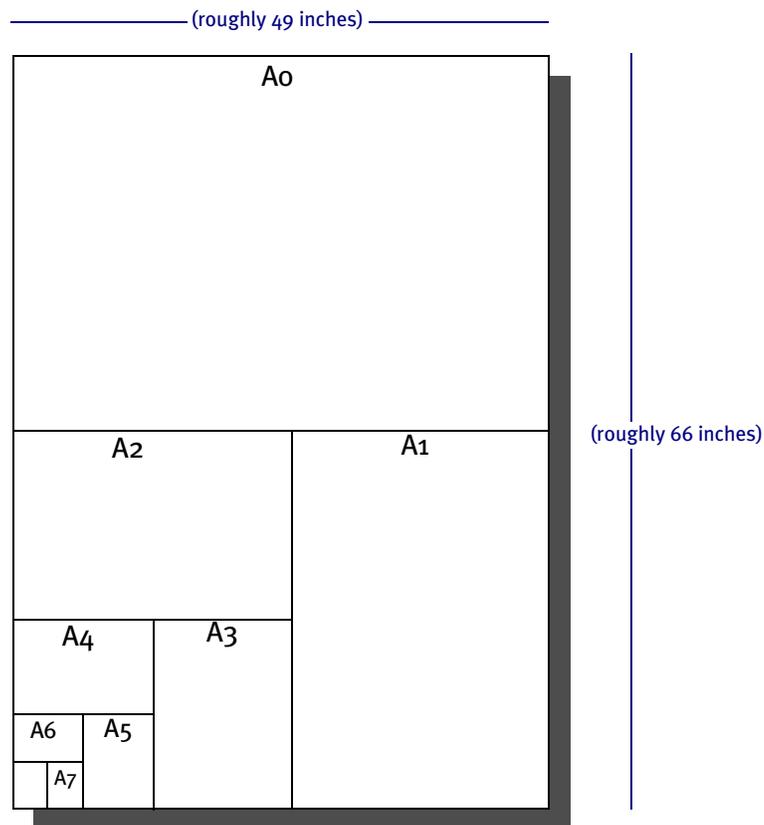
Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
US letter	0	20400 x 26400	216 x 279	8½ x 11
US legal	1	20400 x 33600	216 x 356	8½ x 14
US executive	3	17400 x 25200	190 x 254	7¼ 10½
US ledger	4	40800 x 26400	432 x 279	17 x 11
US tabloid	5	26400 x 40800	279 x 432	11 x 17
US statement	6	13200 x 20400	140 x 216	5½ x 8½
US folio	7	20400 x 31200	216 x 330	8½ x 13
US fanfold	8	35700 x 26400	378 x 279	14⅞ x 11
Custom	98	any x any	any x any	any x any

## ISO SIZES

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) paper sizes, which are based on the earlier Deutsche Industrie Norm (DIN) sizes, are used throughout the world except in Canada, the United States, and Japan. There are three main series of paper sizes: A, B, and C.

### ISO A sizes

The A series of sizes are typically used for correspondence, books, brochures, and other printed materials. This diagram shows most of the various A sizes. The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch), millimeters, and inches. The inch dimensions are approximate.



Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
ISO A0	20	79464 x 112345	841 x 1189	33 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 46 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO A1	21	56125 x 79464	594 x 841	23 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 33 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO A2	22	39685 x 56125	420 x 594	16 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 23 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO A3	23	28063 x 39685	297 x 420	11 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 16 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>

Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
ISO A4	2	19842 x 28063	210 x 297	8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 11 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO A5	25	13984 x 19842	148 x 210	5 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO A6	26	9921 x 13984	105 x 148	4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 5 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO A7	27	6992 x 9921	74 x 105	2 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO A8	28	4913 x 6992	52 x 74	2 x 2 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO A9	29	3496 x 4913	37 x 52	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 2
ISO A10	30	2457 x 3496	26 x 37	1 x 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
ISO 2A	32	112345 x 158927	1189 x 1682	46 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 66 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO 4A	34	158927 x 224690	1682 x 2378	66 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 93 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>

ISO B sizes

The B series of sizes are designed primarily for posters, wall charts, and similar items where the difference between each A size represents too large a jump. The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch), millimeters, and inches. The inch dimensions are approximate.

Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
ISO B0	40	94487 x 133605	1000 x 1414	39 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 55 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B1	41	66802 x 94487	707 x 1000	27 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 39 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B2	42	47244 x 66802	500 x 707	19 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 27 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B3	43	33354 x 47244	353 x 500	13 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 19 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B4	44	23622 x 33354	250 x 353	9 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 13 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B5	45	16630 x 23622	176 x 250	7 x 9 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO B6	46	11811 x 16630	125 x 176	5 x 7
ISO B7	47	8315 x 11811	88 x 125	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 5
ISO B8	48	5858 x 8315	62 x 88	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
ISO B9	49	4157 x 5858	44 x 62	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
ISO B10	50	2929 x 4157	31 x 44	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>

Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
ISO 2B	52	133605 x 188974	1414 x 2000	55 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 78 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO 4B	54	188974 x 267209	2000 x 2828	78 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 111 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>

**ISO C sizes** The C series of sizes are designed for making envelopes and folders to take the A series of sizes. The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch), millimeters, and inches. The inch dimensions are approximate.

Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
ISO Co	60	86645 x 122550	917 x 1297	36 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 51
ISO C1	61	61228 x 86645	648 x 917	25 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 36
ISO C2	62	43275 x 61228	458 x 648	18 x 25 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
ISO C3	63	30614 x 43275	324 x 458	12 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 18
ISO C4	64	21638 x 30614	229 x 324	9 x 12 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO C5	65	15307 x 21638	162 x 229	6 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 9
ISO C6	66	10772 x 15307	114 x 162	4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 6 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO C7	67	7653 x 10772	81 x 114	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
ISO C8	68	5386 x 7653	57 x 81	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO C9	69	3779 x 5386	40 x 57	1 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
ISO C10	70	2646 x 3779	28 x 40	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> x 1 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
ISO DL	71	10394 x 20787	110 x 220	4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>3</sub> x 8 <sup>2</sup> / <sub>3</sub>

The DL size is for a sheet 1/3 of the A4 size. This is the most common size of envelope.

## JAPANESE STANDARD SIZES

Japan has its own standard paper sizes, called the Japan Industrial Standard (JIS). The JIS A series is identical in size to the ISO A series. The JIS B series, however, does not match the ISO B series. There is no equivalent to the ISO C series. This table shows the JIS paper sizes. The height and width are in FAP units (2400 per inch), millimeters, and inches. The inch dimensions are approximate.

Name	Code	Width x Height		
		FAP units	Millimeters	Inches (approximate)
JIS B0	80	97322 x 137573	1030 x 1456	40½ x 57¼
JIS B1	81	68787 x 97322	728 x 1030	28¾ x 40½
JIS B2	82	48661 x 68787	515 x 728	20¼ x 28¾
JIS B3	83	34393 x 48661	364 x 515	14¼ x 20¼
JIS B4	84	24283 x 34393	257 x 364	10⅞ x 14¼
JIS B5	85	17197 x 24283	182 x 257	7¼ x 10⅞
JIS B6	86	12094 x 17197	128 x 182	5 x 7¼
JIS B7	87	8598 x 12094	91 x 128	3½ x 5
JIS B8	88	6047 x 8598	64 x 91	2½ x 3½
JIS B	89	4252 x 6047	45 x 64	1¾ x 2½
JIS B10	90	3024 x 4252	32 x 45	1¼ x 1¾

## PRINTER SUPPORT FOR PAPER SIZES

This table outlines the various paper sizes supported by the different print drivers. The table includes information for the PDF, RTF, HTML, Metacode, PCL 5, PCL 6, GDI, PostScript, and AFP print drivers. The PDF, RTF, HTML, and Metacode print drivers support all paper sizes.

Paper size	PDF, RTF, HTML, and Metacode	PXL <sup>1</sup>	PCL <sup>2</sup>	GDI <sup>2</sup>	PST <sup>3</sup>	AFP <sup>4</sup>
US letter	X	X	X	X	X	X
US Legal	X	X	X	X	X	X
US executive	X	X	X	X	X	X
US ledger	X	X	X	X	X	X
US tabloid	X	Y	US letter	X	X	X
US statement	X	JIS B5	US executive	X	X	X
US folio	X	US legal	US legal	X	X	X
US fanfold	X	US ledger	US ledger	X	X	X
ISO 4A	X	Y	US letter	US letter	US letter	C
ISO 2A	X	Y	US letter	US letter	US letter	C
ISO A0	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO A1	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO A2	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO A3	X	X	X	X	X	X

Sizes marked with an *X* are fully supported by the corresponding driver.

Sizes marked with a *Y* are supported by sending the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

Sizes that refer to another size substitute the referred size when *paper size matching* is turned on. If paper size matching is not turned on, the behavior depends upon the specific driver. To turn on paper size matching, use this INI option:

```
< PrtType:XXX >
    PaperSizeMatching = Yes
```

<sup>1</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, the PCL 6 (PXL) driver sends the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

<sup>2</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, these drivers substitute US letter.

<sup>3</sup> This driver does not use paper size matching. US letter is substituted for the unsupported paper sizes

<sup>4</sup> Sizes marked with a *C* are supported, but are commented out of the AFP formdef source file called F1FMMST.DAT, See [Paper Sizes for AFP Printers on page 298](#) for more information.

Paper size	PDF, RTF, HTML, and Metacode	PXL <sup>1</sup>	PCL <sup>2</sup>	GDI <sup>2</sup>	PST <sup>3</sup>	AFP <sup>4</sup>
ISO A4	X	X	X	X	X	X
ISO A5	X	X	X	X	X	X
ISO A6	X	X	X	X	X	X
ISO A7	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO A8	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO A9	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO A10	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO 4B	X	Y	US letter	US letter	US letter	C
ISO 2B	X	Y	US letter	US letter	US letter	C
ISO B0	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO B1	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO B2	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO B3	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO B4	X	JIS B4	US ledger	X	X	X
ISO B5	X	JIS B5	X	X	X	X
ISO B6	X	JIS B6	ISO C5	X	X	X
ISO B7	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO B8	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C

Sizes marked with an X are fully supported by the corresponding driver.

Sizes marked with a Y are supported by sending the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

Sizes that refer to another size substitute the referred size when *paper size matching* is turned on. If paper size matching is not turned on, the behavior depends upon the specific driver. To turn on paper size matching, use this INI option:

```
< PrtType:XXX >
    PaperSizeMatching = Yes
```

<sup>1</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, the PCL 6 (PXL) driver sends the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

<sup>2</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, these drivers substitute US letter.

<sup>3</sup> This driver does not use paper size matching. US letter is substituted for the unsupported paper sizes

<sup>4</sup> Sizes marked with a C are supported, but are commented out of the AFP formdef source file called F1FMMST.DAT, See [Paper Sizes for AFP Printers on page 298](#) for more information.

Paper size	PDF, RTF, HTML, and Metacode	PXL <sup>1</sup>	PCL <sup>2</sup>	GDI <sup>2</sup>	PST <sup>3</sup>	AFP <sup>4</sup>
ISO B9	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO B10	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO Co	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO C1	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO C2	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
ISO C3	X	Y	US letter	X	X	C
ISO C4	X	JIS B4	US ledger	X	X	C
ISO C5	X	X	X	X	X	C
ISO C6	X	JIS B6	ISO C5	X	X	C
ISO C7	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
ISO C8	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	US letter	C
ISO C9	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	US letter	C
ISO C10	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	US letter	C
ISO DL	X	X	X	X	X	X
JIS B0	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
JIS B1	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
JIS B2	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C
JIS B3	X	Y	US letter	US letter	X	C

Sizes marked with an X are fully supported by the corresponding driver.

Sizes marked with a Y are supported by sending the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

Sizes that refer to another size substitute the referred size when *paper size matching* is turned on. If paper size matching is not turned on, the behavior depends upon the specific driver. To turn on paper size matching, use this INI option:

```
< PrtType:XXX >
    PaperSizeMatching = Yes
```

<sup>1</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, the PCL 6 (PXL) driver sends the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

<sup>2</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, these drivers substitute US letter.

<sup>3</sup> This driver does not use paper size matching. US letter is substituted for the unsupported paper sizes

<sup>4</sup> Sizes marked with a C are supported, but are commented out of the AFP formdef source file called F1FMMST.DAT, See [Paper Sizes for AFP Printers on page 298](#) for more information.

Paper size	PDF, RTF, HTML, and Metacode	PXL <sup>1</sup>	PCL <sup>2</sup>	GDI <sup>2</sup>	PST <sup>3</sup>	AFP <sup>4</sup>
JIS B4	X	X	X	US fanfold	X	X
JIS B5	X	X	X	X	X	X
JIS B6	X	X	X	X	X	X
JIS B7	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
JIS B8	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
JIS B9	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C
JIS B10	X	ISO A6	ISO C5	ISO A6	X	C

Sizes marked with an X are fully supported by the corresponding driver.

Sizes marked with a Y are supported by sending the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

Sizes that refer to another size substitute the referred size when *paper size matching* is turned on. If paper size matching is not turned on, the behavior depends upon the specific driver. To turn on paper size matching, use this INI option:

```
< PrtType:XXX >
    PaperSizeMatching = Yes
```

<sup>1</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, the PCL 6 (PXL) driver sends the paper dimensions in millimeters to the printer.

<sup>2</sup> When paper size matching is not turned on, these drivers substitute US letter.

<sup>3</sup> This driver does not use paper size matching. US letter is substituted for the unsupported paper sizes

<sup>4</sup> Sizes marked with a C are supported, but are commented out of the AFP formdef source file called F1FMMST.DAT, See [Paper Sizes for AFP Printers on page 298](#) for more information.

## PAPER SIZES FOR AFP PRINTERS

The AFP formdef source file (F1FMMST.DAT) contains support for the following paper sizes, but since this file contains support for so many paper sizes, its size could affect printer performance. To limit the effect, some of the paper sizes are commented out, as shown in this table:

Size	Commented out?
Letter	No
Legal	No
Executive	No
Ledger	Yes
Tabloid	Yes
Statement	Yes
Folio	Yes
Fanfold	Yes
ISO A3	Yes
ISO A4	No
ISO A5	Yes
ISO A6	Yes
ISO B4	Yes
ISO B5	Yes
ISO B6	Yes
ISO DL	Yes
JIS B4	Yes
JIS B5	Yes
JIS B6	Yes

---

**NOTE:** The F1FMMST.DAT and F1FMMST.FDF files can be found in the FMRES master resource library (MRL).

---

The commented source line begins with an asterisk (\*). To add support for another paper size, you open the F1FMMST.DAT file and delete the asterisk at the beginning of each line that references the paper size you want to add.

Because the AFP formdef is composed on medium map names that specify page orientation, paper size, tray selection, and duplex settings, there are 31 groups of medium map settings. Each of these groups contains the 57 possible paper sizes. So, for each paper size you add, there are 31 sources lines you must *uncomment* to fully support a paper size for all orientations, trays, and duplex settings.

After you uncomment the lines that reference the paper size you want to add, run the AFPFMDEF utility to rebuild your AFP formdef file with the new information. For more information on this utility, see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

## CREATING PRINT STREAMS FOR DOCUSAVE

Docusave can archive AFP, Metacode, and PCL print streams that are in a Docusave-compatible format and contain special records used to index the archive.

For AFP and Metacode, you use the `OutMode` option in the `PrtType:AFP` or `XER` control group to tell the GenPrint program to create a Metacode or AFP print stream in a Docusave-compatible record format. You can choose between these Docusave-compatible formats: `JES2` and `MRG4`.

For PCL, the process is similar but there is not `OutMode` option to set. You include comment records in the print streams to index the archive. You can use a DAL script to add those comment records.

For details, see...

- [Archiving AFP Print Streams on page 300](#)
- [Archiving Metacode Print Streams on page 301](#)
- [Archiving PCL Print Streams on page 302](#)

## ARCHIVING AFP PRINT STREAMS

Set the `OutMode` option to `MRG4` to produce a print stream for Docusave from non-MVS platforms.

Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:AFP >  
  OutMode = MRG4
```

When you set the `OutMode` option to `MRG4`, the GenPrint program creates print stream records with a 4-byte sequence that precedes them. This sequence defines the record lengths. Records are grouped into blocks with one or more records in each block. Both records and blocks have a 4-byte sequence that precedes them, defining their length.

These length indicators are formed by taking the high-order byte of length followed by the low-order byte of length followed by two bytes of zeros.

The maximum number that can be displayed is a 16-bit quantity. The value in each includes the length of the structure itself. A one-byte data record in its own block would have five for the record length and nine for the block length. This table shows what a 3-byte record would look like:

Byte offset	Value (Hex)	Meaning
0	00	Block length high-order
1	0B	Block length low-order
2	00	Always 0
3	00	Always 0
4	00	Record length high-order
5	07	Record length low-order
6	00	Always 0

Byte offset	Value (Hex)	Meaning
7	00	Always 0
8	31	'1'
9	32	'2'
10	33	'3'

In addition to using the `OutMode` option, you must include comment records in the print streams to index the archive. You can use a DAL script to add comment records into the print stream. Use the `DocusaveScript` option in the `PrtType:AFP` control group to have the system execute a DAL script at the times when Docusave comments can be added to the print streams.

To add Docusave comments to an AFP print stream, you must add the `DocusaveScript` option and the name of a DAL script to execute. The DAL script should call the `AddDocusaveComment` function to add a string as a Docusave comment record. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:AFP >
  DocusaveScript = Docusave.DAL
  OutMode = MRG4
```

## ARCHIVING METACODE PRINT STREAMS

Set the `OutMode` option to `JES2` to produce print streams under `MVS` or `OS/390`. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  OutMode = JES2
```

When you set the `OutMode` option to `JES2`, the `GenPrint` program creates print stream records that are native to a mainframe environment.

Also include comment records in the print streams to index the archive. You can use a DAL script to add comment records into the print stream. Use the `DocusaveScript` option in the `PrtType:XER` control group to have the system execute a DAL script at the times when Docusave comments can be added to the print streams.

To add Docusave comments to a Metacode AFP print stream, add the `DocusaveScript` option and the name of a DAL script to execute. The DAL script should call the `AddDocusaveComment` function to add a string as a Docusave comment record. Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:XER >
  DocusaveScript = Docusave.DAL
  OutMode = JES2
```

## ARCHIVING PCL PRINT STREAMS

**NOTE:** Docusave is adding support for archiving PCL 5 print streams. In anticipation of Docusave's PCL archive capability, Documaker version 10.2 and later can produce PCL 5 print streams with the necessary Docusave comment information.

You must include comment records in the print streams to index the archive. You can use a DAL script to add comment records into the print stream. Use the `DocusaveScript` option in the `PrtType:PCL` control group to have the system execute a DAL script when Docusave comments can be added to the print stream.

To add Docusave comments to an PCL print stream, add the `DocusaveScript` option and the name of a DAL script to execute. The DAL script should call the `AddDocusaveComment` function to add a string as a Docusave comment record.

Here is an example:

```
< PrtType:PCL >  
  DocusaveScript = DOCUSAVE.DAL
```

Here is an example of what the `DOCUSAVE.DAL` file might look like:

```
* Add DocuSave Comment - use default: APPIDX record!  
COMMENT = AppIdxRec()  
PRINT_IT(COMMENT)  
ADDDOCUSAVECOMMENT(COMMENT)  
RETURN('FINISHED!')
```

**NOTE:** PCL 6 print streams cannot be archived into Docusave.

## USING DAL FUNCTIONS

For all types of print streams, you can use these DAL functions to create archive keys to use with Docusave.

Function	Description
<code>AddDocusaveComment</code>	Adds a Docusave comment string to the print stream
<code>AddComent</code>	Adds a comment string to the print stream
<code>AppIdxRec</code>	Gets an archive record based on <code>APPIDX.DFD</code> and <code>Trigger2Archive INI</code> settings
<code>HaveGVM</code>	Verifies if a GVM variable exists
<code>SetGVM</code>	Updates the contents of a GVM variable
<code>GVM</code>	Gets the contents of a GVM variable
<code>MajorVersion</code>	Gets the system's major version number

Function	Description
MinorVersion	Gets the system's minor version number
PrinterClass	Gets the type of print being produced
PrinterGroup	Gets the name of the print group being used
Print_It	Debug tool to print a string to the console

For more information on these functions, see the [DAL Reference](#).

## ADDING TLE RECORDS

You can add TLE (Tag Logical Element) records into AFP print streams which can be used by some 3rd-party archive systems to archive AFP print streams in a manner similar to archiving AFP or Metacode print streams in Docusave.

You must include comment records in the print streams to index the archive. You can use a DAL script to add comment records into the print stream. Use the TLEScript option in the PrtType:AFP control group to name the DAL script to execute when TLE records can be added into the print stream. The DAL script should call the AddComment function to add a string as a TLE comment record.

The TLE comment string must include a key and a value. Separate these components with a special character. This character can be any printable character as long as it is a unique character not found in the key or value portion of the comment string.

For example, you might build a comment string using a colon (:) as a separator as in the following example:

```
PolicyNum:7SAMPCO
```

The key portion of the string is *PolicyNum*, the value portion of the string is *7SAMPCO*, and the separator character is a colon (:).

Here is an example of what TLE DAL script might look like:

```
cidlabel = 'PolicyNum'  
clientid = GVM("PolicyNum")  
colon = ':'  
AddComment (cidlabel & colon & clientid);  
RETURN('FINISHED!')
```

Notice that the key portion remains constant (PolicyNum) while the value portion changes based on the contents of the GVM variable, PolicyNum.

Add these options to the PrtType:AFP control group to enable TLE record support:

```
< PrtType:AFP >  
  TLEScript    = TLE.DAL  
  TLEEveryPage= No  
  TLESeparator= :
```

Option	Description
TLEScript	Enter the name of the DAL script to execute.
TLESeparator	Enter the character you want to use to separate the key and value portions of the TLE comment string.
TLEEveryPage	Optional. If you enter Yes, the TLE DAL script will be executed at the start of every page. If you enter No, the TLE DAL script will be executed at the start of every form set. The default is No.

## HANDLING MULTIPLE PAPER TRAYS

You can set up PCL, PostScript, GDI, AFP, and Metacode print drivers to support up to nine paper trays. Setting up nine tray printer support for the various types of printers is outlined below.

**NOTE:** You can also use the Form Set Manager to specify tray settings. See the [Docucreate User Guide](#) for more information.

### For PCL printers

You can override PCL tray commands by providing an alternate PCL command to use. Here are the default PCL INI settings:

```
< PrtType:PCL >
  Tray1 = ~&l11H
  Tray2 = ~&l14H
  Tray3 = ~&l15H
  Tray4 = ~&l120H
  Tray5 = ~&l121H
  Tray6 = ~&l122H
  Tray7 = ~&l123H
  Tray8 = ~&l124H
  Tray9 = ~&l125H
```

When writing PCL commands as an INI setting, the tilde (~) is used as a substitute for the PCL escape character (x1B).

### For PostScript printers

You can override PostScript tray commands by providing an alternate PostScript command to use. You issue PostScript tray commands in these forms:

- A quoted string containing the PostScript commands. The quoted string should contain the appropriate PostScript commands for selecting a paper tray. Here is an example:

```
Tray1 = "statusdict /lettertray get exec"
```

- A tray number from 1 to 9. You can use tray numbers to map non-existent trays. For example, Tray5=1 maps output for tray 5 to tray 1. The system checks the INI setting for overriding Tray1 before it checks the setting for Tray2 and so on. Because of this, do not specify a tray number *less than* the tray you are overriding. For example, you should not use a setting of Tray5=6.
- A UI keyword from a PPD file. UI keywords represent features that commonly appear in a user interface (UI). They provide the code to invoke a user-selectable feature within the context of a print job, such as the selection of an input tray or manual feed. The entries of UI keywords are surrounded by these structure keywords:

```
*OpenUI/*CloseUI or *JCLOpenUI/*JCLCloseUI
```

Here is an example of an OpenUI structure for MediaColor:

```
*OpenUI *MediaColor: PickOne
*OrderDependency: 30 AnySetup *MediaColor
*DefaultMediaColor: white
*MediaColor white: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (white) put setpagedevice"
*MediaColor clear: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (clear) put setpagedevice"
*MediaColor blue: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (blue) put setpagedevice"
*MediaColor buff: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (buff) put setpagedevice"
*MediaColor green: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (green) put setpagedevice"
```

```
*MediaColor goldenrod: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (goldenrod) put
setpagedevice"
*MediaColor pink: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (pink) put setpagedevice"
*MediaColor yellow: "1 dict dup /MediaColor (yellow) put
setpagedevice"
*?MediaColor: "
save
  currentpagedevice /MediaColor
  {get} stopped
  {pop pop (white)} {dup null eq {pop (white)} if} ifelse
  = flush
  restore
"
*End
*CloseUI: *MediaColor
```

Input media (paper trays) are often selected on PostScript printers by specifying PageSize, MediaColor, MediaWeight, and MediaType. In the above example, media (paper) colors were defined for white, clear, blue, and so on. If you wanted to specify that the paper assigned to tray 5 uses blue paper, you could use one of these INI settings:

```
Tray5 = *MediaColor blue:
```

or

```
Tray5 = "1 dict dup /MediaColor (blue) put setpagedevice"
```

The first uses the UI keyword in the PPD file while the second uses the actual PostScript commands in a quoted string. When you use the UI keyword in an INI setting, always include the beginning asterisk (\*) and the terminating colon (:).

Here are the default PostScript INI settings:

```
< PrtType:PST >
; UI keyword is used if PPD is specified and keyword is found.
; Otherwise, quoted string is used.
Tray1="0 statusdict /setpapertray get exec" or Tray1=*InputSlot
Upper:
Tray2="1 statusdict /setpapertray get exec" or Tray2=*InputSlot
Lower:
Tray3="2 statusdict /setpapertray get exec" or Tray3=*InputSlot
Manual:
Tray4="3 statusdict /setpapertray get exec" or Tray4=*InputSlot
Envelope:
; Make trays 5 through 9 use the PostScript commands for tray 1
Tray5=1
Tray6=1
Tray7=1
Tray8=1
Tray9=1
```

#### For GDI printers

You can override the GDI tray commands by specifying an alternate paper tray to use. Here are the default GDI INI settings:

```
< PrtType:GDI >
Tray1 = 1
Tray2 = 2
Tray3 = 3
Tray4 = 4
```

```

Tray5 = 1
Tray6 = 1
Tray7 = 1
Tray8 = 1
Tray9 = 1

```

**For AFP printers** You can override the AFP tray commands by specifying an alternate paper tray to use. Here are the default AFP INI settings:

```

< PrtType:AFP >
  Tray1 = 1
  Tray2 = 2
  Tray3 = 3
  Tray4 = 4
  Tray5 = 1
  Tray6 = 1
  Tray7 = 1
  Tray8 = 1
  Tray9 = 1

```

**For Metacode printers** You can override the Metacode tray commands by specifying an alternate tray name to use. Here are the default Metacode INI settings:

```

< PrtType:XER >
  Tray1 = MAIN
  Tray2 = AUX
  Tray3 = AUX
  Tray4 = AUX
  Tray5 = AUX
  Tray6 = AUX
  Tray7 = AUX
  Tray8 = AUX
  Tray9 = AUX

```

## INCLUDING TRAY SELECTIONS IN A PRINT STREAM BATCH

To include the header with the tray selection in a print stream batch, the first image written or triggered to the batch must have a tray, such as Tray 1 or Tray 2, listed in its FORM.DAT file. Otherwise, the information is not written to that batch print stream. Here is an example of header information from a PostScript print stream that had these INI options:

```

< PrtType:PST >
  Tray1 =*InputSlot Upper:
  Tray2 =*InputSlot Lower:

```

Here is the example header:

```

GenericDict begin
%%BeginSetup
%%BeginFeature: *Duplex
false statusdict /setduplexmode get exec false statusdict /set tumble
get exec
%%EndFeature
%%BeginFeature: *InputSlot Upper
0 statusdict /setpapertray get exec
%%EndFeature

```



## CHAPTER 7

# Setting Up Error Messages and Log Files

This chapter discusses the how the system creates error and log messages and describes how you can customize these messages to meet your company's needs.

In this chapter, you will find information about...

- [Overview on page 310](#)
- [Configuring the Message System on page 311](#)
- [Creating Messages on page 316](#)
- [Using the Message Token File on page 322](#)

## OVERVIEW

The message system is enabled by default. Without making any modifications, it is fully functional. Each executed system program (GenTrn, GenData, GenPrint, and so on) appends output messages to the appropriate log or error file.

When an error or log message occurs, the system writes the information to a token file named *MSGFILE.DAT*. A second step converts or translates the output into log and error files, which are typically named *LOGFILE.DAT* and *ERRFILE.DAT*.

By default, this translation step occurs before each program's termination so the system is compatible with earlier versions. You can, however, delay this step and execute it manually using the TRANSLAT utility (see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#) for more information). This lets you translate the message and error information after all system programs have completed their processing cycle for a given batch run.

---

**NOTE:** Typically, you will want to use system defaults as you implement your system. This lets you spot errors after each processing step. Once your system is implemented and is running without error, you may want to delay the translation process to improve performance. See [Controlling the Translation Process on page 314](#) for more information.

---

Delaying the translation process can sometimes improve throughput performance—especially in batch implementations that typically run without errors.

This translation process, delayed or not, gives you flexibility in the type of options you can use; increases the amount of information that can be generated; and lets you control message formatting and language.

## CONFIGURING THE MESSAGE SYSTEM

As with most system features, you can configure the messaging system. Typically you use INI options in the FSISYS.INI file (or whatever your INI file is named) to configure the message system.

For example, you can turn off or on the log and error files, assign different output file names or directories, and so on. As mentioned earlier, you can also configure the message translation process to occur during normal system processing or as a final, separate step.

The system automatically prefixes an error code before each error message. Each code begins with the two-character identifier. Here is an example:

```
DM10825: Warning in TextMergeParagraph(): Rule used in image that
does not have any text areas. Image name is <q1snam>. Processing will
continue
```

## ENABLING AND DISABLING MESSAGES

Messages output from system programs fall into two categories—log and error messages. Unless specifically turned off via INI options, the message system produces both error and log files.

Error messages contain information about the problems encountered during the execution of the program. The generation of error information cannot be disabled. It is possible to not translate the results into an actual error file, instead the informational *tokens* output by the programs are written to a *message token file* named MSGFILE.DAT.

Log messages are a different matter. This type of message is informational, but not generally tied to the success or failure of the job. In general, these messages are transactional in nature—meaning that they provide information about each transaction as it proceeds through the processing cycle.

You can suppress the log information output by the programs. The LogTransactions option enables or disables the generation of log messages:

```
< Control >
LogTransactions = Yes
```

The LogTransactions options defaults to *Yes*. To disable the logging of messages, set it to *No*. By disabling this option, you suppress the informational tokens written to the intermediate file and prevent the translation of the log file.

When you set the LogTransactions option to *No*, system programs do not output the informational tokens, so you cannot generate the log file even if you use the TRANSLAT utility.

---

**NOTE:** For more information on the TRANSLAT utility, see the [Docutoolbox Reference](#).

---

## Logging INI Files and Options Used

By default, the GenTrn, GenData, GenPrint, and GenArc programs log the INI *files* being used. This tells you which files were used and if they were opened successfully. To turn off the logging of INI file names in the LOGFILE, make the following change in your INI files:

```
< Control >
  LogINIFileNames = No
```

You can also log which INI *options* are being used. This feature is turned *off* by default. To turn on the logging of INI options, use this INI option:

```
< Control >
  LogINIOptions = Yes
```

You can also use the /L command line parameter to log the INI options being used. For example, if you are running on a Windows 32-bit system, you would use this command to tell the GenData program to log the INI options used to the LOGFILE:

```
gendaw32 /L
```

## CLEARING MESSAGES

If you are using single-step processing, you can use the following INI option to delete all MSGFILE.DAT, ERRFILE.DAT, and LOGFILE.DAT files before the system begins the single step process.

```
< GenData >
  ClearMsgFile = Yes
```

The default is No.

## DEFINING THE OUTPUT MESSAGE FILES

Several files are used by the message system. You identify the output files and their locations with these INI options:

```
< Data >
  ERRFile = errfile.dat
  LOGFile = logfile.dat
  MSGFile = msgfile.dat
  TranslationFile = translat.ini
```

---

**NOTE:** The values for the LOGFile and ERRFile options are probably already set correctly if you are upgrading your system from an earlier version.

---

The values you specify for each option identify the file name for that option. You can also specify a directory path for each file. If you omit the path and include only the file name, the setting for the DataPath option is used as the default location for these files.

Option	Description
ERRFile	Identifies the file which contains the error messages.

Option	Description
LOGFile	Identifies the file which contains the log messages.
MSGFile	Identifies the message token file the system programs produce.
TranslationFile	<p>Contains the message text. Normally defaults to TRANSLAT.INI. Use this option to specify the file name and location.</p> <p>Unlike the other files, the TRANSLAT.INI file is static—it does not change during the batch process and is not considered a data file. This file's location does not default to DataPath option as do the other files.</p> <p>In the MVS environment, the DefLib option identifies the TRANSLAT.INI file's default location if you do not specify a path in the TranslationFile option.</p>

### Initializing the Output Message Files

In a standard implementation, the GenTrn program is the first program run in the batch process. As the first program, it re-initializes the data files by first deleting the existing data files.

If your implementation does not use the GenTrn program, you either have to set up the implementation to manually delete these files or you must include an additional INI option.

The ErrorFileOpenMode option lets you tell system programs to delete old message files before beginning its processing cycle. Here is an example of this option:

```
< Control >
  ErrorFileOpenMode = Create
```

If you set this option to *Create*, the system deletes existing files and creates new ones for the processing run. If you leave this option blank or enter any other value, the system appends information onto existing files.

## Turning Off Date Stamps

You can turn off date stamps in batch processing error and log files using these INI options:

```
< Control >
  ErrorFileDateStamp = No
  LogFileDateStamp   = No
```

Option	Description
ErrorFileDateStamp	Enter No to disable date stamps in error files. The default is Yes.
LogFileDateStamp	Enter No to disable the date stamp in log files. The default is Yes.

Entering No to turn off these options can be of use when regression testing.

Use this option to disable date stamps in the batch trace file:

```
< Debug_Switches >
  PrintTimeStamp = No
```

Option	Description
PrintTimeStamp	Enter No to disable date stamps in the batch trace file. The default is Yes.

## Controlling the Translation Process

By default, the GenTrn program deletes the old message file at the beginning of its execution and starts a new file with output information. All other programs, such as GenData, GenWIP, and so on, append information to the end of the message file created by the GenTrn program.

The default translation options are set so the log and error files are created after each system program executes. You can, however, set the ImmediateTranslate option to *No* to delay the translation process until all system programs finish processing—at the end of the batch process.

Here is an example:

```
< Control >
  ImmediateTranslate = No
```

Once processing stops, you can then use the TRANSLAT utility to translate the messages. By delaying the translation process and only executing it once per batch cycle, you can reduce job throughput times.

---

**NOTE:** If you set the ImmediateTranslate option to No, the system will not create the ERRFILE.DAT file.

---

## DBLib Trace Messages

DBLib-related trace (or log) messages are written to the trace file. The name of this file defaults to *trace* but you can set it to another file name using the TraceFile option:

```
< Data >
  TraceFile = xxxxxx
```

Skywire Software recommends you use the default name of *trace*.

---

**NOTE:** Before version 11.0, DBLib-related logging messages were written to the file indicated by this option:

```
< Data >
  DBLogFile = (file name)
```

The default was DBLOGFLE.DAT.

---

Keep in mind, all types of tracing, including DBLib tracing, slow performance. You should only activate DBLib tracing during development and testing or if requested by Skywire Software support personnel.

In the Rules Processor, the trace file for DBLIB log messages is the default logging file. You can activate DBLib tracing by specifying these INI options in the FSISYS.INI file:

```
< Debug_Switches >
  Enable_Debug_Options = Yes
  DBLib                = Yes
```

In IDS, the default logging file is the DPRTRC.LOG file DBLIB log messages. You can enter the INI options in the DAP.INI file or the MRL-specific INI file.

## CREATING MESSAGES

System messages fall into these categories:

- Log messages
- Error messages

Log messages record information about the processing run. These messages are informative rather than diagnostic. Types of information that fall into this category include transaction IDs that are processed; the start, ending and elapsed time of the run; transaction counts and statistics; and the program description that is producing the information.

Error messages are also informative, but usually help diagnose problems encountered during the processing run. These messages include such things as invalid data recognition; improper options; input/output errors; and resource validation.

The way these messages are produced is exactly the same. In general, the only real distinction between these two message classes is the destination file to which each is written.

## USING THE RPERRORPROC AND RPLLOGPROC FUNCTIONS

Use these two functions when you specify information to be output to the log or error files. You can use these functions to install the custom error and log procedures called from within these functions. The system lets the calling function provide the details of a message without having to specify the exact formatted text.

Here is an example:

```
RPErrorProc(pRPS, (WORD)EMIT_WARNING, (DWORD)10012,
            "OutBuff", pRPS->OutBuff,
            "Image", IMAGENAME(pRPS->CurrentFapImageH),
            LASTERRORTOKEN);
RPLLogProc(pRPS, (WORD)EMIT_MESSAGE, (DWORD)10775,
           LASTERRORTOKEN);
```

Each parameter is discussed below:

### RP Struct

The first parameter represents the pointer to the RP Struct active during the run.

### Message Types

The second parameter identifies the type of message being reported. There are these classes of messages:

Class	Description
EMIT_MESSAGE	Indicates the resulting information is simply a message.
EMIT_WARNING	Indicates the information is a warning to the user.
EMIT_ERROR	Indicates an error has been encountered by the program.

The message system recognizes the type of message if you use one of the above defines. Use the *EMIT\_???* keywords for this parameter and do not rely upon the underlying numeric value. This lets you later change these values or add new values and recompile without invalidating the meaning of a particular message.

**Message Number** Use this parameter to specify the message number to associate with the output data. Message numbers fall within the range of 100 to 1,000,000.

Message numbers are associated with the TRANSLAT.INI file. This file contains all the static text for each message. Later, the static text is merged with the variable information to produce the messages written into the log or error files. This table shows the range categories for messages:

Range	Description
100 to 9999	Used for general messages, universally shared
10000 to 499999	Reserved range for Skywire Software base system messages
500000 to 999999	Can be used for custom messages

Within the reserved range, there are sub-ranges for each library (DLL) and program:

Range	Library or Program
10000 to 10999	RULLIB
11000 to 11999	GENLIB
12000 to 12999	RPLIB
13000 to 13999	RCBLIB
14000 to 14999	A2WBLIB
15000 to 15999	GenTrn
16000 to 16999	GenData
17000 to 17999	GenPrint
18000 to 18999	GenArc
19000 to 19999	GenWIP
20000 to 20999	CUSLIB (Base)

This gives each program or DLL one thousand possible messages. Skywire Software reserves the first five hundred thousand numbers for base system use (0 - 499,999). If a library eventually exceeds the 1000 messages currently assigned, Skywire Software will assign an additional range. Likewise, this reserves enough numbers to allow for new libraries and programs which may be added in the future.

#### Assigning numbers to custom messages

The range 500,000 to 999,999 is for customization messages, which are generally added when you customize your system. Although you can use previously defined messages, it is better to assign an unused number within the custom range for each message you add.

This makes sure the intended meaning of an existing message is not changed in case someone modifies the text of the assumed custom message in the external file. In addition, if you develop a numbering system for the custom range, you can provide additional debugging information through the message number.

## USING MESSAGE TOKENS

The remaining parameters passed to the RPErrProc or RPLogProc functions are variables which represent *token-data* pairs used to define the content of the message.

In this example, there are two pairs of *token-data*.

```
RPErrProc(pRPS, (WORD)EMIT_WARNING, (DWORD)10012,  
         "OutBuff", pRPS->OutBuff,  
         "Image", IMAGENAME(pRPS->CurrentFapImageH),  
         LASTERRORTOKEN);
```

Token	Description
OutBuff	Represents a token name. The data for that token is defined in pRPS->OutBuff.
Image	A second token name, with appropriate data text following. Token and data must be character text. Therefore, if the data to be represented is anything other than text, it must be converted before you call the message function.
LASTERRORTOKEN	Not really a single token, but rather is a macro that contains several <i>token-data</i> pairs. These pairs identify the source module name and the line number of the statement being compiled. The last component of <i>LASTERRORTOKEN</i> is a NULL pointer used by the internal message formatter to recognize the end of the <i>Token-Data</i> pairs. <i>LASTERRORTOKEN must be the last variable passed to both the RPErrProc and RPLogProc functions.</i>

There are several points to remember about *tokens* which will become apparent as you examine the TRANSLAT.INI file—the file that contains the rest of the message text.

- The message text from the TRANSLAT.INI file does not have to use all, or for that matter any, of the tokens output from a particular function. This means you can output more information (in *token-data* format) than would normally be required in the message. This information, however, might prove useful to a programmer during closer examination of the message file.
- Token names live forever. This means that a token logged earlier in the session can be referenced by messages that occur later. For instance, if an early message outputs a token (with a value) named *ID*, any message text translated after that point may refer to *ID* and receive that same value.
- Token names are reusable. You should reuse token names whenever it makes sense. For instance, each time a function is required to emit the image name, use the same token name. This conserves space in the token list (because a new entry does not have to be created) and if subsequent messages rely upon the last known value of a given token, it is more likely to be correct.

- Tokens are not case sensitive. A token named *Image* can be referred to as *IMAGE*, *Image*, *image*, *ImageE*, and so on.

Also note, that the example refers to one-word tokens. Although, this is the most efficient use of space, tokens can be longer and include spaces. The only character you cannot use in a token is the ampersand (&)—ampersands are used in defining the static message text. For instance, you can define a token such as *One A Day*, but you cannot define a token such as *Will Not&Work*.

## Understanding the System

Legacy systems expected the fourth parameter to be a string representing a format. This format string might be the complete message or contain *flags* indicating where subsequent variables will be substituted—such as *%d*, *%s*, *%X*, and so on.

The RPErrProc or RPLogProc functions distinguish how these remaining parameters are handled (legacy or new) by first determining if the Message Type and Message Number parameters are values expected by the new functionality.

The new use of the functions does not require a format string. Instead, the variables represent *token-data* pairs until the *LASTERRORTOKEN* is encountered.

## SETTING UP MESSAGE TEXT

Message output from system programs is typically destination bound to the error or log files. All static message text is isolated into an external file for easy maintenance. The static portion of all messages is contained in the TRANSLAT.INI file.

**NOTE:** The *INI* designation is one of convenience, since the TRANSLAT.INI file is not intended to be used like a conventional INI file. INI references intended for other program functionality do not work when placed in this file. Likewise, you cannot add static message text intended for the log or error files into the FSISYS.INI or FSIUSER.INI files.

The TRANSLAT.INI file associates a message number with the static text for each message. Each entry takes the form:

```
AA99999 = message text
```

The numeric value is the *message number* which defines the text associated with the message. You can prefix the message number with a two-character alpha code, such as *AA*.

All messages must have a unique message number. You must make sure the proper message number is referenced in the code.

### Message examples

Here are some examples:

```
10529 = Error in rundate(): Unable to GENFmtDate(<&RunDate&>,).
10536 = Error in lookup(): Missing Key offset in lookup.
20261 = \nProcessing Batch:<&Name&> File:<&File&> Port:<&Print&>
```

There are several points to note in these messages.

- Each line specifies a unique message number and associates the static text portion of the message with that number.
- The words bounded on each end with an ampersand (&) are token *placeholders* for value replacement (see message numbers 10529 and 20261). This is where the token-data pairs passed to the RPErrProc and RPLogProc functions are matched and substituted into the static text. For example, assume the following statement is in the code of one of the system programs.

```
RPErrProc(pRPS, (WORD)EMIT_ERROR, (DWORD)10529,
    "RunDate", "April 1, 1999",
    LASTERRORTOKEN);
```

This would cause message number 10529, shown above, to print this text in the log file.

```
Error in rundate(): Unable to GENFmtDate(<April 1, 1999>,).
```

- Since token names are identified between ampersand characters, two ampersand characters together (&&) signals that the output text is to contain a single ampersand character.

### Undefined tokens

Messages in the TRANSLAT.INI file can have any number of token replacements. If, however, a token is undefined when the messages are translated, the token name is left in the text. So, if you view the log or error file and find a message which includes a word bounded by ampersands, it means one of these things:

- The token is misspelled in the TRANSLAT.INI file.
- The token is misspelled in the code that called the RPLogProc or RPErrProc function.
- The token and data was not included in the parameters to the message functions.
- This is not a token and was intended to print in this manner. Either it is data associated with a token or two ampersands were included at each end of the word in the static message text.

The first place to begin diagnosing this type of result is by examining the text included for the message in the TRANSLAT.INI file.

### Adding a new line

In message number 20261, you can see the use of another format convention. The `\n` in the text is translated as a new line character. This causes the following text to print on the next line. The layout of the TRANSLAT.INI file requires that all of the text for each message must fit onto a single line. Using `\n` in text expands your formatting possibilities.

### Determining where the message originated

Examine message number 10536. This message does not contain any tokens. Therefore there is no variable text that is required to print within this message.

The fact that the message does not contain any tokens does not mean that no tokens were output from the system program when the RPErrProc function was called. In fact, there are at least two tokens associated with this message.

LASTERRORTOKEN is the last required parameter to calls to the RPErrProc and RPLogProc functions. This macro defines the *FSIFileName* and *FSILineNumber* tokens. If you include the *FSIFileName* token in the message text, the name of the module that contained the code calling the RPErrProc or RPLogProc function is substituted into the message. Likewise, *FSILineNumber* is substituted with the source line number of the statement calling the RPLogProc or RPErrProc function.

This information can be quite useful if you are trying to determine what code is issuing a particular message. All you have to do is edit the message and include *&FSIFileName&* and *&FSILineNumber&* into the message text defined in the TRANSLAT.INI file.

## USING THE MESSAGE TOKEN FILE

While a system program is running and emitting information, the token-data pairs are written to the message file (*MSGFILE.DAT*). Typically, you do not have to examine the message file. The translation process that produces the error file and log file will do that for you and will make the final text more readable.

On occasion, however, examining the file reveals more information than is provided by the translation process. For instance, if you see a particular message in the error file and want to know where in the code this message originated, you can do one of two things.

You could edit the *TRANSLAT.INI* file to add the *FSLineNumber* and *FSFileName* tokens to the message. Then, by rerunning the translation process, you would get the additional message information. (See [Determining where the message originated on page 321](#) for more information)

Or, if you know what you are looking for, you could peek into the message file and locate the information more readily. Here is an excerpt from a message token file.

```
T DestField/PREM PAY INCEPTION
T Image/qmdc2
T FSIFilename/..\C\rulbsfl.c
T FSILineNumber/364
E 10010
T FSIFilename/..\C\rccbatpr.c
T FSILineNumber/418
E 13027
T FSIFilename/..\C\rulbsfs.c
T FSILineNumber/185
L 10775
T ID/3234567
T GrpName1/SAMPCO
T GrpName2/LB1
T GrpName3/
T Buff/T1
T FSIFilename/..\C\gentrans.c
T FSILineNumber/1187
L 11190
```

The first character on the line is a letter code which designates the meaning of the line. Valid codes are shown here:

Code	Description
E	Followed by a message number bound for the error file. (error or warning)
L	Followed by a message number bound for the log file. (informational)
T	Followed by a token-data pair, separated by a forward slash (/).

The token-data pairs for a given message will occur in the file on lines before the *E* or *L* lines. Knowing this, you can see that the excerpt from the message file shown above contains the information for four different messages.

The first message number occurs at the line that contains *E 10010*. This is a message bound for the error file. Four tokens are defined before translation:

- DestField
- Image
- FSIFileName
- FSILineNumber

This means that if the message text for 10010 contains any of these tokens the appropriate data will be substituted. Remember, however, if the message refers to a token that has not been defined prior to this point, the token will be left in the output text to indicate a problem might have occurred.

The next message number occurs at the line that contains *E 13027*. This too is a message bound for the error file. Notice that two tokens occur between the location of the first and second message—*FSIFileName* and *FSILineNumber*. These use the same token names used before, however, now their data values are different.

Also note that although only two additional token (changes) occurred before message 13027, four tokens are defined. If you could look into the program memory at this moment, you would see that the token list has these values:

Token	Value
DestField	PREM PAY INCEPTION
Image	qmdc2
FSIFileName	..\C\rcbbatpr.c
FSILineNumber	418

All tokens remain active after they have been translated. Tokens that are reused are updated with new values, but no tokens are removed until the translation process is complete.

Therefore, it is permissible (but at this point not likely) that a message can use tokens output by a prior message. This is why it is important to reuse token names when it makes sense, such as when all references to an image's name should use the same token.

Continuing with the examination of the message file excerpt, the next message is identified via the line that reads, *L 10775*. This is a message bound for the log file, not the error file. It too redefines the *FSIFileName* and *FSILineNumber* tokens, as do all messages that use *LASTERRORTOKEN*.

The last message in this example is defined by the line, *L 11190*. Five new tokens were introduced before this message. Peeking into program memory again, the token list now looks something like this:

Token	Value
Buff	T1
DestField	PREM PAY INCEPTION
GrpName1	SAMPCO
GrpName2	LB1
GrpName3	
ID	3234567
Image	qmdc2
FSIFileName	..\C\gentrans.c
FSILineNumber	1187

Note that the most recent values for *FSIFileName* and *FSILineNumber* are reflected. Also note that the tokens previously defined still exist. Finally, note that one of the tokens appears to have no data (*GrpName3*) and is therefore blank. This is permissible.

## CHAPTER 8

# Archiving and Retrieving Information

The GenArc program lets you store completed form sets for later retrieval. The GenArc program can be run as an independent program or from within the Documaker system using the archive and retrieval options.

When you run the archive module, the information the system uses to compose the form sets is compressed and stored in an archive file along with certain indexing information.

Once the form set information has been archived, those form sets can be regenerated by retrieving the form set information from the archive file. The archive index file is used to aid in the retrieval of particular form set information through the use of keys. These keys can be set to meaningful search criteria such as policy or account numbers, claim or invoice numbers, company names, customer names, and so on.

This chapter includes information on the following topics:

- [Terminology on page 326](#)
- [System Scenarios on page 328](#)
- [Archive and Retrieval Features on page 330](#)
- [Processing Overview on page 331](#)
- [Running GenArc on page 334](#)
- [Using WIP and the Archive Index File on page 355](#)
- [Retrieving Archived Forms on page 358](#)
- [Working with Documanager on page 361](#)

## TERMINOLOGY

The GenData program creates the NEWTRN file (which contains one record for every transaction to be processed), the NAFILE (which contains Image and variable field information and possibly some in-line data), the POLFILE (which contains form and image inclusion information) and the recipient batch files, such as BATCH1, BATCH2, and so on (which look similar to the NEWTRN file).

The GenArc process accepts as input the NEWTRN, NAFILE and POLFILE files and archives this data. Here are some terms you need to be familiar with:

- Files and tables** The term *file* refers to a non-database data structure, such as a flat file, while the term *table* refers to data structures within some database management system, such as DB2, SQL Server, and so on. However, the terms file and table might be used interchangeably in this chapter.
- Commit** The term *commit* is a database term which means to make table changes *permanent*. As data is written to tables, the data is not really made permanent until a *commit* is performed. Before performing a commit, if you determine that you really don't want to make the changes to the table, you can perform a *rollback* which will undo any table changes you have made since the last commit point. The GenArc program performs periodic commits based on an INI value you set.
- Rollback** The term *rollback* is a database term which means to undo any table changes that have been made since the last commit point. As table rows are inserted, deleted and updated, these changes do not become *permanent* until a *commit* is performed.
- GenArc** The program name for the process which performs batch archive. The program names vary slightly, depending on the operating system you are running. For example, the GenArc program on Windows is called GENACW32.EXE.
- AFEMAIN** The program name for the Processing System. The AFEMAIN program contains a graphical user interface. It lets you enter key information and retrieve a list of archived form sets you can display. The program name may vary slightly, depending on the operating system platform you are using. For example, on Windows it is called AFEMNW32.EXE.
- CARFILE** *Compressed Archive File*. The CARFILE may also be referred to as the ARCHIVE file. The GenArc program compresses the NAFILE/POLFILE data for each transaction and writes archives this data to the CARFILE. The GenArc program writes one or more records to the CARFILE for each transaction it archives.
- APPIDX** *Application Index*. The GenArc program archives indexing information to the APPIDX file. The GenArc program writes one record to the APPIDX file for each transaction it archives.
- TEMPIDX** *Temporary Application Index*. The TEMPIDX file is used as a temporary storage for records to be added to the Application Index file. The TEMPIDX file is used only when the GenArc program is archiving to a DBASE IV database. TEMPIDX is not used by the GenArc program when archiving to DB2, SQL Server, Oracle, or other databases.

- CATALOG** Refers to the CATALOG file. As the GenArc program archives data to the CARFILE and the APPIDX, it connects the CARFILE and APPIDX files with a *key* (by default called ARCKEY). Part of this key is a field called the CATALOGID. The GenArc program generates a unique CATALOGID (timestamp) each time it runs and writes this CATALOGID to the CATALOG file. The GenArc program writes one record to the CATALOG file for each GenArc run.
- RESTART** The Restart table. The Restart table describes whether a GenArc run was successful or if the run failed. The GenArc program writes one record to the Restart table for each distinct GenArc run. GenArc runs are made distinct by passing the GenArc program a parameter called *JOBID*.
- DFD** *Data Format Definition*. A DFD file is used to describe the fields a file's records are composed of. DFD files have a particular format and are frequently used to map the layout of system-related data files. The archive-related files defined above all have default DFD files that describe their layout.

## SYSTEM SCENARIOS

You can run the batch archive GenArc program, on a variety of platforms. This program creates and indexes the archived copy of the form set and its corresponding data.

You use Documaker's Archive module to retrieve, display, and print archived form sets from their workstations. The Archive module runs under various Windows 32-bit operating systems such as Windows 2000 and Windows XP. The following tables describe the various platforms and types of archives you can create and access.

**NOTE:** If your company has needs not covered below, contact your sales representative.

### Scenarios for OS/390 (MVS)

#### Server

Operating system	OS/390	OS/390
Database	DB2 8.1	Oracle 8.1.7 or higher
Communications	SNA 6.2	SNA 6.2

#### Client

Operating system	Windows 32-bit	Windows 32-bit
Database	DB2 for Windows 7.2	<i>na</i>
Product	SNA Server 6.2	SNA Server 6.2
Communications	DDCS 2.3.2	DDCS 2.3.2
Archive (Documaker Workstation)	Yes	Yes

### Scenarios for Windows 32-bit

#### Server

Operating system	Windows	Windows	Windows	Windows	Windows
Database	DB2 8.1	xBase	SQL Server 7.0	Sybase	Oracle 8.1.7
Communications	<i>na</i>	<i>na</i>	ODBC	ODBC	ODBC

#### Client

Operating system	Windows	Windows	Windows	Windows	Windows
Database	DB2 8.1	xBase	SQL Server 7.0.	Sybase	Oracle 8.1.7
Communications	ODBC	<i>na</i>	ODBC	ODBC	ODBC
Archive (Documaker Workstation)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Scenarios for UNIX

Server			
Operating system	AIX version 5 or higher	Linux (x86) Kernel version 2.4.21	Solaris 9 or higher
Database	DB2 8.1 or higher Oracle 8.1.7 or higher xBASE	DB2 8.1 or higher xBASE	DB2 8.1 or higher Oracle 8.1.7 or higher xBASE
Communications	na	na	no
Client			
Operating system	Windows	Windows	Windows
Database	DB2 8.1		DB2 8.1 Oracle
Communications	ODBC	see below	ODBC
Archive (Documaker Workstation)	Yes	see below	Yes

The DB2 database uses DB2LIB on if you are running the UNIX version of the GenArc program. If you are archiving to UNIX from the Windows version of the GenArc program, the system uses ODBC as the database communications layer.

You can also retrieve to Windows using DB2LIB or ODBC from tables created from the UNIX version of the GenArc program.

For Oracle databases, the UNIX processes use ORALIB as the communications client to the Oracle database server so the UNIX version of the GenArc program uses ORALIB. The Oracle database server can reside on UNIX/Linux or on Windows and you can set up ORALIB to communicate with the Oracle database server.

After the tables are populated by the UNIX version of the GenArc program, Windows applications such as AFEMAIN can retrieve archived form sets using ODBC as the Oracle database client communication layer.

## ARCHIVE AND RETRIEVAL FEATURES

Regardless of the platform being used, the system has many features, including:

- Multiple media support

The archive and index files can be automatically or manually divided into separate files which may be stored on multiple storage devices. This allows for the segregation of archive data chronologically to improve search and retrieval performance. Also, as archive files grow in size, they are not limited by the physical space available on a single drive. This feature also lets you easily copy older archive files to long-term media for storage without inhibiting the retrieval capabilities.

- Stability and redundancy

The archive files are designed to be reliable. Indexing information is stored redundantly in separate files so that the index can be regenerated independently in the event of index corruption. There are a variety of archive utilities you can use to repair archive files damaged by user error or hardware failure.

- Flexible indexing

The archive index can be configured to use certain field keys within the data, allowing for retrieval based on the specified keys. This lets you design your archive system to store information for later retrieval using the most relevant data fields.

- Network-ready

The system lets you use both local and network drives for storing of archive files. The archive files are independent, so archive files can be split up over combinations of local and network drives. The system keeps track of where specific files are stored, so users do not need to know the physical or logical file storage locations.

- Unattended operation

If configured to do so, the archive module can be executed as part of the batch process. This allows data to be archived automatically.

- Restarting the archival process

Should the archive process get interrupted, you can easily restart the GenArc program and have it automatically begin where it was interrupted. You can also use command line options to process a specified range of transactions or a specific job if you are running the GenArc program on multiple computers simultaneously.

## PROCESSING OVERVIEW

The GenArc program can archive form set data to files and/or Database Management Systems (DBMS). By default (if the INI file is not configured otherwise), the GenArc program archives form set data to a DBASE IV DBMS (actually a combination – APPIDX is DBASE IV file and CARFILE is a flat file). Below is a list containing some of the DBMS systems the GenArc program can archive to.

---

**NOTE:** For information on the various INI option settings, see the appropriate installation manual for your operating system and the technical documentation.

---

- DBASE IV** The APPIDX, TEMPIDX and CATALOG files are created as DBASE IV files. This results in the GenArc program creating DBF and MDX database files for the APPIDX, TEMPIDX and CATALOG and a CAR file (non-DBASE IV) for the CARFILE. The restart option is not available for DBASE IV archive.
- DB2** The APPIDX, ARCHIVE, CATALOG and RESTART files are all created as DB2 tables. GenArc communication to DB2 can be done through either the DB2's native API or DB2's ODBC interface. The restart option is available for DB2 archive.
- SQL server** The APPIDX, ARCHIVE, CATALOG and RESTART files are all created as SQL Server tables. SQL Server is an ODBC-compliant DBMS. The restart option is available for SQL Server archive.
- Oracle** The APPIDX, ARCHIVE, CATALOG, and RESTART files are all created as Oracle tables. Oracle is an ODBC-compliant DBMS. The restart option is available for Oracle archive.

## FILES GENARC USES

- Input files**
- NEWTRN file
  - NAFILE file
  - POLFILE file
- Output files**
- Compressed Archive (CAR) file
  - Application Index file
  - Catalog file
  - Restart file

## HOW THE GENARC PROGRAM WORKS

Below is a brief description of how GenArc processing is performed. Most of the restart information has been omitted but is covered in [Using the Restart Option on page 337](#).

- 1 Store the command line parameters, load INI files, and check and update the Restart table.

the GenArc program parses and stores any command line parameters passed to it. INI files are read and loaded. The Status column of the Restart table is checked (if archiving to a DBMS, not DBASE IV) to determine if the previous GenArc run by this JOBID (DEFAULT\_JOB\_ID by default) was successful or whether it failed. If the last GenArc run was successful the Status column of the Restart row is initialized to *Failed*.

- 2 Get a CATALOGID and then check and update the CATALOG table.

the GenArc program gets a timestamp from the system and constructs a 10-character CATALOGID. The CATALOG table is checked to make sure this CATALOGID is not already in the table. If the CATALOGID is already in the table, the GenArc program gets additional timestamps, until it finds one that is not already in the table. Once it has a unique CATALOGID, the GenArc program constructs a row containing this CATALOGID (CATALOGID column) and writes this row to the CATALOG table so future runs of the GenArc program will not be able to use this CATALOGID.

- 3 Read the NEWTRN file, get form set data from the NAFILE and POLFILE, then combine and compress the information.

The NEWTRN file is opened and the first record (transaction) is read. The NEWTRN record contains offset values into the NAFILE and POLFILE for the transaction. The GenArc program uses these offset values to retrieve the NAFILE data and POLFILE data for the transaction and it then combines and compresses this data.

- 4 Construct the ARCKEY, construct and archive the rows to the ARCHIVE table.

An eight-character sequential number (which will be incremented for each transaction) is appended with the 10-character CATALOGID to form an 18-character ARCKEY. This ARCKEY will be unique for each transaction. A record (or row) is constructed to be written to the ARCHIVE table. This row (whose columns are described by the CARFILE DFD file) contains the ARCKEY and the combined and compressed NAFILE/POLFILE data (CARDATA column). If the CARDATA is too large to fit on a single row, additional rows are constructed—each row will have the same ARCKEY but will have an incremented Sequence Number (SEQ\_NUM column). The constructed rows are archived to the ARCHIVE table.

- 5 Construct and archive the rows to the APPIDX table.

The index information for the transaction is gathered and a row is constructed to be written to the APPIDX table. This row (whose columns are described by the APPIDX DFD file) contains the ARCKEY used to construct the row for the ARCHIVE table above, as well as other information, such as Company, Line of Business, PolicyNumber, and so on (columns identified in the INI group Trigger2Archive). Once this APPIDX row is constructed it is archived to the APPIDX table. Only one record is written to the APPIDX table for each transaction.

- 6 Repeat the process, update the Restart table, issue messages, and terminate processing.

Steps 3 through 5 are repeated until all the NEWTRN records have been read. Once all the NEWTRN records have been read and the archiving is complete for all transactions, the Status column of the Restart table row, which was set to failed in step 1, is updated to reflect that the GenArc run was successful. The GenArc program issues console messages indicating how many transactions were *read*, *archived*, *in error*, and *rolled back*. The GenArc program then terminates processing.

## RUNNING GENARC

The name of the GenArc program and how you run it varies somewhat depending on the operating system you are using. The concepts are the same, though, for all operating systems. For our example let's assume you are running the GenArc program on Windows 2000. To run the GenArc program on Windows 2000, you enter a command like this:

```
C:\FAP\MSTRRES\RPEX1\genarcw32
```

Notice the command includes the program name (GENARCW32) and its full path—from the RPEX1 master resources directory. This command starts the GENARCW32 program (GENARCW32.EXE) and attempts to locate a FSIUSER.INI file in the c:\fap\mstrres\rpex1 directory.

The GenArc program messages will look something like the sample below if you have the LogToConsole option set as shown here:

```
< Control >
  LogToConsole = Yes
```

Here are the sample messages:

```
--- GenArc ---
==> Processing: TransactionId-GroupName1-GroupName2-GroupName3-
TransactionType
==> Processing: 1234567-SAMPCO-LB1--T1
==> Processing: 2234567-SAMPCO-LB1--T1
==> Processing: 5SAMPCO-SAMPCO-LB2--T1
==> Processing: 6SAMPCO-SAMPCO-LB2--T1
==> Processing: 7SAMPCO-SAMPCO-LB2--T1
==> Processing: 8SAMPCO-SAMPCO-LB2--T1
==> Processing: 9SAMPCO-SAMPCO-LB2--T1
==> Processing: 4234567-FSI-CPP--T1
==> Processing: 5234567-FSI-GL--T1

==> Transactions Read      :      9
==> Transactions Archived :      9
==> Transactions In Error  :      0
==> Transactions Rolled Back:      0

==> Warning count:      0
==> Error count:      0
Elapsed Time: 2 seconds
--- GenArc Completed ---
```

### Logging archived transactions

If you want the GenArc program to produce a log of the archived transactions, include the following INI option in the ArcRet control group:

```
< ArcRet >
  ExportIndex = <file name>.
```

Be sure to include the full path and file name of the log file. If you omit the ExportIndex option, the system does not create the log file.

### Archiving to a database

The system lets you archive information to a database, such as DB2, as an alternative to archiving to flat files (CAR files). You use the ArchiveMem option in the FSI SYS.INI file to enable database archiving, as shown here:

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
```

**Sorting records in a database**

Use the `DefaultTag` option to specify the default tag in ODBC and DB2. This tag is then used by the `ORDER BY` clause in the SQL database to sort records.

```
< DBTable:MYTABLE >
  DefaultTag =
```

For the `DefaultTag` option, enter the name of the key from the DFD file.

Keep in mind this only works with ODBC and DB2. It does not work with xBase files.

**Preparing SQL**

Add the `AlwaysSQLPrepare` option to make sure the ODBC driver always performs the `_SQLPrepare()` function. Here is an example:

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >
  AlwaysSQLPrepare = Yes
```

Omitting this option can the S1010 o [Oracle][ODBC]Function sequence error.

**COMMAND LINE OPTIONS**

The GenArc program accepts several command line options. Command line options are prefixed with either a backslash (/) or a dash (-). Here is an example of starting the GenArc program with command line options:

```
C:FAP\MSTRRES\RPEX1\genacw32 /ini=my.ini /jobid=tuesday1
```

The command line options are explained below:

**INI** Use the INI command line option to tell the GenArc program to open and read a FSIUSER.INI file other than the one in the current directory.

**JOBID** (Abbreviation: J)

Use the `JOBID` command line option to associate a Job Identifier with this particular run of the GenArc program. By default the GenArc program associates a run with the identifier, `DEF_JOB_ID`. This identifier (either the default identifier or the identifier specified with the `JOBID` option) is used when the Restart row in the Restart table is searched for and/or updated. Using `JOBID` allows for concurrent runs of the GenArc program.

**DPASSWD** (Abbreviation: DP)

Use the `DPASSWD` command line option to indicate the password to be used when connecting to a DB2 database management system (DBMS). Use this option along with the `DUSERID` option. You can also specify the `DPASSWD` option in the INI file as shown below:

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  Passwd = xxxxxxxx
```

**DUSERID** (Abbreviation: DU)

Use the `DUSERID` command line option to indicate the User ID to use when connecting to a DB2 database management system. Use this option along with the `DPASSWD` option. You can also specify the `DUSERID` option in the INI file as shown below:

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  UserID = xxxxxxxx
```

**OPASSWD** (Abbreviation: OP)

Use the OPASSWD command line option to indicate the password to be used when connecting to an ODBC-compliant database management system. Use this option along with the OUSERID option. You can also specify the OPASSWD option in the INI file as shown below:

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >  
  Passwd = xxxxxxxxx
```

**OUSERID** (Abbreviation: OU)

Use the OUSERID command line option to indicate the password to be used when connecting to an ODBC-compliant database management system. Use this option along with the OPASSWD option. You can also specify the OPASSWD option in the INI file as shown below:

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >  
  UserID = xxxxxxxxx
```

**RESTART** (Abbreviation: R)

Use the RESTART command line option to tell the GenArc program to start processing with the n'th record in the NEWTRN file. The GenArc program will skip n-1 NEWTRN records and begin with the n'th record. When you use the RESTART command line option you are *explicitly* restarting the GenArc program.

**SQLID** (Abbreviation: SQL)

Use the SQLID command line option to tell the GenArc program to perform a *SET CURRENTSQLID=SQLID* at initialization time. You can also specify the SQLID option in the INI file as shown below:

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >  
  CurrentSQLID = xxxxxxxxx
```

**STOPREC** (Abbreviation: S)

Use the STOPREC command line option to tell the GenArc program to stop processing on the n'th NEWTRN record.

## Using the Restart Option

The Restart option is *only* available if you are archiving both APPIDX and ARCHIVE data into a database management system. The Restart option is not available if you are using DBASE IV, which is the default archive method.

If the GenArc program detects an error during its processing, it can skip the transaction in error and continue processing with the next transaction in the NEWTRN.DAT file. The INI option listed below tells the GenArc program whether it should terminate processing when it encounters errors:

```
< GenArcStopOn >
  DBErrors = No
```

The default value for the DBErrors option is Yes, which means the GenArc program stops processing when it receives an error. If you set the DBErrors option to No, the GenArc program tries to skip the transaction in error and then continues with the next transaction in the NEWTRN.DAT file.

Below is a brief description of how the GenArc program performs restart processing. The description below does not include all of the information provided in [How the GenArc Program Works on page 331](#) but all of that information applies to restart processing as well.

- 1 Check the command line for parameters, load INI files, and then check and update the Restart table.

The GenArc program parses and stores any command line parameters passed to it. INI files are read and loaded. If the JOBID parameter was passed, the GenArc program will attempt to locate a row in the Restart table whose JOB\_ID column equals the JOBID value. If the GenArc program cannot locate a row whose JOB\_ID column matches the JOBID value passed in, the GenArc program issues an error message and terminates.

If the RESTART parameter was passed, this is an *explicit* restart, meaning we are supposed to restart on the n'th record of the NEWTRN.DAT file (skipping the first n-1 records).

If the RESTART parameter was not passed, either the prior run of the GenArc program was successful (and there is no need to try to restart) or the prior run was unsuccessful but the operator made some change since encountering the error that should allow the GenArc program to continue where it left off (implicit restart).

- 2 Determine the restart point and check the Restart table.

If this is an *explicit* restart, the GenArc program simply skips the first n-1 records of the NEWTRN file and reads the n'th record. It begins the archiving process with that record.

If this is either a *no restart* or an *implicit restart*, the GenArc program first locates the appropriate row of the Restart table (based on the JOBID described in Step 1). The GenArc program then checks the Status column of the Restart table to determine if the previous GenArc run by this JOBID was successful or whether it failed. If the last GenArc run was successful the Status column of the Restart row is initialized to *Failed*.

If the last GenArc run failed, the `COMM_RECS` column is checked to see how many transactions were committed during the prior GenArc run. The GenArc program also retrieves the value of the `LASTREC` column – this column contains the actual `NEWTRN` record for the last successful transaction. If the value of `COMM_RECS` is, for example, `X`, the GenArc program then skips to the `x`'th record in the `NEWTRN.DAT` file and compares the `NEWTRN` record with the value of the `LASTREC` column – if the values do not match, the GenArc program issues an error message indicating there is a consistency problem and terminates processing. If the values of the `x`'th `NEWTRN` record and the `LASTREC` column do match, the GenArc program positions itself to the `x+1`'th `NEWTRN` record and will begin the archiving process with that record.

**3** Archive form sets and then perform regular commits.

Before beginning the actual archive processing of the `NEWTRN` records, the GenArc program checks the `INI` file to determine how often to perform *commits* to the `DBMS` tables. The GenArc program checks the `INI` option listed below:

```
< ArcRet >
  CommitEvery = 10
```

The default value for the `CommitEvery` option is 10. This value tells the GenArc program to perform a commit every 10 transactions.

Once the GenArc program is positioned to the appropriate `NEWTRN` record where it is to begin processing, it processes each `NEWTRN` record. *Processing* means the `NAFILE` and `POLFILE` data are combined and compressed and archived to the `ARCHIVE` table, an index record is constructed and is archived to the `APPIDX` table.

Also, the `Restart` table is updated: the `COMM_RECS` column receives the `NEWTRN` record number—the record number of the most recently archived `NEWTRN` transaction—and the `LASTREC` column receives a full copy of the actual `NEWTRN` record itself. If at any time GenArc processing fails, a *rollback* is performed which will restore all the GenArc tables to the last point of consistency, which is the last commit point.

**4** Finish processing the `NEWTRN.DAT` file and then update the `Restart` table.

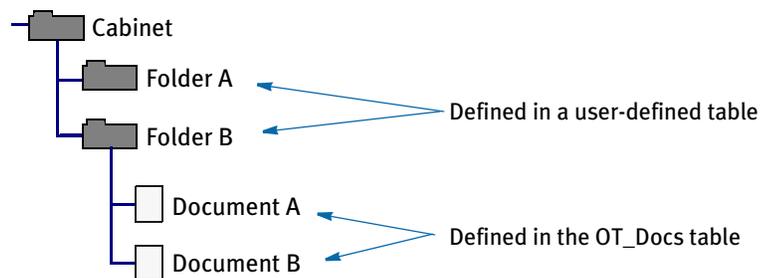
The archiving and committing process described in step 3 is performed until all of the `NEWTRN` records have been processed. When the final `NEWTRN` record is processed, the `Status` column of the `Restart` table is updated from `F` (failed) to `S` (successful) and a final *commit* is performed to make the last few table changes permanent.

The GenArc program issues messages indicating how many transactions were read from the `NEWTRN.DAT` file, how many transactions were skipped (if this was a restart), how many transactions were successfully archived, how many transactions were in error and how many transactions were rolled back. The sum of the number of transactions skipped, archived, in error and rolled back should equal the number of transactions read.

## USING GENARC WITH DOCUMANAGE

You can use Documange to archive files created from the GenArc program. This is done using the PO Handler. Set up the Documange Administrator in this order:

- Map to database
- Business tables
- Cabinets
- Document types
- Authorities



The user-defined table contains a record for each folder in the cabinet. The OT\_Docs table includes one record for each document in the folder.

What happens when a transaction is archived:

- 1 The PO Handler searches the cabinet for a folder that matches the transaction data. The FolderBy option in the Cabinet control group defines the fields used to identify the correct folder.
- 2 If the folder exists, the data needed to create the document is checked into the folder. A folder is created if a matching folder was not found. Creating the folder adds a record to the table that defines the cabinet. Adding the document adds a record to the OT\_Docs table. The document is named by the fields defined in the NameDocBy INI option. The document appears by this name in Documange.

When you display a transaction using the Entry system:

- 1 Folders are searched based on the fields defined in the FolderBy option. If a folder exists, the documents in the folder that match the type are searched. If no documents match, the folder is ignored. The document type is defined in the FileType option in the Cabinet control group. The system then creates a row in the Formset Selection window for each document where the folder has matching properties and document types.
- 2 When you select a document, the body of the document (CARDATA) is extracted into a temporary file. The data is then retrieved into the ARCHIVE record and the form set is displayed.

Here are examples of the INI options you use. These options set all archive tables to use the PO Handler:

```
< DBTable:APPIDX >
  DBHandler = PO
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >
  DBHandler = PO
```

These options set up the PO Handler:

```
< DBHandler:PO >
  UserID = EZPOWER
  Password = EZPOWER
  Cabinet = ARCCAB
  Domain = FSI
```

The Cabinet option contains all of the fields in all tables. You would use the Domain option if you are executing Documaker Workstation or the GenArc program in a different domain than the server machine.

Here are the options for the cabinet:

```
< PO:ARCCAB >
  FileType = dap
  FolderBy = KEY1, KEY2, KEYID
  NameDocBy = KEY1, KEYID, TRANCODE
```

Option	Description
FileType	Use this option to define the file types that can be placed in the folder.
FolderBy	Use this option to define the fields you want the system to use to sort the document into the various folders. For instance, if you enter Key1,Key2,KeyID, the system places documents which have the same data in these fields in the same folder.
NameDocBy	Use this option to tell the system which field contains the document name. If you omit this field, the systems uses ARCKEY.

Use this control group to map the DFD fields to the OT\_Docs fields. For instance, this example assumes that the AddedOn option is in the OT\_Docs table:

```
< POField2Document >
  AddedOn = CreateTime
```

Use this control group to map the OT\_Docs fields to the DFD fields:

```
< PODocument2Field >
  CreateTime = AddedOn
```

This control group is required for the GenArc program. The Restart table is not supported by Documanager:

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
  UseRestartTable = No
```

These field names are reserved in the Documange/PO Handler environment:

Field	Description
CARData	This field must be present in the CARFILE DFD file. Never folder on this field. Should never be in the DB table under Documange only in the DFD. Must be defined in the CARFILE.DFD as a BLOB. Always associated with the document.
ARCKey	This field is the archive key. It must be in both the APPIDX.DFD and CARFILE.DFD files. Required in the table under Documange.
DESC	(optional) The document description. By default, this field is associated with document.
RunDate	(optional) The document's run date. By default, this field is associated with document.

Other fields are associated with the folder unless you specify otherwise in the PODocument2Field or POField2Document control group.

Here are samples of the FSIUSER.INI, APPIDX.DFD, and CARFILE.DFD files:

**NOTE:** Make sure you use upper- and lowercase correctly in DFD and INI files.

## Forcing folder updates

You can now use the ForceFolderUpdate option to force folder updates when the folder already exists. This lets Documange Folder Update Authorities, when set to No, prevent duplicate archive entries from being sent to the Documange archive repository.

Here is an example of the ForceFolderUpdate option:

```
< PO:Prod >
  FileType = PROD
  FolderBy = DOC_TYPE_CODE,DOC_NUM,DOC_REV_NUM
  NameDocBy = DOC_TYPE_CODE,DOC_NUM,DOC_REV_NUM
  ForceFolderUpdate = Yes
```

The default is No.

## FSIUSER.INI sample

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
  UseRestartTable = No
< ArcRet >
  AppIdx = ARC\APPIDX
  AppIdxDFD = DefLib\AppIdx.Dfd
  ArcPath = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] ARCPATH =
  Arrangement = Stack
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CARFileDFD = .\DEFLIB\ODBC\carfile.dfd
  CARPath = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] CARPath =
  Catalog = ARC\CATALOG
  ExactMatch = No
  Key1 = Company
  Key2 = Lob
```

```

        KeyID           = Policynum
        LBLimit         = 500
        TempIdx         = ARC\Temp
    < Config:Batch Processing >
        ARCPATH         = ARC\
        BaseDef         =
        CARPath         = arc\
        CompLib         = COMPLIB\
        DALFile         =
        DefLib          = DEFLIB\
        FntFile         = REL95SM.fnt
        FontLib         = ..\fmres\deflib\
        Form7x          =
        FormDef         = FORM.DAT
        FormFile        =
        FormLib         = FORMS\
        FormsetTrigger = SETRCPTB.DAT
        HelpLib         = help\
        LogoFile        =
        TableLib        = table\
        WIPPath         = wip\
        XrfFile         = REL95SM
    < Configurations >
        Config          = Batch Processing
    < Control >
        XrfExt          = .FXR
    < DBHandler:PO >
        Cabinet         = RPEX1
        Domain          = FSI
        PassWord        = astros3
        UserID          = erm
    < DBTable:APPIDX >
        DBHandler       = PO
    < DBTable:ARCHIVE >
        DBHandler       = PO
    < DefaultTextArea >
        Chars           = 10
        Font            = 16010
        Lines           = 2
    < DefaultVarField >
        Font            = 12010
        Length          = 1
        Type            = x
    < Environment >
        FSISYSINI       = .\FSISYS.INI
        FSITemp         = TEMP
    < MasterResource >
        BaseDef         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] BaseDef =
        CompLib         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] CompLib =
        DalFile         = <CONFIG:Batch Processing> DalFile =
        DDTFile         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] DDTFile =
        DDTLib          = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] DDTLib =
        DefLib          = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] DefLib =
        DictionaryFile = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] DictionaryFile =
        FieldBaseFile  = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FieldBaseFile =

```

```

        FntFile          = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FntFile =
        FontLib         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FontLib =
        Form7x          = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] Form7x =
        FormDef         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FormDef =
        FormFile        = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FormFile =
        FormLib         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FormLib =
        FormsetTrigger  = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] FormsetTrigger =
        HelpLib        = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] HelpLib =
        LbyLib         = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] LbyLib =
        LogoLib        = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] LogoLib =
        LogoFile       = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] LogoFile =
        TableLib       = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] TableLib =
        Xrffile        = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] Xrffile =
> PO:RPEX1 >
        FileType       = DAP
        FolderBy      = Company,Lob,Polycynum
        NameDocBy     = ARCKEY
< PODOocument2Field >
        CreateTime    = AddedOn
< POField2Document >
        AddedOn       = CreateTime
< SignOn >
        UserID        = FORMAKER
< WIPData >
        File          = Wip\Wip
        Path          = [CONFIG:Batch Processing] WIPPath =

< FIELDS >
        FIELDNAME = UNIQUE_ID
        FIELDNAME = Company
        FIELDNAME = Lob
        FIELDNAME = Polycynum
        FIELDNAME = RunDate
;        FIELDNAME = InvFlag
;        FIELDNAME = ClaimFl
        FIELDNAME = ARCKEY
        FIELDNAME = FormsetId
        FIELDNAME = RECNUM
        FIELDNAME = CONFIG
< FIELD:UNIQUE_ID >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        INT_LENGTH = 26
        EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        EXT_LENGTH = 26
        KEY = Y
        REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:Company >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        INT_LENGTH = 6
        EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        EXT_LENGTH = 6
        KEY = Y
        REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:Lob >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY

```

## APPIDX.DFD sample

```
INT_LENGTH = 3
EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
EXT_LENGTH = 3
KEY = Y
REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:Polycynum >
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 7
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  EXT_LENGTH = 7
  KEY = Y
  REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:RunDate >
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  EXT_LENGTH = 8
  EXT_PRECISION = 0
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 8
  INT_PRECISION = 0
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:InvFlag >
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  EXT_LENGTH = 1
  EXT_PRECISION = 0
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 1
  INT_PRECISION = 0
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:ClaimFl >
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  EXT_LENGTH = 1
  EXT_PRECISION = 0
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 1
  INT_PRECISION = 0
  KEY = N
  REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:ARCKEY >
  EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  EXT_LENGTH = 18
  EXT_PRECISION = 0
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 18
  INT_PRECISION = 0
  KEY = Y
  REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:FormsetId >
  EXT_TYPE = NOT_PRESENT
  EXT_LENGTH = 0
  EXT_PRECISION = 0
  INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
  INT_LENGTH = 8
  INT_PRECISION = 0
```

```

KEY = N
REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:RECNUM >
EXT_TYPE = NOT_PRESENT
EXT_LENGTH = 0
EXT_PRECISION = 0
INT_TYPE = LONG
INT_LENGTH = 4
INT_PRECISION = 0
KEY = N
REQUIRED = Y
< FIELD:CONFIG >
EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
EXT_LENGTH = 10
EXT_PRECISION = 0
INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
INT_LENGTH = 10
INT_PRECISION = 0
KEY = Y
REQUIRED = Y
< KEYS >
KEYNAME = UNIQUE_ID
KEYNAME = Company
KEYNAME = Lob
KEYNAME = Policynum
< KEY:Company >
EXPRESSION = Company
FIELDLIST = Company
< KEY:Lob >
EXPRESSION = Lob
FIELDLIST = Lob
< KEY:PolicyNum >
EXPRESSION = Policynum
FIELDLIST = Policynum
< KEY:UNIQUE_ID >
EXPRESSION = UNIQUE_ID
FIELDLIST = UNIQUE_ID

< FIELDS >
FIELDNAME = ARCKEY
FIELDNAME = SEQ_NUM
FIELDNAME = CONT_FLAG
FIELDNAME = TOTAL_SIZE
FIELDNAME = CARDATA
< FIELD:ARCKEY >
INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
INT_LENGTH = 18
EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
EXT_LENGTH = 18
KEY = N
REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:SEQ_NUM >
INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
INT_LENGTH = 5
EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY

```

### CARFILE.DFD sample

```

EXT_LENGTH = 5
KEY = N
REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:CONT_FLAG >
INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
INT_LENGTH = 1
EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
EXT_LENGTH = 1
KEY = N
REQUIRED = N
< FIELD:Total_Size >
INT_Type = LONG
INT_Length = 4
EXT_Type = LONG
EXT_Length = 4
Key = N
Required = N
< FIELD:CARData >
INT_Type = BLOB
INT_Length = 8
EXT_Type = BLOB
EXT_Length = 8
Key = N
Required = N
< Keys >
KeyName = ARCKEY
KeyName = SEQ_NUM
KeyName = CAR_KEY
< KEY:ARCKey >
Expression = ARCKEY+SEQ_NUM
FieldList = ARCKEY,SEQ_NUM
< KEY:SEQ_NUM >
Expression = SEQ_NUM
FieldList = SEQ_NUM
< KEY:CAR_Key >
Expression = ARCKEY
FieldList = ARCKEY

```

## Using the Oracle ODBC Driver

The Oracle ODBC driver is supported on all Windows platforms. The DFD and INI files shown on previous pages require special consideration when using the Oracle driver. Here are samples of CARFILE.DFD and FSIUSER.INI files.

### CARFILE DFD

To use a library using the Oracle ODBC driver, you must use a Skywire Software-supplied CARFILE DFD file that differs from the standard (internal) DFD definition. The supplied CARFILE.DFD file is located in the sample RPEX1 resources in the directory:

```
.. \DEFLIB\ODBC_ORA\CARFILE.DFD
```

The contents of the CARFILE.DFD are listed below:

```

; CARFILE.DFD - this DFD is to be used when referencing a library or
; archive with the Oracle ODBC driver.
< FIELDS >
FIELDNAME = ARCKEY
FIELDNAME = SEQ_NUM

```

```

        FIELDNAME = CONT_FLAG
        FIELDNAME = TOTAL_SIZE
        FIELDNAME = CARDATA
    < FIELD:ARCKEY >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        INT_LENGTH = 18
        EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        EXT_LENGTH = 18
        KEY = N
        REQUIRED = N
    < FIELD:SEQ_NUM >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        INT_LENGTH = 5
        EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        EXT_LENGTH = 5
        KEY = N
        REQUIRED = N
    < FIELD:CONT_FLAG >
        INT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        INT_LENGTH = 1
        EXT_TYPE = CHAR_ARRAY
        EXT_LENGTH = 1
        KEY = N
        REQUIRED = N
    < FIELD:TOTAL_SIZE >
        INT_TYPE = LONG
        INT_LENGTH = 4
        EXT_TYPE = DOUBLE
        EXT_LENGTH = 4
        KEY = N
        REQUIRED = N
    < FIELD:CARDATA >
        INT_TYPE = BLOB
        INT_LENGTH = 252
        EXT_TYPE = BLOB
        EXT_LENGTH = 252
        KEY = N
        REQUIRED = N
    < KEYS >
        KEYNAME = ARCKEY
        KEYNAME = SEQ_NUM
        KEYNAME = CAR_KEY
    < KEY:ARCKEY >
        EXPRESSION = ARCKEY+SEQ_NUM
        FIELDLIST = ARCKEY, SEQ_NUM
    < KEY:SEQ_NUM >
        EXPRESSION = SEQ_NUM
        FIELDLIST = SEQ_NUM
    < KEY:CAR_KEY >
        EXPRESSION = ARCKEY
        FIELDLIST = ARCKEY

```

To use the supplied CARFILE.DFD file, do the following:

- 1 Copy the CARFILE.DFD file into the directory where you store other DFD files, such as the \DefLib directory.

## 2 Make the system use the CARFILE.DFD file by adding this entry into the INI file:

```
< ArcRet >
  CARFileDFD = ..\DEFLIB\CARFILE.DFD
```

## Creating the Database and Tables

Use these INI options to tell Library Manager to create a library using the Oracle ODBC driver and to load resources from that library:

```
< MasterResource >
  DALFile = LBYI
  DDTFile = LBYI
  FormFile = LBYI
  LOGOFile = LBYI
< LibraryManager >
  LBYLOGFile = LBYLOG
< Library:LBYI >
  DBTable = LBYD
< DBTable:LBYI >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:LBYD >
  DBHandler = ODBC
  UniqueTag = ARCKEY+SEQ_NUM
< DBTable:LBYLOG >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:CATALOG >
  DBHandler = ODBC
  UniqueTag = CATALOGID
< DBHandler:ODBC >
  Server = LBYSQL
  Qualifier = LBYSQL
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  UserID = userid
  Passwd = password
  Debug = No
< ODBC_FileConvert >
  LBYI = DAP102_LBYI
  LBYD = DAP102_LBYD
  LBYLOG = DAP102_LBYLOG
```

A description of the above INI options follows:

Option	Description
<b>MasterResource control group</b>	
DALFile	Enter the name of the library from which you want the system to retrieve DAL scripts and DAL script libraries.

Option	Description
DDTFile	<p>Enter the name of the library from which you want the system to retrieve DDT files.</p> <p>If you define this option, the system expects to find all DDT files there, including the MASTER.DDT file. You can use the following option to exclude the MASTER.DDT file from being located in the library:</p> <pre>&lt; RunMode &gt;   MasterDDTNotInLibrary = Yes</pre> <p>The only advantage to having an external MASTER.DDT file is if your setup creates the MASTER.DDT file on the fly, before a transaction is run. If that is the case, it is easier to manipulate if it is outside of the library.</p>
FormFile	Enter the name of the library from which you want the system to retrieve FAP files.
LOGOFile	Enter the name of the library from which you want the system to retrieve LOG (logo) files.

#### LibraryManager control group

LBYLOGFile	Enter the name of the library log file. The library log contains information about resources that are added to, deleted from, or updated in the library. The LBYLOGFile does not have to use the same type of DB handler as the library index and data portions.
------------	--

#### Library:LBYI control group

DBTable	Enter the name of the data component of the library. In this example, the names LBYI and LBYD are used to emphasize that one table, LBYI, represents the library index and one table, LBYD represents the library data. You can use up to eight characters to give these tables any name you like. See the ODBC_FileConvert control group if you need to map these eight-character names to longer table names.
---------	---

#### DBTable:LBYI control group

DBHandler	Tells the system to access the LBYI table using the data base handler named ODBC. Because of this INI value, the system expects to find an INI control group named DBHandler:ODBC. Microsoft's SQL Server is an ODBC-compliant database.
-----------	--

#### DBTable:LBYD control group

DBHandler	Tells the system to access the LBYD table using the data base handler named ODBC. Because of this INI value, the system expects to find an INI control group named DBHandler:ODBC.
-----------	--

UniqueTag	In this example, ARCKEY+SEQ_NUM specifies that the columns ARCKEY and SEQ_NUM can be combined to represent a unique tag for the table. This unique tag is only used for internal purposes. If you do not specify a unique tag for this table, and a column with the name UNIQUE_ID does not exist within the table, you receive warning messages indicating that there is no unique tag defined.
-----------	--

#### DBTable:LBYLOG control group

Option	Description
DBHandler	Tells the system to access the LBYLOG table using the data base handler named ODBC. Because of this INI value, the system expects to find an INI control group named DBHandler:ODBC.
DBTable:CATALOG control group	
DBHandler	Tells the system to access the CATALOG table using the data base handler named ODBC. The CATALOG table is used to temporarily store CATALOGID values used to construct an ARCKEY.
UniqueTag	This specifies that the column CATALOGID represents a unique tag for this table. This unique tag is only used for internal purposes. If you do not specify a unique tag for this table, and a column with the name UNIQUE_ID does not exist within the table, you receive warning messages indicating that there is no unique tag defined.
DBHandler:ODBC control group	
Server	Specifies the name of the ODBC data source for this database handler, such as LBYSQL. You must also define an ODBC data source with this name.
Qualifier	Specifies the name of the database for this database handler, such as LBYDBASE. If you omit this option, the database set up as the default database for the LBYSQL ODBC data source is used.
CreateTable	Specifies the system should create any tables Library Manager needs, that do not already exist, at run time.
CreateIndex	Specifies the system should create any database indexes it needs, that do not already exist. Always set this option to No.
UserID	Enter the user ID to use when connecting to the data base management system.
Passwd	Enter the password to use when connecting to the data base management system.
Debug	Enter Yes to turn on tracing for the Documaker ODBC DB handler. Enter No or omit this option except in troubleshooting situations.
ODBC_FileConvert control group	
This INI control group lets you map table names of eight characters or less to table names longer than eight characters. The table names you specify must follow the table naming conventions for the data base management system.	
LBYI	Specifies the name of the table referenced in several INI locations as LBYI on the data base management system.
LBYD	Specifies the name of the table referenced in several INI locations as LBYD on the data base management system.
LBYLOG	Specifies the name of the table referenced in several INI locations as LBYLOG on the data base management system.

## Resolving Errors

If the GenArc program produces an error similar to the following example, it indicates the INT\_Length or EXT\_Length (or both) options in the CARData control group have not been set in the CARFILE.DFD file:

```
Error:
====
GenArc
Transaction Error Report - System timestamp: Fri Sep 07 02:07:33 2001
-->Transaction: 1234567
Error in RPFAPErrorNotify(): FAP library error:
area:..\C\dxmerror.c
Jun 16 2001 12:44:04
400.101.002
DXMSetLastError>, code:<2>, code:<2>, msg<Invalid object handle was
passed>.
```

An example of the correct INI settings is shown in the [FSIUSER.INI sample on page 341](#).

## VIEWING ARCHIVES IN DOCUMANAGE

You can use the ARCVIEW utility to view Documaker archive files checked into the Documanager archive system. This utility only runs under 32-bit Windows.

To use this utility, follow these steps:

- 1 Register the Documanager file extension (DPA) in Windows so the operating system will automatically use the ARCVIEW utility to view these files.
- 2 Set the FSIPATH environment variable to point to the directory where the INI file for the AFEMAIN program is stored. Here is an example:

```
FSIPath = d:\rpex1
```

---

**NOTE:** The AFEMAIN program is the executable file for Documaker Workstation.

---

- 3 Place a menu file, similar to the MEN.RES file used by Documaker Workstation, in the directory specified by the FSIPath option. The name of the menu file should be *ARCVIEW.RES*.

---

**NOTE:** You can edit this file to remove functionality you do not want to include.

---

- 4 Edit the FILETYPES.INI file on the computer where the Documanager server runs. Add the DPA file extension to the list of file types to view with the ARCVIEW.EXE program. This causes the Documanager client to use the viewer registered in Windows instead of the default Documanager viewer.

You can now click on Documaker archive files in Windows Explorer to display them.

## USING MULTIPLE SIMULTANEOUS ODBC CONNECTIONS

The system supports multiple simultaneous ODBC connections via different ODBC drivers. This will, for instance, let you connect at the same time to multiple:

- Databases on an SQL server
- Databases on an SQL server and Excel spreadsheet databases
- Access databases and Excel spreadsheet databases
- Access databases
- Excel spreadsheet databases
- Databases for which you have an ODBC-compliant driver

The system does not support multiple different DB2 databases using native DB2 drivers. Support is limited to ODBC-compliant data bases.

---

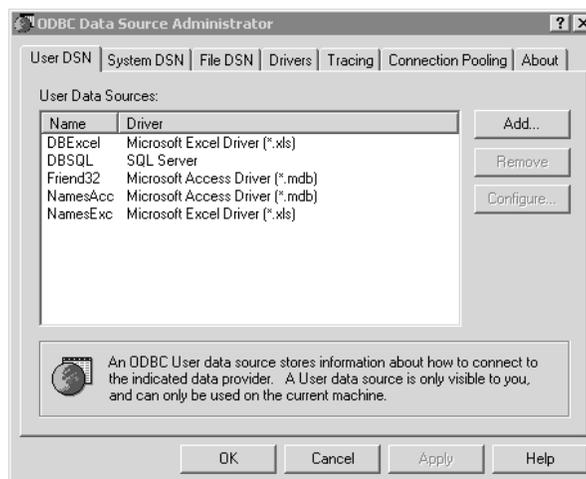
**NOTE:** Keep in mind the ODBC\_FileConvert and ODBC\_FieldConvert control groups are global and affect all of the handlers.

---

For example, to access a database on a SQL Server and in a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet simultaneously, you first set up the ODBC Data Sources Administrator panel as illustrated and these INI options:

```
< DBHandler:DBSQL >
  Class = ODBC
  Server = SQL Server
< DBHandler:DBEXCEL >
  Class = ODBC
  Server = MS Excel
```

The database handler name is limited to 22 characters.



For the table you want to open using the appropriate handler add this INI option:

```
< DTable:MYTABLE >  
    DBHandler = DSQL
```

Debug INI option can be specified under each of the DBHandler:XXX control group.

If you use the name of the ODBC handler in the appropriate DAL function, you can omit the DTable:XXX control group. For more information on DAL functions and setting up database handlers for Excel databases, see the [DAL Reference](#).

## USING WIP AND THE ARCHIVE INDEX FILE

Since the Archive module supports custom application archive index files, you must create an application archive index record from a WIP record. The following example shows a standard application archive index file.

The Archive option in the AFEProcedures control group defines the DLL and the function name to call when converting a WIP record into an archive record. The standard DLL is AFEW32 and the standard function is called AFEWip2ArchiveRecord. Here is an example of the standard DLL and function:

```
< AFEProcedures >
  Archive = AFEW32-> AFEWip2ArchiveRecord
```

The AFEWip2ArchiveRecord function uses options in the AFEWip2ArchiveRecord control group. Options in the AFEWip2ArchiveRecord control group are:

```
Archive Field Name = WIP Field Name
```

Where *ARCHIVE FIELD NAME* is the actual field name from archive DFD file and *WIP FIELD NAME* is the field name from WIP file. This means that data from WIP record field *WIP FIELD NAME* would be copied into archive record field *ARCHIVE FIELD NAME*.

For a base application archive index file, this control group and options are as follows:

```
< AFEWIP2ArchiveRecord >
KEY1          = KEY1
KEY2          = KEY2
KEYID         = KEYID
RECTYPE       = RECTYPE
CREATETIME    = CREATETIME
ORIGUSER      = ORIGUSER
CURRUSER      = CURRUSER
MODIFYTIME    = MODIFYTIME
FORMSETI      = FORMSETID
TRANCODE      = TRANCODE
STATUSCODE    = STATUSCODE
FROMUSER      = FROMUSER
FROMTIME      = FROMTIME
TOUSER        = TOUSER
TOTIME        = TOTIME
DESC          = DESC
INUSE         = INUSE
ARCKEY        = ARCKEY
APPDATA       = APPDATA
RECNUM        = RECNUM
RUNDATE       = RUNDATE
INVFLAG       = INVFLAG
CLAIMFL       = CLAIMFL
```

## FORMATTING ARCHIVE FIELDS

The system lets you format data values that will be mapped to the archive index record from the Trigger2Archive control group. Normally, this group is defined like this:

```
< Trigger2Archive >
  Key1    = Company
  Key2    = LOB
  KeyID   = TransID
  RunDate = RunDate
```

---

**NOTE:** These same options in the ArcRet control group are used for searching the key fields in the archive index file.

---

Where the value on the left of the equals sign designates an archive index field (defined in APPIDX.DFD) and the value on the right represents a GVM variable normally associated with the NEWTRN record (defined by the TRNDFDFL.DFD). These options are used by the GenArc program to add the Key1, Key2, and KeyID information to the archive index file.

You can have the system format these archive fields in several ways:

- Preserving the case of values in the key fields
- Formatting dates
- Storing a constant value

### Converting the case of key fields

By default, the system converts the case of information in the Key1, Key2, and KeyID fields to uppercase when it archives a record. It does this to reduce the amount of time it takes to find a record during a search. You can, however, use the CaseSensitiveKeys option to preserve the case of the Key1, Key2, and KeyID values as entered. For example, this option

```
< Archival >
  CaseSensitiveKeys = Yes
```

Tells the system to preserve the case of the Key1, Key2, and KeyID fields as entered. If you enter No or omit the CaseSensitiveKeys option, the system convert the values for these options to uppercase before it archives the record.

### Reformatting dates

You can do optional date reformatting and assign a constant data value not associated with a GVM. Here is an example of date reformatting:

```
RUNDATE = TRANDATE;D1-4;D4
```

You still are associating the archive index field with a GVM variable normally loaded from the NEWTRN record. Separated by a semicolon, you can define the date format of the input variable and specify a different format for the final value after the second semicolon.

In this example, the RUNDATE field is to be set from the TRANDATE field from the NEWTRN record. Note the first *D* that follows the semicolon indicates you want a date conversion. This example converts the data from format *1-4* (MM-DD-YYYY) to format *D4* (YYYYMMDD) before storing it in the RUNDATE field of the archive index.

---

**NOTE:** Always use YYYYMMDD to store your run date in the archive.

---

### Storing a constant value

Here is an example of how you store a constant value instead of associating the field with a GVM variable from the NEWTRN record.

```
USERID = NULL; ;TOM
```

Keep in mind that *NULL* is a keyword and is not interpreted as the name of a GVM variable associated with any record. When using *NULL*, the system skips to the final destination format section (the second semicolon) and places whatever value is defined there in the resulting archive index field. In this case, that value is *TOM*.

Since this method assumes there will be a constant text value defined after the second semicolon, you can also use INI built-in functions to provide this value. For instance, consider this example.

```
USERID = NULL; ; ~GETENV USERNAME
```

This is similar to the previous example except it uses the GetEnv (Get Environment Variable) INI function to get the value associated with *USERNAME* from the environment to supply the field value.

## RETRIEVING ARCHIVED FORMS

Once the form set information has been archived, you can re-create those form sets by retrieving the form set information from the archive file, as long as you have access to the resource library which contains the forms. You do this using the Archive module of Documaker.

**NOTE:** The Archive module of Documaker can also archive form sets. For more information, see the [Documaker User Guide](#). The following information is provided here so you can have a basic understanding of the retrieval process.

### FILES THE ARCHIVE MODULE USES

The Archive module (the AFEMAIN program) uses the archive index file to aid in the retrieval of form set information through the use of keys. You can define these keys to provide meaningful search criteria such as account or policy numbers, company names, or customer names.

#### Input files

- Compressed Archive (CAR) file
- Application Index file
- Catalog file
- Restart file
- Resource file such as FAPLIB, DEFLIB, and so on

#### Output files

None.

### USING THE ARCHIVE MODULE

To retrieve a document from archive using the Archive module, you select the Retrieve, Formset option. The Retrieve Document window appears.

You can configure the Retrieve Document window using these FSISYS.INI settings:

```
< Group1 >
  Title1 = Company
```

```

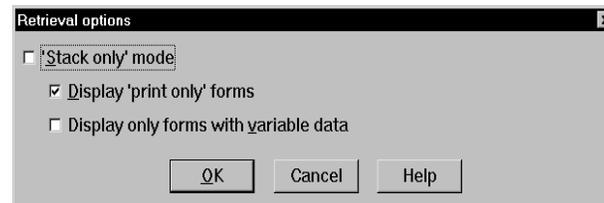
Title2 = Line of Business
Title3 = Policy #
Title4 = Run Date
Title5 = Invoice Only
Title6 = Claim Only
Title7 = Policy #           Date           St Tr Description

```

**NOTE:** *Title5* and *Title6* are not used in the base Documaker Workstation system, but are available if you choose to customize your installation. If you remove these options from the FSISYS.INI file, the system does not display those fields.

## Retrieval Options

If you click the Options button on the Retrieve Document window, the Retrieval Options window appears, as shown below.



This window is shown with default text. If you want to change these default values, add values to DlgTitles and ArcRet control groups as follows:

Beside this DlgTitles option	Enter the title for the...
RetOptionsDlgTitle	window ( <i>Retrieve options</i> in this example)
RetOptionsPrintOnly	Print only field
RetOptionsOnlyEntry	Display only field
RetOptionsStackOnly	Stack only mode field

The options in the ArcRet control group define only the default settings for fields users can change actual values by checking or unchecking the fields on the window.

For this ArcRet option	Enter...
Arrangement	StackOnly. If StackOnly mode is on, the system shows one form at a time and the Stack, Tile, and Cascade options are available. In this mode DisplayPrintOnly is set to <i>Yes</i> and DisplayOnlyEntry is set to <i>No</i> and cannot be changed.
DisplayPrintOnly	Yes. This setting displays only the forms in the form set defined as Print Only, along with variable data forms included in the form set. These forms do not contain manually-entered data.
DisplayOnlyEntry	No. This setting displays only forms containing variable data. The system will omit reference forms.

## WORKING WITH DOCUMANAGE

If you use Documanage as part of your archiving solution, you may want to use Documanage data types when mapping archive index data. You may also want to categorize the documents you archive. The following topics discuss how to do these tasks.

### USING DOCUMANAGE DATA TYPE SUPPORT

Pulling Documaker archive documents (DPA files) into Documanage lets you use Documanage-supported data types when mapping the Documaker archive index data into the Documanage folder and document properties tables.

This lets you search, query, and present the data through Documanage clients such as Documanage Workstation and Documanage Bridge-based clients. For example, you can store Documaker date/time data as Documanage date/time data types and enable the use of date ranges and calendar functionality in web page design and for sorting and searching Documaker archive documents. Data mining and reporting can also benefit from better data representation and storage.

The DMIA DBHandler (DMILIB module: [DBHandler:DMIA]) used with the GenArc program and other Documaker Server archive processes lets you use additional Documanage Data Types in Documanage Folder fields instead of only supporting the varchar or char data types.

Keep in mind...

- The date/time data types must be in either a Documaker D4 string format:

```
YYYYMMDDHHMMSS
```

The hours, minutes, and seconds (HHMMSS) are optional. For example, the D4 format can be sent in as:

```
20070131 (Jan. 31, 2007)
2007013113 (Jan. 31, 2007 1PM)
200701311330 (Jan. 31, 2007 1:30PM)
20070131133055 (Jan. 31, 2007 1:30:55 PM)
```

Or in a Documanage client-supported string format:

```
YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.msec
```

The hours, minutes, seconds and milliseconds (HH:MM:SS.msec) are optional. For example, the Documanage format can be sent in as:

```
2007-01-31
2007-01-31 13
2007-01-31 13:30
2007-01-31 13:30:55
2007-01-31 13:30:55.800
```

- Documaker's Archive Application Index Data Format Definition file (APPIDX.DFD) fields must remain as CHAR\_ARRAY for the INT\_TYPE and EXT\_TYPE with the appropriate INT\_LENGTH and EXT\_LENGTH values for representing the data in string format.

## SETTING UP AUTOMATIC CATEGORY OVERRIDES

You can categorize DPA documents from Documaker Server Archive into Documange. This makes it easier to do searches and queries when retrieving via Documange Bridge. It also provides more flexibility in using Extended Document Properties (XDPs), which allows for different XDPs in the different document categories so transactions can store different relative data in the XDPs.

You can use input data to set the Documange document's Category property during archival via the Documaker Server Archive interface (DMIA). The default value for this property comes from the FileType INI option during archival, but you can also dynamically override the default with input data using this INI option:

```
< POField2Document >
  ObjectClass = AppIdx_Field
```

During retrieval, the Category Document property can be loaded into the Documaker AppIdx\_Field using this INI option:

```
< PODocument2Field >
  AppIdx_Field = ObjectClass
```

Extended Document Properties (XDPs) are based on the Category value set during ingestion. Mappings to XDPs only occur if the XDP for the Document Category exists by name. Otherwise, they are ignored and no error is generated. This allows different data to be populated into the XDPs based on the category used.

Here is an example of how you would override the default document category of DPA with the APPIDX.DFD field value of the field FormSet:

```
< DMIA:RPEX2ARC >
;   FileType is the default Category/ObjectClass value
  FileType = DAP
< PODocument2Field >
;   Category/ObjectClass is overridden by the value in the AppIdx
;   field FormSet
  FormSet = ObjectClass
< POField2Document >
;   Category/ObjectClass is overridden by the value in the AppIdx
;   field FormSet
  ObjectClass = FormSet
```

Keep in mind the APPIDX.DFD field used to override the document Category in the INI options POField2Document and PODocument2Field can not be used to also set other folder or document properties. For instance, in the example another entry for FormSet can not be used to map FormSet to another folder or document or XDP field.

## APPENDIX A

# Setting Up Archive/ Retrieval Configurations

This section outlines several commonly-used archive/retrieval scenarios. Click on a scenario to quickly go to that discussion:

- [DB2 Server on OS/390 – Windows Client on page 364](#)
- [DB2 Server on Windows – Windows Client on page 376](#)
- [DB2 Server and Client on Windows on page 381](#)
- [SQL Server on Windows – ODBC Client on Windows on page 385](#)
- [IDS on Windows – DB2 Archive on OS/390 on page 387](#)
- [Creating an OS/390 Database on page 390](#)

---

**NOTE:** Windows refers to 32-bit Windows operating systems, such as Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

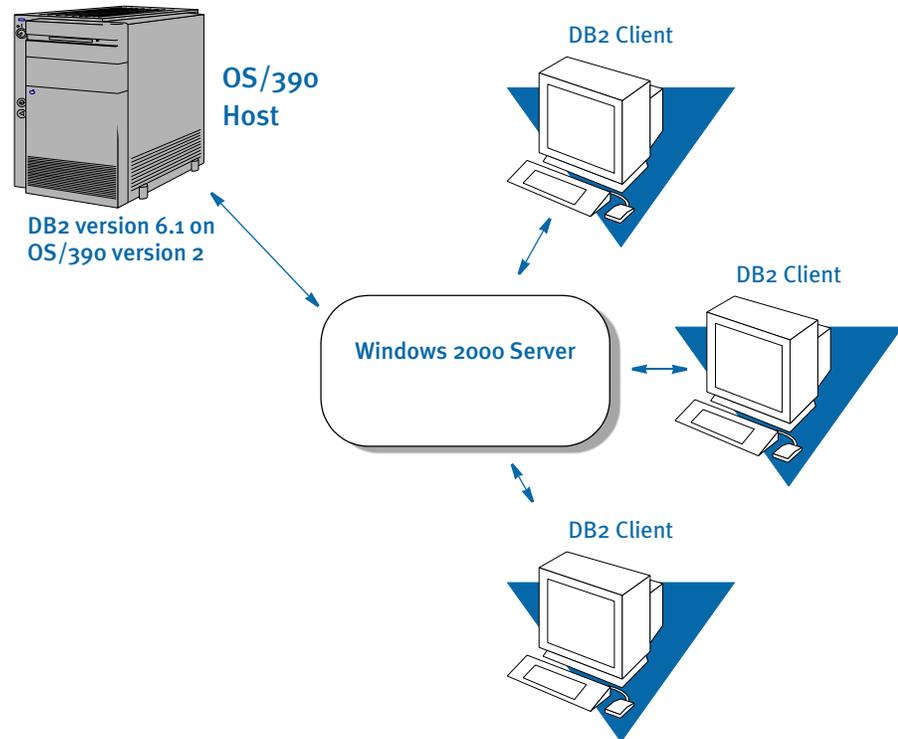
Skywire Software recommends that you only use uppercase for table and column names when storing information in a database. For instance, avoid CustomerName, Customername, or customername and instead use CUSTOMERNAME.

Database management systems (DBMS) vary in how they handle case issues so it is best to standardize on uppercase. With version 11.2, all column names must be in uppercase.

---

## DB2 SERVER ON OS/390 — WINDOWS CLIENT

For this scenario, assume you are running DB2 version 6.1 on OS/390 version 2. For the DB2 client, assume you are running Windows 2000 or Windows XP.



The DB2 Distributed Data Facility is an optional part of the DB2 product on OS/390. The Distributed Data Facility must be configured and running for the DB2 client (on 32-bit Windows) to communicate with the DB2 Server (on OS/390).

## CONFIGURING THE SERVER

### Getting the DB2 location name and LUNAME

You can use the PRTLOGMP DB2 utility to print a report that lists the communication record of the DB2 Bootstrap Dataset. In the communication record you can find the DB2 location and LU name for that DB2 subsystem. The location and LU name are needed when configuring the SNA Server and DB2 on the 2000 Server.

Here is an example of the JCL used to run PRTLOGMP is shown follows, along with the communication record portion of the output from the PRTLOGMP utility.

```
/* * COPY JOBCARD HERE ...
/* *
//S1 EXEC PGM=DSNJU004
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=TDB1.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*

**** DISTRIBUTED DATA FACILITY ****
COMMUNICATION RECORD
15:35:33 OCTOBER 12, 1999
LOCATION=USFSIMVSTDB1 LUNAME=DB2TDB1 PASSWORD=(NULL)
DSNJ200I DSNJU004 PRINT LOG UTILITY PROCESSING COMPLETED
SUCCESSFULLY
```

### Defining the SNA server's APPC LU in VTAM

The following Switched Major Node (SNA) is contained in SYS1.VTAMLST(SWoE40C):

```
* * * * *
*
* VTAM SWITCHED MAJOR NODE
* FOR MICROSOFT SNA SERVER COMMUNICATIONS
*
* * * * *
*
SW0E40C VBUILD TYPE=SWNET,MAXGRP=3,MAXNO=30
*
CP00010 PU ADDR=40,CPNAME=CL00010, X
DISCNT=NO,MAXDATA=16384,USSTAB=USSFSIS, X
MAXPATH=1,MAXOUT=7,PASSLIM=7, X
VPACING=7,PACING=7,SSCPFM=USSSCS
*
CL00010 LU LOCADDR=0.
```

### Defining the DB2 Application Major Node in VTAM

The following Application Major Node is contained in SYS1.VTAMLST(DB2TDB1A):

```
* * * * *
*
* VTAM APPLICATION NODE FOR DB2
*
* * * * *
*
DB2TDB1A VBUILD TYPE=APPL
DB2TDB1 APPL APPC=YES, X
ATNLOSS=ALL, X
AUTH=(ACQ), X
AUTOSES=1, X
DMINWNL=25, X
DMINWNR=25, X
DSESLIM=50, X
MODETAB=, X
SECACPT=ALREADYV, X
SRBEXIT=YES, X
SYNCLVL=SYNCPT, X
VERIFY=NONE, X
VPACING=2
```

## Setting Up the Windows 2000 Server (Middle Tier)

### Installing and configuring Microsoft's SNA Server

To set up the middle tier, first install Microsoft SNA Server version 4, with Service Pack 3 applied, onto a server running Windows 2000 Server. Then Install SNA Server into its own domain called *USRo4SNA*.

Here are the steps for installing the SNA Server:

- 1 Insert the install CD into CD drive. Select Start, Run and enter this command:

```
e:\sna40\i386\setup.exe
```

Go through the normal set up process. Enter this server domain information:

In this field	Enter
Domain	<i>your domain name</i>
Account	<i>your account user name</i>
Password	(leave blank)
Confirm Password	(leave blank)

Click Ok when finished.

- 2 Choose *Primary Configuration Server*. Then choose *Named Pipe, TCP/IP, IPX/SPX*.
- 3 Choose *IPX/SPX Directory Service*. Then choose *Bindery (Netware 3.x, 4.x, 5.x or 6.x)* and *SNA Server Subdomain (USRo4SNA)*.
- 4 Next, use the Microsoft SNA Server Manager to make the following definitions. To start this tool select Start, Programs, Microsoft SNA Server (Common), Manager. Then right click the SNA Server you created in the first three steps. Choose Insert, Link Services. From the Insert Link Services window select your adapter and protocol (DLC 802.2 Link Service).
- 5 Select and right click the SNA Server you configured (USRSRV04). Select Properties.

The control point configured here is for incoming connections only and is not used for this outgoing connection to OS/390. You should, however, configure it. Use the Network Name (P390) and Control Point name (CLO0010). Accept the defaults on the Server Configuration tab.

---

**NOTE:** The *network name* matches the value of the NETID parameter in the VTAM startup parameters in SYS1. VTAMLST(ATCSTR00). The control point name (CLO0010) here matches the value of the CPNAME parameter of the VTAM Switched Major Node on OS/390, in SYS1.VTAMLST(SWoE40C).

---

- 6 Select and right click on Connections under the SNA Server you configured. Move to APPC and select *Local LU*. The Local LU Alias can be whatever you want but in this scenario it's the same as the LU Name (CLO0010).

Enter the network name (P390). Enter an LU Name that matches the control point name used above (CLO0010). Click the Advanced tab. Check *Member Of Outgoing Local APPC LU Pool*. Make sure that the LU 6.2 Type is set to Independent then click Ok.

- 7 Select and right click on Connections under the SNA Server you configured. Move to APPC and select *Remote LU*. Use the Connection List to select your connection (ETH2MVS). The LU Alias can be whatever you want but in this scenario it's the same as the LU Name (DB2TDB1) — remember this is the remote LU Name.

Enter the network name (P390) and LU Name (DB2TDB1) and uninterpreted name (DB2TDB1). Click the Option tab. Accept the defaults. The PLU for DB2 | OS/390 is *independent* to support parallel sessions. Click Ok.

---

**NOTE:** Remote LU Name here should match the APPL name of the DB2 application major node in SYS1.VTAMLST(DB2TDB1A). Note that the member name (DB2TDB1A) cannot be the same as the APPL name (DB2TDB1) within it.

---

- 8 Move to Configured Users, right click, select Insert, and click on User. Highlight *Everyone* and click Add. Go back to the SNA Manager window where you should now see *Everyone* under Configured Users. Right click on *Everyone*, choose Properties and then click the APPC Defaults tab.

Click the list for Local APPC LU and choose (CLOoo10). Click the list for the Remote APPC LU and choose (DB2TDB1).

- 9 Move down to APPC Modes, right click, select Insert, APPC, and click on Mode Definition. Enter the mode name (IBMRDB). Click the Limits tab. Enter the Parallel Session Limit (10), Minimum Contention Winner Limit (3), Partner Minimum Contention Winner Limit (3), and Automatic Activation Limit (2). Accept the defaults on the Characteristics tab and click Ok.

- 10 Move to CPIC Symbolic Names, right click, select Insert, APPC. Click on CPIC Symbolic Name. This name can be anything you want but it must later match something in DB2 on Windows 2000. This name is case sensitive.

For this scenario, use *DB2CPIC* (in all caps). Choose Conversation Security (Same), Mode Name (IBMRDB). Click the Partner Information tab. In the Partner TP Name area click SNA Service TP (in hex) and enter **07F6C4C2**. In the Partner LU Name area click Alias and enter **Partner LU alias (DB2TDB1)**. Click Ok.

The CPIC Symbolic Name (DB2CPIC) must match the destination name when you define the node entry in DB2 on the Windows 2000 Server (see the following section).

## Installing and Configuring Microsoft's SNA Server

For this scenario, you should install Microsoft SNA Server version 4, with Service Pack 3 applied, onto a Server running Windows 2000 Server. Install SNA Server into its own domain and call the domain *USR04SNA*.

Follow these steps to install SNA Server 4.0 SP3:

- 1 Insert the install CD into CD-ROM drive. Go to Start, Run and enter:  

```
e:\sna40\i386\setup.exe
```

 Then click Ok. Go through the normal set up process.
- 2 Choose Primary Configuration Server. Then choose *Named Pipe, TCP/IP, IPX/SPX*.
- 3 Choose IPX/SPX Directory Service. Then choose *Bindery (Netware 3.x, 4.x, 5.x or 6.x)*.
- 4 Choose *SNA Server Subdomain (USR04SNA)*.
- 5 Next, set up this server domain information:

Field	Enter
Domain	<i>your domain name</i>
Account	<i>your account user name</i>
Password	(leave blank)
Confirm Password	(leave blank)

Click Ok.

### Configuring SNA Server 4.0 SP3

The following definitions are made using the Microsoft SNA Server Manager tool. To start this tool select Start, Programs, Microsoft SNA Server, Manager.

- 1 Right click the server you created. Choose Insert, Link Services. From the Insert Link Services window select your adapter and protocol (DLC 802.2 Link Service). Click Add. The properties window for that protocol appears. Click Ok.
- 2 Expand the server. Right click on SNA Service and choose Properties. The control point configured here is for incoming connections only and is not used for this outgoing connection to OS/390.

You should, however, configure it. Enter the network name (P390) and control point name (DL00010). The comment field is optional. Click Ok.

---

**NOTE:** The *network name* matches the value of the NETID parameter in the VTAM startup parameters in SYS1.VTAMLST(ATCSTR00). The *control point name* (DL00010) matches the value of the CPNAME parameter of the VTAM Switched Major Node on OS/390, in SYS1.VTAMLST(SW0E40D).

---

- 3 Highlight SNA Service and on the right hand side of the screen click the Connections tab. Right click the Connections tab. Choose Insert, APPC, Local LU. The Local LU Alias can be set to is whatever you want but for this scenario set it to the LU Name (DL00010). Enter the LU Alias (DL00010). If you tab to the next field the network name and LU name automatically appear in those fields. If this information does not appear, enter **P390** as the network name and **DL00010** as the LU Name. The comment is optional. Click the Advanced tab. Check Member of Default Outgoing Local APPC LU Pool. Make sure *Independent* is selected for the section LU 6.2 type. Click Ok.
- 4 Right click the Connections tab and choose Insert, Connection, 802.2.
- 5 On the General tab, enter a name for your connection, such as ETH2MVS. Choose SNADLC1 (or whatever the option may be) for the link service. The Comment is optional. In the Remote End section, choose *Host System*. In the Allowed Directions section, choose *Outgoing Calls*. In the Activation section choose *On Server Startup*.
- 6 On the Address tab, enter your remote network address, such as 10005A6EA879. Set the Remote SAP Address to **0x04**.

- 7 On the System Identification tab, make sure the following information is filled in. In the Local Node Name section, the network name should be *P390*, the control point name should be *DL00010*, and the local node ID should be *05D FFFFF*. In the XID Type section, *Format 3* should be selected.

In the Remote Node Name section, the network name should be *P390* and the control point name should be *USS3270*. Make no changes on the 802.2 DLC tab. Click Ok.

**NOTE:** The Remote LU Name should match the APPL name of the DB2 application major node in *SYS1.VTAMLST(DB2TDB1A)*. Note that the member name (*DB2TDB1A*) cannot be the same as the APPL name (*DB2TDB1*) within it.

- 8 Right click on APPC Modes. Choose Insert, APPC, Mode Definition. On the General tab, enter a mode name, such as *IBMRDB*. The Comment field is optional. On the Limits tab, enter **10** for the parallel session Limit. Enter **3** for the minimum contention winner limit. Enter **3** for the partner minimum contention winner limit. Enter **2** for the automatic activation limit. Leave the Characteristics, Partners, and Compression tabs as is. Click Ok.
- 9 Highlight SNA Service. Right click the Connections tab on the right side of your screen. Choose Insert, APPC, Remote LU. On the General tab, choose *ETH2MVS*. The LU alias can be whatever you want but in this scenario it's *DB2TDB1*. Make sure the following information is in these fields:

Field	Entry
Network Name	P390
LU Name	same as your alias DB2TDB1
Uninterpreted Name	same as your alias DB2TDB1
Comment	optional

On the Options tab, choose *IBMRDB* for the implicit incoming mode. Leave everything else as is. Click Ok.

- 10 Move to Configured Users, right click, select Insert, and click on User. Highlight *Everyone* and click Add. *Everyone* appears in the Add Names box. Click Ok. Go to the SNA Manager Window where you should now see *Everyone* under Configured Users. Right click on *Everyone*, choose Properties, and then click the APPC Defaults tab. Choose *DL0010* as the local APPC LU. Then choose *DB2TDB1* as the remote APPC LU. Click Ok.
- 11 Move to CPIC Symbolic Names, right click, select Insert, select APPC, and click *CPIC Symbolic Name*. This name must match something in DB2 on the Windows 2000 server and is case sensitive. For this scenario, enter **DB2CPIC**.

- 12 Choose *Same* as the Conversation Security and *IBMRDB* as the mode name. The Comment field is optional. Click the Partner Information tab. In the Partner TP Name area, click *SNA Service TP (in hex)* and enter **07F6C4C2**. In the Partner LU Name area, click *Alias* and enter *Partner LU alias (DB2TDB1)*. Click Ok.

---

**NOTE:** The CPIC symbolic name (DB2CPIC) must match the destination name when you define the node entry in DB2 on the Windows 2000 Server. This is discussed further in the following topic.

---

## Setting Up DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server

On the Windows 2000 Server, this scenario assumes DB2 version 8.1 for Windows is installed with version 2.3.2 of the Distributed Database Connection Services.

### Installing DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server

Follow these steps:

- 1 Insert the installation CD and go to Start, Run. Then enter the following command, substituting the appropriate drive letter for the CD drive:

```
e:\setup /I=LANGUAGE
```

Where *LANGUAGE* represents the two-character country code for your language (for example, EN for English).

Click Ok.

- 2 The installation routine asks if you would like to view the read me file. If not, click Next.
- 3 Check IBM Database 2, select the Server option, and check Distribution Database Connection Services (DDCS). Then select the Multi-User gateway option. Click Next.
- 4 Choose *Try and Buy Only* for both options then click Next.
- 5 Choose Full installation and click Next. Accept the default destination directory and drive letter and click Install. The installation routine asks if you want to reboot:

```
Yes, reboot  
OR  
No, wait to reboot
```

Choose one of these options and click Finish.

All of the following definition descriptions were performed using DB2's Database Director. To start this tool choose Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Database Director.

### Configure the DB2 instance

Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the Database Managers icon to expand it. Then right click on the DB2 icon and choose Configure. On the Protocols tab, enter db2inst1 in the Service Name field. Click Ok.

### Defining an OS/390 node

Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the DB2 icon to expand it, then click the plus sign to the left of the Directories icon to expand it. Double-click the Node Directory icon, then choose Directory Entry, Catalog.

- Enter a Node Name (OS/390), an optional comment, choose the protocol type (APPC) and the destination name (DB2CPIC), and then choose the security type (Program). Click Ok.
- Defining a system database entry** Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the DB2 icon to expand it, then click the plus sign to the left of the Directories icon to expand it. Double-click the System Database Directory icon, then choose Directory Entry, Catalog.
- On the General tab, choose Type for the Remote radio button. Click the Remote tab and enter the database name (ARCDB) and alias (ARCDB). Choose Node from the list (OS/390). *Do not* click the box labeled DDCS or Back level Database. Click Ok.
- Updating TCP/IP values on the Windows 2000 server** The next step is to update TCP/IP-related values on the Windows 2000 server. For information on how to do this, see [Updating TCP/IP values on the Windows 2000 server on page 371](#).
- Defining a database connection services entry** Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the DB2 icon to expand it, then click the plus sign to the left of the Directories icon to expand it. Double-click the Database Connection Services Directory icon, then choose Directory Entry, Catalog.
- Choose Database (ARCDB). For Target Database, enter the location name for the DB2 subsystem on OS/390.

## Installing and Configuring DB2 on a Windows 2000 Server

This scenario assumes DB2 for Windows was installed and DB2 Server was at version 8.1.

All of the following definition descriptions were performed using DB2's Control Center tool. To start this tool choose Start, Programs, DB2 for Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center.

- Defining an OS/390 system** Right click on Systems and choose Add. On the Add System window, click the drop down arrow for the operating system. Choose *MVS/ESA*, and enter **P390** for the system name. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- Defining a DB2 instance** Expand the Host System (P390) you created in the previous topic. Right click on Instances and choose Add. Enter names such as *DB2TDB1* as a remote instance and *DB2* as a destination name. Choose *APPC* as the protocol. In the Security Section of this window, choose *Same* and click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- Defining an OS/390 database** Expand out the newly created Instance from the previous section (DB2TDB1). Right click on Databases and choose Add. Enter a database name and alias, such as ARCDB, and click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.

## Setting Up Universal Database on Windows 2000

### Installing Universal Database

This involves installing Universal Database (UDB) version 6.1 EE:

- 1 On the Welcome window, click Next. Then select the DB2 Enterprise Edition option and click Next. Then click Custom.
- 2 Select the components you need. Make sure the Destination folder is correct and click Next. The Configure DB2 Services window appears.

3 Make sure there is a DB2 instance (DB2) and an Administration Server (DB2DASoo) then click Next.

4 Check the user name and password for the Administration Server.

```
username = dbadmin  
password = (password)
```

Click Next.

5 On the Start Configuring Files window, click Next. Then decide if you want to restart your computer and click Finish.

### Configuring Universal Database

Follow these steps to configure UDB version 6.1 EE:

1 Choose Start, Programs, DB2 for Windows, Client Configuration Assistant.

2 Click Add Database if you have just installed. Click Add to add databases if you have already created databases. The Add Database Smart Guide appears.

3 On the Source tab (step 1), choose the Manually Configure a Connection to a DB2 Database option and click Next.

4 On the Protocol tab (step 2), choose TCP/IP as the protocol. Select OS/390 as the target operating system. Click Next.

5 On the TCP/IP tab (step 3), set the following fields:

In this field	Enter
Host Name	<b>os390</b>
Port Number	<b>446</b>
Service Name	(leave blank)

Click Next.

6 On the Database tab (step 4), set the following fields:

In this field	Enter
Location Name	<b>USDCIOS39DSN1</b>
Database Alias	<b>ARCDB</b>
Comment	(optional)

Click Next.

7 On the ODBC tab (step 5), check the Register this Database for ODBC option. Then select the appropriate data source. Click Done.

### Updating TCP/IP-related Values on a Windows 2000 Server

Follow these steps to update TCP/IP values on a Windows 2000 Server.

- 1 Enter these lines into the services file (c:\winnt\system32\drivers\etc\services):

```
db2inst1 3702/tcp # db2 port
db2inst1 3703/tcp # db2 port interrupt
```

- 2 Go to Programs, Start, Settings, Control Panel, System and choose the Environment tab. Enter a system variable called **DB2COMM** and set its value to **APPC, TCP/IP**.

This indicates the communication protocols DB2 will use — APPC talks to the OS/390 Host and TCP/IP talks to the Windows clients.

- 3 Add a system variable called **DB2CODEPAGE** and set its value to **850**.
- 4 Reboot your system to apply these changes.

## COMMON DB2 ERRORS

Here is a list of some common DB2 errors:

Error	Description
SQL30073 “119C” Parameter value “” is not Supported	This is a problem with CCSID or code page. Select Start, Control Panel, System, and click the Environments tab. Enter a system variable called <b>DB2CODEPAGE</b> and set the value to <b>850</b> . You must reboot for the change to take affect.
SQL30081NA communication error has been detected	This problem is related to the SNA Connectivity parameters.
Protocol specific error 9	First look at the CPIC symbolic destination name and make sure everything is correct. Also check the Partner LU and Local LU definitions. If you change any of these parameters only a stop and restart of SNA Server is required.
Protocol specific error 1	The first thing to look at is the Link. Make sure it has started and you have a valid connection to the host.
Protocol specific error 2	Look at your LU definitions for both the Local LU and Partner LU. Make sure they are correctly defined.

## SETTING UP CLIENTS

This scenario assumes DB2 for Windows version 8.1 is installed and the Distributed Database Connection Services is at version 2.3.2.

All of the following definition descriptions were performed using DB2’s Database Director. To start this tool choose Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Database Director.

### Defining a DB2/2000 node

Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the DB2 icon to expand it, then click the plus sign to the left of the Directories icon to expand it. Double-click the Nodes Directory icon, then choose Directory Entry, Catalog.

### Defining a system database entry

Enter a node name (NT04), an optional comment, and choose the protocol type (TCP/IP). For the host name, enter your server name and for the service name enter **DB2INST1**. Click Ok.

Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the DB2 icon to expand it, then click the plus sign to the left of the Directories icon to expand it. Double-click the System Database Directory icon, then choose Directory Entry, Catalog.

On the General tab, choose Remote for Type. Click the Remote tab and enter the database name (ARCDB) and alias (ARCDB). Choose Node from the list (NT04).

*Do not* click the boxes labeled DDCS or Back Level Database. Click Ok.

### Updating TCP/IP-related values on a Windows client

Follow these steps so the system can update TCP/IP related values on a Windows client:

- 1 So the system can find the host name (see [Configuring SNA Server 4.0 SP3 on page 368](#)), make this entry in the hosts file (c:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts):

```
10.8.10.211    USRSRV04
```

The left indicates the IP address of the server and right indicates the host name.

- 2 Enter these lines in the services file (c:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\services):

```
db2inst1 3702/tcp # db2 port
db2inst1 3703/tcp # db2 port interrupt
```

- 3 Go to Programs, Settings, Control Panel, System, and click the Environment tab. Enter a system variable called *DB2COMM* and set its value to *TCP/IP*. This indicates the communication protocols DB2 will use (TCP/IP) to talk to the Windows Server. Also add a system variable called *DB2CODEPAGE* and set its value to *850*. Reboot your system to apply these changes.

## Setting Up the INI Options for the DB2 Driver

Here are the INI options for the DB2 driver:

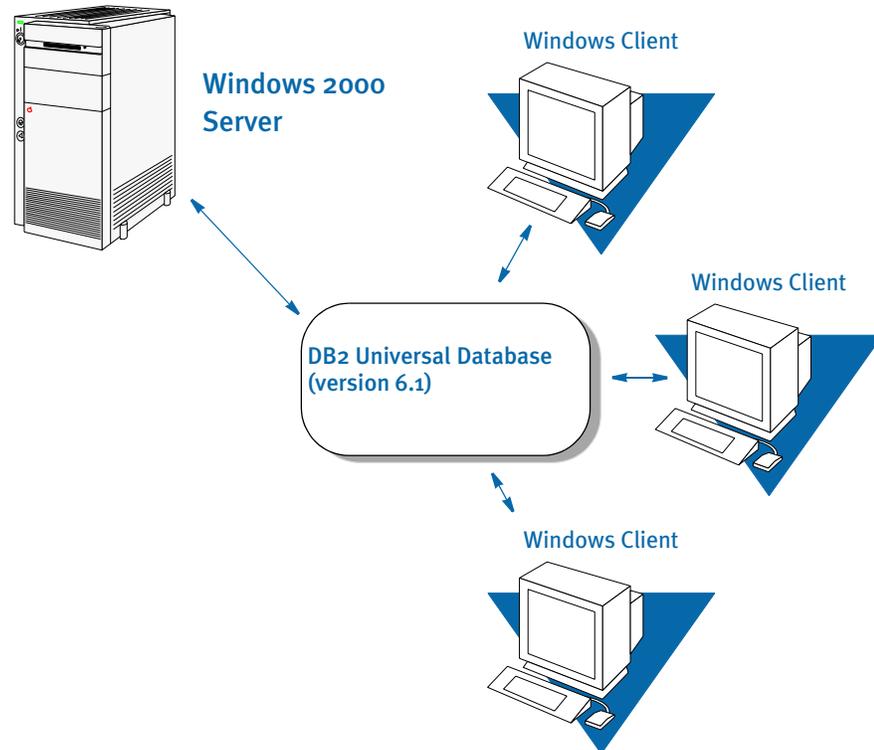
```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd
  AppIdx = APPIDX
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CARPath =
  Catalog = CATALOG
  RestartTable = RESTART
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  BindFile = c:\rel10\fap400\w32bin\db2lib.bnd
  Database = ARCDB
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  UserID = (OS/390 user ID)
  PassWd = (OS/390 password)
< DBTable:APPIDX >
  DBHandler = DB2
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >
  DBHandler = DB2
```

```
< DBTable:CATALOG >
  DBHandler = DB2
< DBTable:RESTART >
  DBHandler = DB2
< DB2_FileConvert >
  APPIDX = DAP102_APP_R1
  Archive = DAP102_ARC_R1
  Catalog = DAP102_CAT_R1
  Restart = DAP102_RES_R1
< Trigger2Archive >
  Company = Company
  LOB = Lob
  PolicyNum = PolicyNum
  RunDate = RunDate
```

These table names are examples of the names you can use.

## DB2 SERVER ON WINDOWS — WINDOWS CLIENT

For this scenario, assume you have a DB2 (version 6.1) Universal Database set up on a Windows 2000 server.



### SETTING UP A DB2 DATABASE ON THE SERVER

Follow these steps to set up a DB2 Database on the server.

- 1 Go to Start, Programs, DB2 for Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center. The Control Center window appears. Expand Systems and you should see a server name such as ARCD6.

If so, go to step 3. If the server name is not listed, go to step 2.

- 2 Right click on Systems and choose Add. The Add System window appears. This is where you set up the system information DB2 uses to find the location of the database you are going to archive to.

Go to the Protocol field and select *Named Pipe*. The Protocol Parameters area changes, now displaying a Computer Name field. Click Refresh to retrieve information about the local system. The server name appears under the System Name field. If you click on that name the system places it in the System Name field. Fill in other pertinent information. The Comment field is optional. Click Apply when finished.

A confirmation message appears. Click Close. This should take you back to the Control Center window. The server name should now be listed under Systems. Go to step 3.

- 3 Expand the system name. You will now see Instances listed. Right click on Instances and choose Add. Click Refresh. This retrieves a list of instances on the server.  
  
Choose DB2. Enter **DB2** in the Instance Name field. The Comment field is optional. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. This should take you back to the Control Center window. The DB2 instance should now be listed under Instances.
- 4 Expand DB2. You will see Databases listed, right click on Databases and choose Create, New. The Create Database Smartguide window appears.
- 5 Enter the name of the new database (such as ARCD6) in the Database Name field and the Database Alias field. The Comment field is optional. Click Done. This takes you back to the Control Center window. The newly created database will be listed under Databases.

### Setting Up a Client for DB2 VERSION 6.1

This topic discusses archiving to a DB2 version 6.1 database (Universal Database) on a Windows 2000 Server using an ODBC driver and the native DB2 driver.

#### Archiving to a remote DB2 database using an ODBC driver

Follow these steps to set up a DB2 remote database on Windows 2000 Server:

- 1 Go to Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center. The Control Center window appears. Right click on Systems, then choose Add.
- 2 An Add System window appears. This is where you set up the system information DB2 uses to find the location of the database (Windows 2000 Server). Click Refresh and the server name should appear in the box below the System Name field. Click the server name and the server information appears in the fields. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- 3 You are now back to the Control Center window again. Make sure the new system name appears when you expand Systems. If the new system name is listed under Systems then expand that out also. You should then find Instances listed under your system name. Right click on Instances and choose Add.
- 4 An Add Instance window will appear. Click Refresh. This will retrieve a list of instances on your local system. Choose DB2 if it is not already in the Remote Instance field. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- 5 Expand Instances and expand DB2. There will be Databases listed under the DB2 instance, right click and choose Add.
- 6 An Add Database window appears. Click Refresh to retrieve the names of databases currently set up on the server. Choose the correct database from the list, such as ARCD6. Enter the name of the database in the Alias field. The Comment field is optional. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. Expand Databases and make sure the new database appears.

#### Setting up an ODBC data source

Follow these steps to set up an ODBC data source using Windows 2000:

- 1 Go to Start, Settings, Control Panel, ODBC. You are now viewing User Data Sources.

- 2 Click Add to add an IBM DB2 ODBC driver. The Create New Data Source window appears.
- 3 Choose *IBM DB2 ODBC Driver*. Click Finish. The ODBC IBM DB2 Driver – Add window appears.
- 4 Click the down arrow in the Data Source Name field, choose the correct database name, such as ARCD6. The Description field is optional, but it should be there if you specified it when you created the database. Click Ok. The User Data Sources tab of the ODBC Data Source Administrator window appears. Make sure your new data source is there, along with its corresponding driver, then click Ok.

### Setting up INI options for the ODBC driver

Follow these steps to set up the INI options specific to the ODBC driver:

- 1 Set up the DBHandler:ODBC control group as shown below.

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  Debug = No
  Server = (such as ARCD6-the newly-created data source name.)
  BLOBSupportForDB2ODBC =
  UserID = (Windows user ID)
  Passwd = (Windows password)
```

Use the BLOBSupportForDB2ODBC option to tell the Archive/Retrieval programs the version of DB2 being accessed can support BLOB (Binary Large Object) data types. This INI option, along with specifying BLOB as the data type for the CARData field in the CARFILE.DFD file, tells the Archive/Retrieval programs to process the field as a BLOB. If you omit this option or set it to No, the Archive/Retrieval programs translate any CARFILE.DFD data type request of BLOB to LONG VARCHAR.

- 2 The DBTable:XXX control groups determine what tables are used by looking at the ArcRet control group. The ArcRet control group should look like the one shown here:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd
  AppIdx = APPIDX
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CARPath =
  Catalog = CATALOG
  RestartTable = RESTART
  ExactMatch = No
  Key1 = Company
  Key2 = Lob
  KeyID = PolicyNum
```

- 3 For all the tables listed above, add these control groups:

```
< DBTable:APPIDX >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:CATALOG >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:RESTART >
```

```
DBHandler = ODBC
```

- 4** The ODBC\_FileConvert control group contains the table names of each table to be created. Here is an example, your table names may differ:

```
< ODBC_FileConvert >
  APPIDX = FSIV100_APPIDX
  Archive = FSIV100_ARCHIVE
  Catalog = FSIV100_CATALOG
  Restart = FSIV100_RESTART
```

- 5** Set the Archival control group as shown here:

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
```

## Archiving to a Remote DB2 Database Using the Native DB2 Driver

Follow these steps to archive to a remote DB2 database using DB2's native driver. These steps assume you are using Windows 2000.

### Setting up a DB2 database

First set up a DB2 database:

- 1** Go to Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center. Once the Control Center appears, right click on Systems, then choose Add. An Add System window appears.
- 2** On the Add System window you set up system information DB2 uses to find the location of the database (Windows 2000 Server). Click Refresh and the server name should appear below the System Name field. Click the server name and the server information appears in the fields. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. You return to the Control Center window.
- 3** Make sure the new system name appears when you expand Systems. If the new system name is listed under Systems, expand that out also. You should find Instances listed under your system name. Right click on Instances and choose Add. An Add Instance window will appear.
- 4** Click Refresh to retrieve a list of instances on your local system. Choose DB2 if it is not already in the Remote Instance field. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- 5** Expand Instances and expand DB2. There will be Databases listed under the DB2 instance, right click and choose Add. An Add Database window appears.
- 6** Click Refresh to retrieve the names of databases are currently set up on the server. Choose the correct database from the list, such as ARCD6. Enter the name of the database in the Alias field. The Comment field is optional. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. Expand Databases to make sure the new database appears.

### Setting up the INI options for the DB2 driver

Follow these steps to add the INI setting the native DB2 driver will use:

- 1** Set up the DBHandler:DB2 control group as shown below.

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  BindFile = c:\rel10\fp400\w32bin\db2lib.bnd
  CreateTable = Yes
```

```
CreateIndex = No  
Database = (such as ARCDB6, a remote database name)  
UserID = (Windows 2000 user ID)  
Passwd = (Windows 2000 password)
```

- 2** The DBTable:XXX control groups determine what tables are used by looking at the ArcRet control group, which should look like the following.

```
< ArcRet >  
AppIdxDfd = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd  
AppIdx = APPIDX  
CARFile = ARCHIVE  
CARPath =  
Catalog = CATALOG  
RestartTable = RESTART
```

- 3** For all the tables listed above, add the following control groups:

```
< DBTable:RESTART >  
DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:CATALOG >  
DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:APPIDX >  
DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >  
DBHandler = DB2
```

- 4** Make sure the DB2\_FileConvert control group contains the table names of each table to be created. Here is an example, your table names may differ:

```
< DB2_FileConvert >  
APPIDX = DAP102_APP_R1  
Archive = DAP102_ARC_R1  
Catalog = DAP102_CAT_R1  
Restart = DAP102_RES_R1
```

- 5** Set the Archival control group as shown here:

```
< Archival >  
ArchiveMem = Yes
```

## DB2 SERVER AND CLIENT ON WINDOWS

This topic discusses archiving to a local DB2 version 6.1 database using an ODBC driver and the native DB2 driver.

### SETTING UP A DB2 DATABASE

This scenario shows how to archive to a DB2 database using an ODBC driver on Windows 2000.

- 1 Go to Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center. Once the Control Center appears, right click on Systems, then choose Add. An Add System window appears.
- 2 On the Add System window you set up system information DB2 uses to find the location of the database (local Windows 2000). Go to the Protocol field and click the down arrow, select *Named Pipe*. The Protocol Parameters area changes, displaying the Computer Name field. Type in the computer's network name here and click Retrieve.

The program retrieves information about the local system. Once that information is retrieved you will see names in the System Name and Remote Instance fields. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. You return to the Control Center window.

- 3 Make sure the new system name appears when you expand Systems. If the new system name is listed under Systems, expand that also. You should then find Instances listed under your system name. Right click Instances and choose Add.
- 4 An Add Instance window will appear. Click Refresh. You will see a list of instances on your local system. Choose DB2 and click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- 5 Expand Instances and expand DB2. You will see Databases listed, right click and choose Add. The Add Database window appears.
- 6 Enter the name of the new database, such as ARCDDBL, in the Database Name field and the Alias field. The Comment Field is optional. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. Expand Databases and make sure that the new database appears.

### Setting up an ODBC data source

This scenario uses Windows 2000.

- 1 Choose Start, Settings, Control Panel, ODBC. You are now viewing User Data Sources. Click Add to add an IBM DB2 DBC driver. The Create New Data Source window appears
- 2 Choose *IBM DB2 ODBC Driver*. Click Finish. The ODBC IBM DB2 Driver - Add window appears.
- 3 Click the down arrow in the Data Source Name field and choose the correct database name. The Description field is optional, but should appear if you specified it when you created the database. Click Ok. The User Data Sources tab of the ODBC Data Source Administrator window appears. Make sure that your newly created data source is there and its corresponding driver is correct then click Ok.

### Setting up INI options for ODBC

Follow these steps to set up the INI options specific to ODBC:

**1** Set up the DBHandler:ODBC control group as shown below.

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  Debug = No
  Server = (such as ARCDBL - The data source name)
  BLOBSupportForDB2ODBC =
  UserID = (Windows user ID)
  Passwd = (Windows password)
```

Use the BLOBSupportForDB2ODBC option to tell the Archive/Retrieval programs the version of DB2 being accessed can support BLOB (Binary Large Object) data types. This INI option, along with specifying BLOB as the data type for the CARData field in the CARFILE.DFD file, tells the Archive/Retrieval programs to process the field as a BLOB. If you omit this option or set it to No, the Archive/Retrieval programs translate any CARFILE.DFD data type request of BLOB to LONG VARCHAR.

**2** Use the DBTable:XXX control groups to determine what tables are used by looking at the ArcRet control group. Here is an example:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd
  AppIdx = APPIDX
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CarPath =
  Catalog = CATALOG
  RestartTable = RESTART
```

**3** For all the tables listed above, add these control groups:

```
< DBTable:APPIDX >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:CATALOG >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:RESTART >
  DBHandler = ODBC
```

**4** Use the ODBC\_FileConvert control group to list the table names of each table to be created. Here is an example, your table names may differ:

```
< ODBC_FileConvert >
  APPIDX = FSIV100_APPIDX
  Archive = FSIV100_ARCHIVE
  Catalog = FSIV100_CATALOG
  Restart = FSIV100_RESTART
```

**5** Set the Archival control group as shown here.

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
```

## Archiving to a Local DB2 Database Using the Native DB2 Driver

### Setting up the DB2 database

This scenario uses Windows 2000.

- 1 Select Start, Programs, DB2 For Windows, Administration Tools, Control Center. Once the Control Center window appears, right click on Systems, then choose Add. The Add System window appears.
- 2 On the Add System window you set up system information DB2 uses to find the location of the database (local Windows 2000). Go to the Protocol field and click the down arrow, select *Named Pipe*. The Protocol Parameters area then displays a Computer Name field. Enter the computer's network name and click Retrieve.

The program retrieves information about the local system. Once that information appears, you see names in the System Name and Remote Instance fields. Click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close. The Control Center window appears.

- 3 Make sure the new system name appears when you expand Systems. If the new system name is listed under Systems, expand that also. You should then find Instances listed under your system name. Right click Instances and choose Add. The Add Instance window appears.
- 4 Click Refresh to retrieve a list of instances on your local system. Choose DB2 and click Apply. A confirmation message appears. Click Close.
- 5 Expand Instances and expand DB2. You will see Databases listed, right click and choose Create, New. The Create Database Smartguide window appears.
- 6 Enter the name of the new database (ARCDDBL) in the New Database Name field and the Database Alias field. The Comment Field is optional. Click Done.

This should take you back to the Control Center window. Expand Databases if it is not already. Your new database should be listed.

### Setting up the INI options for the DB2 driver

Be sure to set up the following INI options for the native DB2 driver.

- 1 Set up the DBHandler:ODBC control group as shown below.

```
< DBHandler:DB2 >
  BindFile = d:\rel10\fp400\w32bin\db2lib.bnd
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  Debug = No
  Database = (such as ARCDDBL - Local database name)
  UserID = (Windows user ID)
  Passwd = (Windows password)
```

- 2 Use the DBTable:XXX control groups to determine what tables are used by looking at the ArcRet control group, which should look like the following.

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDFD = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd
  AppIdx = APPIDX
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CARPath =
  Catalog = CATALOG
  RestartTable = RESTART
```

**3** For all the tables listed above, add the following control groups:

```
< DBTable:CATALOG >  
    DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:APPIDX >  
    DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >  
    DBHandler = DB2  
< DBTable:RESTART >  
    DBHandler = DB2
```

**4** The DB2\_FileConvert control group contains the table names of each table to be created. Here is an example, your table names may differ:

```
< DB2_FileConvert >  
    APPIDX = DAP102_APP_R1  
    Archive = DAP102_ARC_R1  
    Catalog = DAP102_CAT_R1  
    Restart = DAP102_RES_R1
```

**5** Set the Archival control group as shown here:

```
< Archival >  
    ArchiveMem = Yes
```

## SQL SERVER ON WINDOWS — ODBC CLIENT ON WINDOWS

This scenario sets up a database in SQL Server using Microsoft SQL Server version 7.0.

- 1 Go to Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 SQL Enterprise Manager. The Server Manager window appears, SQL 7.0 should already be expanded and there will be server names that appear below, choose the correct server and expand it.
- 2 Highlight the Databases folder, right click and choose New Database. Type in the database name, such as ARCD7, and select a data device. There is a size specified to the right of this field and the device should have a size greater than zero. Click the Create Now button.
- 3 If no login has been defined, highlight the Logins folder under the server and right click. Choose New Login. Type in a login name and a password. Click the Permit field next to the database you would like the login to default to. Then click Add. Confirm your password and click Ok.

### SETTING UP A CLIENT

Follow these instructions to set up a Windows client and an ODBC data source using Windows 2000.

- 1 Select Start, Settings, Control Panel, ODBC. The User Data Sources window appears. Click Add to add a new SQL Server data source. The Create New Data Source window appears.
- 2 Choose *SQL Server*. Click Finish. The ODBC SQL Server Setup window appears. Enter the following information:

In this field	Enter
Data Source Name	This is your database name.)
Description	(optional)
Server	(This will drop down and the server should be listed.)

- 3 Click Options and enter the database name, such as ARCD7, you will be archiving to in the Database Name field. Click Ok. The Data Sources window appears.
- 4 Make sure the new data source name appears with the correct driver specified. If all is correct, click Ok.

### Setting up the INI options for ODBC

- 1 Set up the DBHandler:ODBC control group as shown below.

```
< DBHandler:ODBC >
  CreateTable = Yes
  CreateIndex = No
  Debug = No
  Server = (such as ARCD7 - This is the data source name)
  UserID = (SQL Server user ID)
  Passwd = (SQL Server password)
```

The user ID and password must be set up in SQL Server. For more information see [SQL Server on Windows — ODBC Client on Windows on page 385](#).

- 2 In the DBTable:XXX control groups, determine what tables are used by looking at the ArcRet control group, which should look like the one shown here:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = Deflib\AppIdx.dfd
  AppIdx = APPIDX
  CARFile = ARCHIVE
  CARPath =
  Catalog = CATALOG
  RestartTable = RESTART
```

For all the tables listed above, add the following control groups:

```
< DBTable:APPIDX >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:ARCHIVE >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:CATALOG >
  DBHandler = ODBC
< DBTable:RESTART >
  DBHandler = ODBC
```

- 3 Add these INI options for DFD files for these tables:

```
< ArcRet >
  CARFileDFD = carfile.dfd
  RestartDFD = restart.dfd
```

DFD files can specify the full file name, otherwise they are located in the directory specified in the DefLib option:

```
< MasterResource >
  DefLib = subdirectory
```

- 4 The ODBC\_FileConvert control group contains the table names of each table to be created. Here is an example, your table names may differ:

```
< ODBC_FileConvert >
  APPIDX = FSIV100_APPIDX
  Archive = FSIV100_ARCHIVE
  Catalog = FSIV100_CATALOG
  Restart = FSIV100_RESTART
```

These table names are examples of the names you can use.

- 5 Set the Archival control group as shown here:

```
< Archival >
  ArchiveMem = Yes
```

## IDS ON WINDOWS — DB2 ARCHIVE ON OS/390

This scenario features DocuPresentment's Internet Document Server (IDS) running on a Windows 32-bit computer and communicating with a DB2 archive residing on an OS/390 machine.

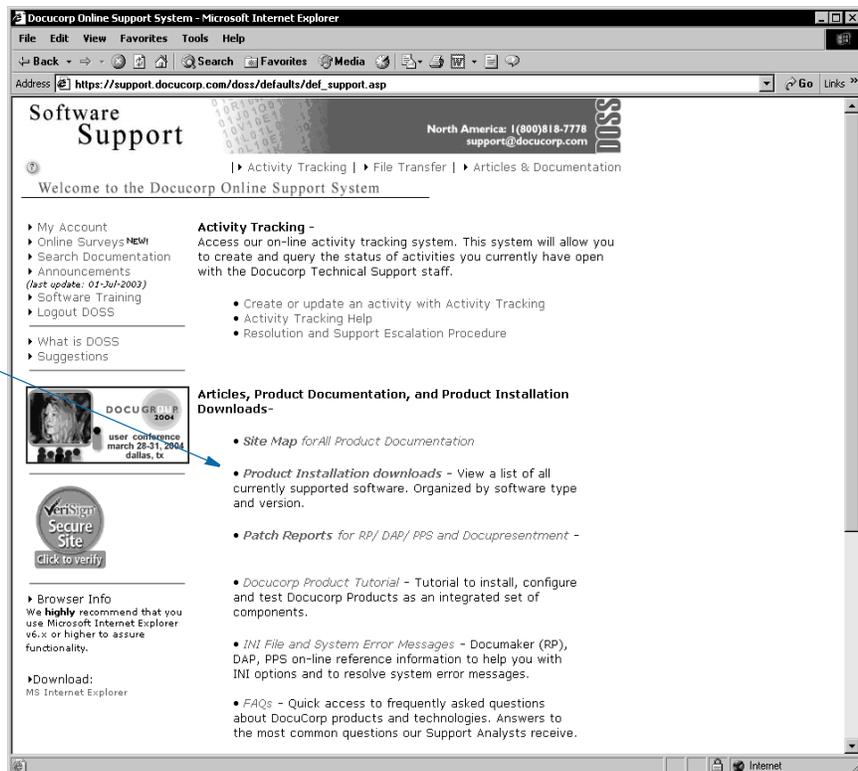
To illustrate this scenario, you should download the setup executable to install DocuPresentment 10.2 (IDS version 1.8). You can do this from the Product Development web site:

<http://www.skywiresoftware.com/doss/>

Follow these steps:

- 1 From the Skywire Software Support site, register, and then click on Product Installations.

Click here to go to Product Installations.



2 Next, click Present.

Click here to go to the Docupresentation installations

The screenshot shows the 'Supported Software' page on the Docucorp Online Support System. The page title is 'Supported Software' and the URL is 'https://support.docucorp.com/doss/defaults/def\_supported.asp'. The page includes a navigation menu with tabs: 'Acquire', 'Manage', 'Personalize', 'Present', and 'Development Tools'. Below the navigation menu is a table of supported software. The table has columns for 'Acquire', 'Operating System', 'Current Version', and 'Generally Available Date'. The table lists various software products including Docucreate IC, SC, Workstation, and RP, along with Docucreate Workstation RP installation patches and Docugraph Editor, Docuword Editor, Dynacomp, and Graficommander.

Acquire	Operating System	Current Version	Generally Available Date
Docucreate IC	Win32	5.0	
	AIX	5.0	
	MVS	5.0	
Docucreate SC	Win32	5.1	
ReadMe	Win32	5.0	
Docucreate Workstation	Win 95/98	5.0	
	Win32	6.0	
Docucreate Workstation RP			
<b>Docucreate Workstation RP installation Patch Level (beta -1)</b>			
Docucreate and Docutoolbox (CD 1.8)	Win32	10.3	TBD
<b>Docucreate Workstation RP installation Patch Level 65</b>			
Docucreate and Docutoolbox (CD 1.8)	Win32	10.2	30-Jun-2003
Docugraph Editor	Win32	1.0	
Docuword Editor	Win32	1.0.1	
Dynacomp	MVS	1.0.4	
Graficommander	Win32	2.0	

- 3 Next, select the current version for Windows 32-bit operating systems.

Click here

Present	Operating System	Current Version	Generally Available Date
<b>Docupresentation Workstation/Server</b> <b>Docupresentation installation</b> <b>IDS version 2.0/ Patch Level (beta -1)</b> DAP Bridge (RP/DAP 10.3 beta -1) Bridge to Documanage 6.1 (version 1.4.3) Bridge to Documanage 6.0 (version 1.3.2) MARS/NT update 1.1.0 (CD 11.2)	Win 32	10.X	TBD
<b>Docupresentation installation</b> <b>IDS version 2.0/ Patch Level (beta -1)</b> DAP Bridge (RP/DAP 10.3 beta -1) Bridge to Documanage 6.1 (version 1.4.3) Bridge to Documanage 6.0 (version 1.3.2) MARS/NT update 1.1.0 (CD 11.3)	SUN	10.X	TBD
<b>Docupresentation installation</b> <b>IDS version 2.0/ Patch Level (beta -1)</b> DAP Bridge (RP/DAP 10.3 beta -1) Bridge to Documanage 6.1 (version 1.4.3) Bridge to Documanage 6.0 (version 1.3.2) MARS/NT update 1.1.0 (CD 11.1)	AIX	10.X	TBD
<b>Docupresentation installation</b> <b>IDS version 2.0/ Patch Level (beta -1)</b> DAP Bridge (RP/DAP 10.3 beta -1) Bridge to Documanage 6.1 (version 1.4.3) Bridge to Documanage 6.0 (version 1.3.2) MARS/NT update 1.1.0 (CD 11.5)	Linux	10.X	TBD
<b>Docupresentation installation</b> <b>IDS version 1.9/ Patch Level (beta -1)</b> DAP Bridge (RP/DAP 10.3 beta -1) Bridge to Documanage 6.1 (version 1.4.3) Bridge to Documanage 6.0 (version 1.3.2) MARS/NT update 1.1.0 (CD 11.2)	Win 32	10.X	TBD

Refer to these documents for installation and configuration information:

- [Internet Document Server Guide](#)
- [SDK Reference](#)

## SETTING UP THE DB2 ARCHIVE ON OS/390

Refer to these documents for information on configuring a DB2 archive on OS/390:

- [Installation Guide](#)
- [Documaker Server System Reference](#)

## CREATING AN OS/ 390 DATABASE

To create a database, you *must* be an administrator on the machine you are creating the database on. Follow these instructions:

- 1 Click Add Database once you enter into the Client Configuration Assistant. On Tab 1 (Source), choose the Manually Configure a Connection to a DB2 Database option. Click Next.
- 2 On Tab 2 (Protocol), choose TCP/IP as the protocol and OS/390 as the target operating system. Click Next.
- 3 On Tab 3 (TCP/IP), enter **os390** in the Hostname field. The Port number defaults to 446. Enter **dbzins 1** in the Service Name field. Click Next.
- 4 On Tab 4 (Target Database), enter the database name, such as USDCIOS39DSN1, in the Location Name field. Click Next.
- 5 On Tab 5 (Alias), enter **ARCDB** (or your database name on the mainframe) in the DBAlias field. The DBAlias field gets the first part of the location name from the previous tab. The Description field is optional. Click Next.
- 6 On Tab 6 (ODBC), check the Register this Database for ODBC field. Then select the data source. Click Done.
- 7 The system asks if you want to test your connection, click the Test Connection button. Then enter your user ID and password and click Ok. A window should appear with a message similar to this one:

```
The Connection test was successful.
Database product= DB2 OS/390 7.0
SQL authorization ID= akb
Database alias = ARCDB
To close this window and proceed, click OK.
```

Click Add to add another database or click Close to exit the Client Configuration Assistant.

### Updating TCP/IP Values on a Windows 2000 Server

Follow these steps to update TCP/IP-related values on a Windows 2000 server:

- 1 So that the host name you entered can be found, add this entry in the host file

```
(c:\winnt\system32\drivers\etc\hosts):
10.8.10.210 WIN2000A_1
```

The value on the left is the IP address of the Windows 2000 Server. The value on the right is the host name for that Windows 2000 Server.

- 2 Add these lines in the services file (c:\winnt\system32\drivers\etc\services):

```
db2inst1      446/tcp      #db2 port
db2insti      447/tcp      #db2 port interrupt
```

- 3 Go to Start, Settings, Control Panel, System, and choose the Environment tab. Enter a system variable called **DB2COMM** and set its value to:

```
APPC,TCP/IP
```

This specifies the communication protocols DB2 will use —APPC to talk to the OS/390 host and TCP/IP to talk to Windows 2000 clients.

Also add a system variable called *DB2CODEPAGE* and set its value to:

850

- 4 Reboot Windows 2000 for the system variable to take effect.



## APPENDIX B

# System Files

This appendix includes samples of the various files used by and created by the system. For each file you will find a definition, including information on the tools you can use to modify the files, and a sample of the files.

The sample files are based on the base system. If you or Skywire Software's staff have customized your system, your files may differ.

For information on file formats, consult the technical documentation, which is located on your distribution CD and on Skywire Software's web site.

This appendix discusses these topics:

- [Overview on page 394](#)
- [Types of Files on page 396](#)
- [Resource Files on page 399](#)
- [Files Created by the GenTrn Program on page 412](#)
- [Files Created by the GenData Program on page 413](#)
- [Files Created by the GenPrint Program on page 415](#)
- [Files Created by the GenWIP Program on page 416](#)
- [Files Used by the GenArc Program on page 417](#)

## OVERVIEW

The files discussed in this appendix are arranged in the following order:

Types of files:

- BCH files
- DAT files
- DBF files
- DDT files
- DFD files
- Error files
- Initialization (INI) files
- JDT files
- Log files
- LOG files
- MDX files
- Transaction files

Resource files

- FSISYS.INI
- FSIUSER.INI
- FORM.DAT
- SETRECPTB.DAT
- DFD files
- DDT files
- JDT files
- Extract files

Files created by the GenTrn program as it gathers information:

- TRNFILE.DAT
- LOGFILE.DAT
- ERRFILE.DAT
- MSGFILE.DAT

Files created by the GenData program to make print-ready files:

- NAFILE.DAT
- POLFILE.DAT
- NEWTRN.DAT
- Batch files (\*.bch)

- MANUAL.BCH
- Updated log and error files
- Spool files
- MSGFILE.DAT

Files used by the GenWIP program for processing incomplete transactions

- WIP.DBF
- WIP.MDX
- 0000001.DAT
- 0000001.POL

Files used by and created by the GenArc program for archiving information:

- APPIDX.DBF
- ARCHIVE.CAR
- APPIDX.MDX
- APPIDX.DFD

## TYPES OF FILES

There are several types of files used in the system. These file types are defined below.

**BCH files** The GenData program creates files with the extension BCH, called batch files, which list the transactions to be included in each batch, as specified in your FSISYS.INI file settings. Batch files are used as trigger files by the GenPrint and GenWIP programs. Batch files indicate which transactions should be printed in a given batch job. The GenPrint program uses batch files to print completed forms. The GenData program also creates manual batch files which record incomplete transactions. These manual batch files are used by the GenWIP program.

**CAR files** The GenArc program creates compressed archive (CAR) files in which it stores NAFILEs, POLFILEs, and archived forms and data. An example of a generated CAR file is ARCHIVE.CAR. You can have multiple CAR files. The GenArc program also creates the APPIDX.DBF file which serves as an index to the archived information stored in the CAR file.

**DAT files** Data table (DAT) files define various information the system uses as it processes information. All DAT are text files which have the extension DAT. Some DAT files are comma-delimited text files. You can edit DAT files using a text editor.

In many cases, there are tools, such as Form Set Manager, which you can use to edit specific DAT files. For example, the FORM.DAT file tells the system how the various forms are organized in the form set. The SETRCPTB.DAT file contains information about the recipients of a form and the conditions which determine whether or not a form is included in a form set or sent to a recipient. You can edit these files using the Form Set Manager.

The NAFILE.DAT file contains the variable data generated by the GenData program. This file, along with the POLFILE.DAT file, tell the GenPrint program what to print. This file also tells the GenWIP and GenArc programs what to place into WIP and what to archive.

The GenWIP program also creates DAT files for each incomplete transaction it must process. These files are numbered sequentially and for each file there is a corresponding POL file which contains information about the forms to use.

**DBF files** Database files (DBF) are used in several places in the system. For each DBF file, there is a corresponding MDX file which serves as its index. Examples of DBF files are FDB.DBF, which is created by the Field Database Editor; ARCHIVE.DBF, which is created by the GenArc program; and WIP.DBF, which is created by the GenWIP program.

---

**NOTE:** The UNIQUE.DBF file contains the last number for WIP file that was created. Whenever a WIP file is created, a number is generated to uniquely identify it to make sure no WIP file is overwritten.

---

**DDT files** The data definition table (DDT) file tells the GenData program, what rules it should use as it processes the data. You can edit DDT files using a text editor or by using the Image Editor.

In the DDT file you store semi-colon-delimited information which defines the source and target fields, field length and offsets, rules to apply to the field, and optional parameters for the rules.

**DFD files** Data format definition (DFD) files define to the system the database file formats of the files generated by the system. Many common system files are stored in database format. For example, the transaction file, the new transaction, application index, and recipient batch files are all stored in database format. These database files can be in a variety of formats, including Xbase, DB/2, ODBC, and standard sequential files, such as flat text files. The record structure defined in the DFDs remains independent, regardless of the type of database being used—although there are occasionally exceptions for some database specific records.

The GenData program uses TRNDFDFL.DFD to read the TRNFILE which contains the actual transactions GenTrn creates.

**Error files** The GenTrn program produces an error file to note any transactions it could not process correctly. The other programs, such as GenData, GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc, update this file as they perform their processing activities. This file will help you discover and correct any processing errors you may encounter. Errors may be caused by incorrect or missing data. The system records the error information by transaction. You can view this file using a text editor.

The GenData program creates error batch files if it spots an error. In contrast to manual batch files, you cannot correct these errors using the GenWIP program. Instead, you must, for instance, correct the error in the extract file, change the flag to operator required so the transaction will be added to the manual batch file, or change the FAP file and then process the transaction again.

**Extract files** Extract files are typically text files which contain the data the system processes. Extract files are created by another program, typically a database program, in a format the system can read. The text file format provides a standard interface into the system. For example, your data may be stored in a DB/2 or VSAM database from which you extract the data you want the system to process.

You can customize the system to read almost any type of file layout. The GenTrn program first reads the extract file and, using that extract data and TRNDFDFL.DFD file, creates transaction files (TRN files) the GenData program can use as it applies the processing rules and creates batch files, the NAFILE.DAT, and the POLFILE.DAT file.

---

**NOTE:** For use on an z/OS platform, the extract file must be converted to EBCDIC format if the file contains international characters. See [Working with Fonts on page 149](#), for more information on international characters.

---

Docucreate includes a sample extract file, called EXTRFILE.DAT, which serves as an example of the type of file the base system can read. You can use this file to experiment with the base system and determine how you want to set up your system. Typically, a complete test library is provided with the system. You can use this library to test your installation.

You can use the OpSystem option to specify the origination platform of an extract file:

```
< RunMode >
  OpSystem =
```

If you enter **OS400**, the system loads an EBCDIC conversion table which handles binary number conversions for source extract files originating from an IBM AS/400 system.

- FAP files** The information which defines each image is stored in a FAP file. FAP files are text files with the extension FAP. You can edit FAP files using a text editor, but they are most commonly created and edited using the Image Editor. The FAP file defines the image while the FORM.DAT file defines the images which comprise a form and form set.
- Initialization files** Initialization (INI) files are used by the system to set system parameters and to enable or disable system features. Some examples of system INI files are: FSISYS.INI and FSIUSER.INI. For example, the FSISYS.INI file contains information the GenTrn program uses to determine when a new record starts and other information about the extract files the GenTrn program processes. The FSIUSER.INI file contains information specific to each user, such as the location of files and so on.
- JDT files** The job definition table (JDT) file is a text file which tells the system which rules to use as it processes a specific job. Rules defined in the JDT file are run before the system runs rules assigned to specific fields. An example of a JDT file is the AFGJOB.JDT file.
- Log files** When you run GenTrn, the program creates log files which record, by transaction, each transaction the program processes. These files have a DAT extension. You can review these log files using any text editor.
- LOG files** Logos and other graphics, such as scanned signatures, are stored as LOG files in the system. You use the Logo Manager to manage and manipulate LOG files. You can view these files using the Logo Manager.
- MDX files** The various system programs create MDX files which serve as indexes to the database files (.DBF files). For example, the GenWIP program creates the WIP.DBF file and the corresponding WIP.MDX file to record the incomplete transactions which were not printed.
- The Field Database editor creates the FDB.MDX file to serve as an index to the FDB.DBF file which contains common variable field definitions.
- Transaction files** The GenTrn program creates transaction or TRN files which contains a record for each transaction. The record format for the TRN file can vary to meet your needs. This format is defined in the TRNDFDFL.DFD file. The GenData program uses the TRNDFDFL.DFD file to read the information in the TRN file as it processes the information.
- Each record in a TRN file contains a series of offsets or pointers. These offsets define the location of the transaction data. For instance, the offsets in a TRN file tell the GenData program where the transaction begins in the extract file, where the data for the transaction is stored in the NAFILE.DAT file, and where the form set for the transaction is stored in the POLFILE.DAT file.

## RESOURCE FILES

Resource files are used by the various programs which comprise Documaker Server. These files provide information these programs use to know how to read extract files, how to create print-ready files, which rules to apply, which recipients receive copies of which forms, and so on.

The resource files include:

- FSISYS.INI
- FSIUSER.INI
- FAPCOMP.INI
- FORM.DAT
- SETRCPTB.DAT
- DFD files
- DDT files
- JDT files
- Extract files

### FSISYS.INI file

The FSISYS.INI file is one of the initialization (INI) files used by the system to set parameters and to enable or disable features. For example, the FSISYS.INI file contains information the GenTrn program uses to determine when a new record starts and other information about the extract files the GenTrn program processes. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

### FSIUSER.INI file

The FSIUSER.INI file is one of the initialization (INI) files used by the system to set system parameters. For example, the FSIUSER.INI file contains information specific to each user, such as the location of files and so on. If there are common settings in the FSISYS.INI and FSIUSER.INI files, the system looks at both, but uses the settings in the FSIUSER.INI file. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

### FAPCOMP.INI

The FAPCOMP.INI is an initialization (INI) file used by the Docucreate tools to set parameters or turn on or off features. For example, this INI file contains the control groups which let you map font families so that if you import an RTF file into the Image Editor, the fonts are changed automatically. You can see an example of this file in the FAP\DLL directory.

### FORM.DAT file

The FORM.DAT file specifies the forms currently being used in the system. The various elements of the FORM.DAT file specify the print order of the forms, duplex or simplex options, recipient batch information, establish a link between a system form name and the images associated to it, and descriptive information.

This file, also known as the Form Set Definition Table, contains information about the KEY fields, such as company, line of business, and policy number plus information about each image in the form, its recipients, and the form set itself.

The information is stored in semi-colon-delimited format and you can edit this file using the Form Set Manager or a text editor. The information that comprises the individual images is stored in a FAP file.

The following table describes the syntax of each record of the FORM.DAT file.

**NOTE:** Some of these options may not apply or may be changed given the specifications for a custom implementation.

```
; <FLD1>; <FLD2>; <SYS NAME>; <DESC>; <FORM OPT>; <not used>; <IMG FILN1> |
<IMG OPT1> [ <RECP1> (<CPY1> ) , . . . , <RECPn> (<CPYn> ) ] / . . . / <IMG
FILNn> | <IMG OPTn>;
```

Record	Description
<FLD1>	Used to categorize the forms, such as company. (length 20)
<FLD2>	Used to categorize the forms, such as line of business. (length 20)
<SYSNAME>	The name of the form used by the system and in tables. (length 20)
<DESC>	Used to describe the form. (length 30)
<FORM OPT>	Optional. Used for form options. (length 5) B - Indicates forms printed on certain Metacode printers can be stapled. D - Indicates this form is a Dec. page. F - Indicates the form size is fixed and not selectable G - Indicates the form is legal size H - Indicates the form is hidden from view but data can still be embedded on the form for later use. I - Indicates the form is A4 J - Indicates the form is executive size K - Indicates the form is landscape M - Indicates these forms can be repeated. N - Indicates the form is not required and should not display initially. The user has to add this form using the Form Selection window. The system assumes the form is required (see R) by default. O - Indicates overflow. A duplicate form generates to accommodate information which would not fit on the original form. P - Indicates that the form is a pull form. R - Used for default forms. Forms with this option are displayed initially. S - Indicates that this form is a Sub. Dec. page. X - Indicates that this form is a Master Dec. page Z - Line print (- z - z - z - z -)
<not used>	Not currently assigned a value. Can be used in custom development.
<IMG FILN>	Image file name stored in the master resource library, such as CU54A

<IMG OPT>	<p>These image options indicate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A - the image has no variable fields and is a print only form.</li> <li>B - the image is duplex and is on the back page.</li> <li>C - the image is for data entry and should not be printed.</li> <li>D - the image is for data entry and should be printed.</li> <li>E - the image is for viewing only and not for data entry.</li> <li>F - the image is duplex and is on the front page.</li> <li>G - the image should be printed on letter size paper (the default)</li> <li>H - the image is not for data entry but should be printed.</li> <li>I - the image will print on standard European paper.</li> <li>J - the image will print on Executive paper (7.25"x10.5").</li> <li>888K - the image will print landscape.</li> <li>L, 2 - the image prints on paper tray 2 (lower)</li> <li>N - the image is an inline FAP file</li> <li>O - the image is copied onto additional pages</li> <li>P - the image is a template</li> <li>Q - the image is hidden and will not print.</li> <li>R - a rolling image which prints on both sides of the paper.</li> <li>S - the image stays on the same page and doesn't flow onto two forms.</li> <li>T - short binding. The image prints on both sides of the paper and duplexes in flip chart fashion.</li> <li>U, 1- the image prints on paper tray 1 (upper).</li> <li>V - the image is a pre-compiled resource that is resident on the printer.</li> <li>W - the image can grow. Size is not fixed.</li> <li>X - the image is a header which appears at the top of the page.</li> <li>Y - the image is a footer which appears at the bottom of the page.</li> <li>Z - this is a flash image and is not used in pagination calculations</li> <li>o (zero) - a variable text merge is created</li> <li>3 - paper tray 3</li> <li>4 - paper tray 4</li> <li>5 - paper tray 5</li> <li>6 - paper tray 6</li> <li>7 - paper tray 7</li> <li>8 - paper tray 8</li> <li>9 - paper tray 9</li> </ul>
<RECP>	Contains the name of all possible recipients in which this form can be included. Example: Insured, Home Office, Agent, and so on.
<CPY>	Contains the default number of copies printed for a given recipient.

Here is an excerpt from the FORM.DAT file included with the base application in the RPEX1 sample resources. This excerpt shows the first three forms in the SAMPCO form set, DEC PAGE, LETTER, and LETTER2:

```
;SAMPCO;LB1;DEC PAGE;X;R;;sname|D<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
cmdec1|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/cmdec2|DS<INSURED(1),
COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/cmdec3|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;

;SAMPCO;LB1;LETTER;;RD;;sname|D<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
fmlt2a|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/fmlt2b|DS<INSURED(1),
COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/sa11|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;

;SAMPCO;LB1;LETTER2;Second Letter;RD;;sname|D<INSURED(1),
COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/fmlt2a|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
b3002|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
ba3006|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
ba3020|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>/
sa11|DS<INSURED(1),COMPANY(1),AGENT(1)>;
```

You can see other examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

### SETRCPTB.DAT file

The SETRCPTB.DAT file is used with the FORM.DAT file to build form sets and specify recipients given specific transaction types and other dependent conditions. It is also used to describe overflow conditions.

This file, also known as the Form Set Trigger table, contains information which tells the GenData program the recipients of a form set and tells the program which recipients receive which forms or images.

You can define conditions using the Form Set Manager or by editing the SETRCPTB.DAT file in a text editor.

The following table describes each record in a SETRCPTB.DAT file. You can see examples of this file in the sample resources.

**NOTE:** Some of these options may not apply or may be changed depending on how your system was implemented.

This table explains the syntax of this file:

```
;COMPANY;LOB;FORM NAME;IMAGE NAME;TRANS CODE;
RECP LIST; SEARCH MASK;OCCURRENCE (overflow) FLAG; RECS/FIRST IMAGE;
RECS/OVERFLOW IMAGE;RECIP. COPY COUNT; CONDITION; (CRLF)
```

Field	Purpose
COMPANY	Company name as defined in the form set definition file (FORM.DAT) and the transaction record (TRNDFDFL.DFD)
LOB	Line of business as defined in the FORM.DAT and TRNDFDFL.DFD
FORM NAME	Form name as defined in the FORM.DAT file
IMAGE NAME	Image name as defined in the FORM.DAT file. Image name is included only when you want to set conditions on a particular image in a form.

Field	Purpose
GroupName1	Matches the GroupName1 field in the FORM.DAT file. In an insurance industry application, this would typically contain the <i>company</i> code. <Key1Table> in the FSISYS.INI file.
GroupName2	Matches the GroupName2 field in the FORM.DAT file. In an insurance industry application, this would typically contain the <i>line of business</i> code. <Key2Table> in the FSISYS.INI file.
Form name	The name of the form, as specified in the FORM.DAT file. Note: Form names are descriptive, and do not correlate to any physical file name.
Image name	The name of an image within a form, as specified in the FORM.DAT file. This name also correlates to a physical image file (FAP file) and often to a Data Definition Table file (DDT file).  Note: An image level trigger record requires an entry in this key field; a form level trigger record must omit any value in this field.
Transaction codes	By including one or more transaction codes in this field, a form is triggered only if the extract file record includes that transaction code.  If no transaction code value is mapped from the extract data for a transaction, the system considers all triggers eligible, regardless of whether they specify a transaction code list.  Conversely, if a transaction code value is mapped from the data, the system only considers those triggers that have the same value to be eligible for evaluation.
Recipient list	Allows the optional specification of certain recipients.
Search mask 1 (Counter)	Defines the criteria to determine when a form belongs in a form set (or an image within a form). The criteria lets Documaker Server get specific data from the extract file. One form (or image) is added for every occurrence of the search mask per transaction when the overflow flag is set.
Occurrence (overflow) Flag	Indicates the need to calculate overflow conditions. Valid entries are: 0=No overflow and 1=Overflow  Also used for Master and Subordinate form and image level flags. Valid entries: M=master (used on form level triggers) and S=subordinate (used on image level triggers)  F=tells the system to override any previous copy count settings and use the copy count settings in this trigger file (used on form level triggers)  You can choose these options for the occurrence Flag field from a drop-down pick list on the Transaction window.
Records per overflow image	(Used by overflow) Specifies the number of records matching the Counter Search Mask that will fit on the specified overflow form.
Records per first image	(Used by overflow) Specifies the number of records matching the Counter Search Mask that will fit on a specific form before overflowing to a new form.

Field	Purpose
Recipient copy count	Specifies the number of copies a recipient receives.
Search Mask 2 (True/False)	Similar to Search Mask 1, but only one form will be triggered, regardless of how many occurrences of the condition exists.
Custom Rule	Available field for use with custom rules or search masks. Most common custom rule is Reciplf.
Custom Rule Parameters	Specifies parameters for the selected custom rule.

Here is an excerpt from the SETRCPTB.DAT file included with the base application in the /mstrres/rpex1/deflib/ directory. This excerpt shows the recipients for the first three forms in the SAMPCO form set, DEC PAGE, LETTER, and LETTER2:

```
;SAMPKO;LB1;DEC PAGE;;T1;INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT;11,HEADERREC,96,  
~O;0;1;0;1;;  
;SAMPKO;LB1;LETTER;;T1;AGENT,COMPANY,INSURED;11,FRMLSTREC,25,1;0;1;  
0;1;;  
;SAMPKO;LB1;LETTER2;;T1;INSURED,COMPANY,AGENT;11,FRMLSTREC,27,1;0;1  
;0;1;;
```

#### DFD files

There are several database files, meaning that these files are written and read via calls to Skywire Software's DBLIB database software library. These database files can be in several formats, including Xbase (dBase), DB/2, and flat text. Not all database files require a corresponding DFD file because their record structure is coded in the software modules that access them. For instance, here is a list of Skywire Software's database files:

- transaction files
- new transaction files
- recipient batch files
- manual batch files
- application index files
- WIP files
- help files
- table files

Only these files require an external DFD file:

- transaction files
- new transaction files
- recipient batch files
- manual batch files
- application index files

The WIP file may optionally have an external DFD. If there is no external WIP DFD file, the internal record structure as coded in the program is used. The help and table files do not support the use of external DFD files.

Of the database files that require external DFD files, only three actual DFD files are needed:

- a transaction file DFD (TRNDFDFL.DFD)
- a recipient batch file DFD (RCBDFDFL.DFD)
- an application index file DFD (APPIDX.DFD)

The transaction file DFD is used by both the transaction file and the new transaction file. The recipient batch file DFD is used by both the recipient batch files and the manual batch files. The application index file DFD is used by the application index file. You can see examples of all these files in the RPEX1 sample resources.

#### TRNDFDFL.DFD file

The TRNDFDFL.DFD file tells the GenData program how to read the TRN file. If necessary, you can edit this text file in a text editor. The TRNDFDFL, is used by the GenTrn, GenData, GenArc, and GenWIP programs.

The GenTrn program writes out the transaction file using the TRNDFDFL. The GenData program reads the transaction file and writes out the new transaction file using the TRNDFDFL file. And the GenArc and GenWIP programs read the new transaction file using the TRNDFDFL file.

You can define the name of the TRNDFDFL file in the Data control group of the FSISYS.INI file, as shown below:

```
< Data >
  TrnDfdFile = trndfdfl.dfd
```

#### RCBDFDFL.DFD file

The RCBDFDFL.DFD file, or recipient batch file DFD, is used by the GenData, GenPrint, and GenWIP programs. If necessary, you can edit this text file in a text editor.

The GenData program writes the recipient and manual batch files using the RCBDFDFL.DFD file. The GenPrint program reads the recipient batch files using the RCBDFDFL.DFD file. The GenWIP program reads the manual batch files using the RCBDFDFL.DFD file.

You can set the name of the RCBDFDFL.DFD file in the Data control group of the FSISYS.INI file, as shown below:

```
< Data >
  RcbDfdFile = rcbdfdf1.dfd
```

#### APPIDX.DFD

The APPIDX.DFD file, or application index file, is used by the GenArc program and the Archive module of Documaker Workstation. The GenArc program writes out the application index file using the APPIDX.DFD. While Documaker Workstation's Entry module reads the application index file using APPIDX.DFD. If necessary, you can edit this text file in a text editor.

You can set the name of the APPIDX.DFD file in the ArcRet control group in the FSIUSER.INI file, as shown below:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = appidx.dfd
```

However, the APPIDX.DFD name does not have to be set as shown above, provided the system is running in a Windows environment. If the APPIDX.DFD name is not specified as shown, the system automatically appends a DFD extension to the APPIDX name specified in the same group, as shown below:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdx = AppIdx
```

This will not work in an environment that does not support file name extensions, such as z/OS.

### .DDT files

The Data Definition Table (DDT) is used to map data from a source record to fields in a form. The DDT file tells the GenData program what rules it should use as it processes the data. You can edit DDT files using a text editor or by using the Image Editor.

In the DDT file you store semi-colon-delimited information which defines the source and target fields, field length and offset, rules to apply to the field, and optional parameters for the rules.

You can see examples of DDT files in the RPEX1 sample resources. The following table explains the structure of this file:

```
;A;B;sfld;sofst;slen;dfld;dfinx;dlen;fm;frule;data;f1;f2;f3;f4;x;y;
fontID
```

Element	Size	Description
A		index into File Definition Table (FDT)
B		source record Index
sfld	17	source record field name
sofst		offset of field in source record
slen		length of field in source record
dfld	17	destination field name
dfinx		destination field index
dlen		length of destination field
fm	17	format mask
frule		field level rule
data	1024	data field used by a field level rule
f1	2	not required flag
f2	2	host required flag
f3	2	operator required flag
f4	2	optional required flag

x		x coordinate for the location of the field, in FAP units (2400 per inch)
y		y coordinate for the location of the field, in FAP units (2400 per inch)
fontID		ID of the font

### .JDT files

The job definition table (JDT) file is a text file which tells the system which rules to use as it processes a specific job. Rules defined in the JDT file are run before the system runs rules assigned to specific fields.

An example of a JDT file is the AFGJOB.JDT file, which you can see in the RPEX1 sample resources. You can also see examples of JDT files, including the performance JDT file used with single-step processing in the topic, [Single-step Processing Example on page 45](#).

### Extract files

Extract files are typically text files which contain the data the system processes. Extract files are created by another program, typically a database program, in a format the system can read. The text file format provides a standard interface into the system. For example, your data may be stored in a DB/2 or VSAM database from which you extract the data you want to process in the system in text format.

You can customize the system to read almost any type of file layout. The GenTrn program first reads the extract file and, using that extract data and TRNDFDFL.DFD file, creates transaction files (TRN files) the GenData program can use as it applies the processing rules and creates batch files, the NAFILE.DAT, and the POLFILE.DAT file.

---

**NOTE:** For use on a z/OS platform, the extract file must be converted to EBCDIC format if the file contains international characters. See [Working with Fonts on page 149](#), for more information on international characters.

---

Extract data can be in the form of a flat file, a VSAM file, or it can come directly from a database. The important thing is that the data is organized and presented in a manner that makes it efficient to process. While the system is very flexible, there are things you can do to minimize the need for customizations and to maximize the speed at which the system identifies and processes the data.

Here are some general guidelines to follow when you design an extract file:

- The basic entity of the data is the transaction. Data for transactions is stored in multiple rows.
- To speed the identification of a transaction entity, make the first record for each transaction a general information row.

- Each record should have a standard key structure. Here is an example of a minimum key structure:

Include this key	Which is
Transaction Identifier	unique to each transaction
Record Type Identifier	for each record type
Record Counter	a sequence number

Sequence numbers are not required. In some cases they are nice to have to keep track of which occurrence has been passed. It is, however, not a requirement that you sequence repeating records.

- To make testing easier, use a flat ASCII or EBCDIC extract file. By eliminating packed data fields, you can more easily view the contents of an extract file using standard text editors.
- Speed processing by keeping the extract file as small as possible—minimize the occurrence of repeated information in subsequent records.
- When possible, structure the data in the extract file so the system can read it in the order it should be processed. The less the system has to search for data, the faster it will process the data.
- Keep all related information in one record if possible, to minimize complexity of rules. For example, the layout should look something like this:

Record Name	Layout
GENERALINFO	account number, type transaction
ADDRESSINFO	client name, address, phone

- When information occurs multiple times (occurs clauses) in records, structure the extract file to contain one record for each occurrence. For example, when multiple forms are present on a policy or multiple meters are present on a bill, structure the information into individual records per entity (form, meter, and so on). This increases the likelihood that you can use base system overflow and mapping features to process the data.

---

**NOTE:** For overflow, the system first determines the maximum number of lines it can print on a page. When this number is exceeded, the system automatically inserts overflow pages as necessary. If overflow is dependent upon custom conditions to determine line counts, you will need custom code.

---

- Design records that will recur or overflow to have specific identifiers to sequence the records and to have key identifiers for overflow requirements within one record. This helps to minimize processing time and rule complexity. This is not a requirement, but may ease custom rule complexity with a point of reference.

- It is a good idea to have a header record which contains all global identifiers for a transaction, such as COMPANY, LINE OF BUSINESS, and TRANSACTION. You can then use this header record as the trigger to each transaction and as the basis for building the correct form set.
- When you build a header record, place all of the key fields for WIP, Archive, and the batch sorting fields in this record. This makes it easier for the system to perform searches and simplifies the building of the DFD records used to define the key architecture.
- Where possible, place all conditional data triggers for a form in one record. This may eliminate the need for the RECIPIF rule in the SETRCPTB.DAT file when triggering records. By reducing usage of this rule, you can improve system performance.

---

**NOTE:** You can find additional performance considerations for MVS systems in the Installation Guide.

---

- To maximize performance, provide sub totals and totals for groups of information in the extract data. This eliminates the need for system calculations via DAL scripts or custom rules and speeds performance.
- Provide any data in the extract file that would require the use of the TblLkUp, LookUp, SetState rules. This also improves performance and simplifies your master resource libraries.
- For Year 2000 compliance, make sure all date fields in the extract file are in 4-digit year format, preferably in YYYYMMDD format. (For the Archive application index file, APPIDX.DFD, the rundate field retrieved from the extract file must be in this format).

Docucreate includes a base extract file, called EXTRFILE.DAT, which serves as an example of the type of file the base system can read. You can use this file to experiment with the base system and determine how you want to set up your system.

You can see examples of this file in the sample resources.

## DFD File Format

The DFD file contains two control groups. The Fields control group lists all the fields in the record structures and the order those fields appear in the storage media. The fields are automatically stored internally in the same order they appear externally. The second group describes each field. This description includes an external and internal definition of the field where applicable.

### Fields Group

The Fields control group appears as follows:

```
< Fields >
  FIELDNAME =
  FIELDNAME =
  FIELDNAME =
```

...where FIELDNAME lists the name of the field. This is the name used by applications to reference data in a DFD record. The order of the FIELDNAME options dictates the order these fields are in, where applicable, on the storage media and how are they are stored in memory.

FIELDNAME has a maximum length of 26 characters, except when using Xbase. Using Xbase, the maximum length is 10 characters.

**Field Description Group**

The Field Description control group has the following format:

```
< xxxxxxx >
  EXT_TYPE=
  EXT_LENGTH=
  EXT_PRECISION=
  INT_TYPE=
  INT_LENGTH=
  INT_PRECISION=
  KEY=
  REQUIRED=
```

...where xxxxxx is name of field as listed in the Fields control group.

EXT_TYPE	Data format of field on storage media	Possible formats are:
	NOT_PRESENT	not present in this record
	SIGNED_CHAR	a signed char
	CHAR	char
	CHAR_ARRAY	NULL terminated string
	CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM	character array not NULL terminated
	SHORT	16-bit signed integer
	UNSIGNED_SHORT	16-bit unsigned integer
	LONG	32-bit signed integer
	UNSIGNED_LONG	32-bit unsigned integer
	FLOAT	float single precision
	DOUBLE	double precision
	LONG_DOUBLE	long double precision
	DATESTAMP	a FSI date/time field
	TIMESTAMP	a FSI time stamp
	VARCHAR	variable length character array

The external record definition must match the actual records written to or read from the database. The internal record definition is provided for easier programming use.

EXT_LENGTH:	Length of field on storage media. Valid for data types CHAR_ARRAY and CHAR_ARRAY_NO_NULL_TERM only. Ignored for all other data types.
EXT_PRECISION:	Number of digits after decimal point. Valid for data types FLOAT, DOUBLE, and LONG_DOUBLE only. It is ignored for all other data types.
INT_TYPE:	Same as EXT_TYPE.
INT_LENGTH:	Same as EXT_LENGTH except one additional byte is added to length to store null termination byte.
INT_PRECISION:	Same as EXT_PRECISION.
KEY:	Indicates if this field is a key field. Y indicates it is a key field. All other values, or if field is not present, indicates field is not a key field. This field is only used for DB/2 and indicates that the field is required.
REQUIRED:	Indicates if this field is required in order for a record to be stored on or retrieved from a storage media. Y indicates it is required. All other values, or if field is not present, indicates field is not required. If KEY=Y, the field is required regardless of the value of this option.

The options can appear in any order. The system records any errors encountered while loading a field in the log file.

## FILES CREATED BY THE GENTRN PROGRAM

The GenTrn program reads data in an extract file and creates transaction records which in turn are processed by the GenData program. The main file created by the GenTrn program is the TRN file which, along with the TRNDFDFL.DFD file, tells the GenData program which transactions to process.

The GenTrn program creates these files as it reads in the extract file and uses the resource files:

- Transaction files
- Error files
- Log files

### Transaction files

The GenTrn program creates transaction or TRN files which contains a record for each transaction. The record format for the TRN file can vary to meet your needs. This format is defined in the TRNDFDFL.DFD file. The GenData program uses the TRNDFDFL.DFD file to read the information in the TRN file as it processes the information.

Each record in a TRN file contains a series of offsets or pointers. These offsets define the location of the transaction data. For instance, the offsets in a TRN file tell the GenData program where the transaction begins in the extract file, where the data for the transaction is stored in the NAFILE.DAT file, and where the form set for the transaction is stored in the POLFILE.DAT file.

### Error files

The GenTrn program produces this file to note any transactions it could not process correctly. This file will help you discover and correct any processing errors you may encounter. The most common errors are caused by incorrect or missing data. The information is recorded by transaction. You can view this file using a text editor. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

### Log files

When you run GenTrn, the program creates log files which record by transaction each transaction the program processes. You can review these log files using any text editor. You can see examples of this file in the sample resources.

## FILES CREATED BY THE GENDATA PROGRAM

The GenData program takes information created by the GenTrn program and applies processing rules to those transactions and data. The GenData program creates batch files, the NAFILE.DAT, and the POLFILE.DAT file for the GenPrint program. It also creates a manual batch file (MANUAL.BCH) for the GenWIP program. The output from the GenData program is also used by the GenArc program to archive forms and data.

The GenData program creates the following files:

- NAFILE.DAT
- POLFILE.DAT
- NEWTRN.DAT
- Batch files (\*.bch)
- MANUAL.BCH
- Updated error and log files

### NAFILE.DAT file

The GenData program creates an NAFILE.DAT file, commonly referred to as the NA file, in which it stores image and variable field information. The GenPrint program uses this file, along with the POLFILE.DAT file, which is also produced by the GenData program to print the forms.

If the data is incomplete and GenData cannot complete the form, it creates a manual batch file. The GenWIP program then creates separate DAT and POL files for each incomplete transaction. These files provide the entry system with the information it needs to open the form so a data entry operator can add the missing data. This is a semi-colon-delimited text file. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

### POLFILE.DAT file

The POLFILE.DAT file, commonly referred to as the POL file, defines the form set used for a specific transaction. The GenData program creates this file which is used by the GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc programs. For instance, if the data is complete, GenData creates an NA file and a POL file. These files are used by GenPrint, along with the batch files, to produce the print-ready file.

If the data is incomplete and GenData cannot prepare the form for printing, it creates a manual batch file. The GenWIP program then creates separate files for each transaction to provide the entry system with the information it needs to open the form so a data entry operator can add the missing data. This is a semi-colon-delimited text file. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.

---

**NOTE:** You can use the MaxPolLineLength option to control the output line length when writing out POL file records. The default is 255. You can set it to shorter lengths when testing to more easily view the file in a text editor.

```
< Control >  
MaxPolLineLength = 80
```

Choose a length between 40 to 4000 bytes.

---

<b>NEWTRN.DAT file</b>	The GenData program creates the NEWTRN.DAT file. This file tells the GenArc program where to find data in the NAFILE.DAT file and which forms to use in the POLFILE.DAT file. You can see examples of this file in the RPEX1 sample resources.
<b>Batch files</b>	The GenData program creates files with the extension BCH, called batch files, list the transactions to be included in each batch, as specified in your FSISYS.INI file settings. Batch files are used as trigger files by the GenPrint and GenWIP programs. Batch files indicate which transactions should be printed in a given batch job. The GenPrint program uses batch files to print completed forms. The GenData program also creates manual batch files which record incomplete transactions. These manual batch files are used by the GenWIP program.
<b>MANUAL.BCH file</b>	The GenData program creates this file if it is unable to complete the processing of a form set. Typically, this occurs because the forms are missing information. This file is then used by the GenWIP program so a data entry operator can manually complete the form and resubmit it for processing.
<b>Error batch</b>	The GenData program creates error batch files if it spots an error. In contrast to manual batch files, you cannot correct these errors using the GenWIP program. Instead, you must, for instance, correct the error in the extract file, change the flag to operator required, or change the FAP file and then process the transaction again.
<b>Updated log, error, and message files</b>	As the GenData program processes information, it updates the log, error, and message files. You can review these files in a text editor to review when transactions were processed or to resolve errors.

## FILES CREATED BY THE GENPRINT PROGRAM

The GenPrint program takes information produced by the GenData program and creates a printer spool file for use with PCL, AFP, Metacode, and PostScript printers. Specifically, the GenData program produces batch files, an NAFILE.DAT, and a POLFILE.DAT file which the GenPrint program uses to create printed forms

The GenPrint program creates the following files:

- Spool files
- Updated log and error files

### Spool files

The spool files are print-ready files the GenPrint program creates from information received from the GenData program and from resource files.

### Updated log and error files

As the GenPrint program processes information, it updates the log and error files. You can review these files in a text editor to review when transactions were processed or to resolve errors.

## FILES CREATED BY THE GENWIP PROGRAM

The GenWIP program receives information about incomplete transactions from the GenData program. This information is stored in manual batch (MANUAL.BCH) files. The GenWIP program then creates separate files for each incomplete transaction. The data for these incomplete transactions is stored in a file with the extension DAT, such as 00000001.DAT. The corresponding form set information is stored in a file with the extension POL, such as 00000001.POL.

The GenWIP program also creates the WIP.DBF file, a database file which contains records of all the incomplete transactions extracted from the NAFILE.DAT file produced by the GenData program. The WIP.MDX file, also created by the GenWIP program serves as an index to the WIP.DBF file.

This gives the entry program the information it needs to display the form so you can fill in the missing information and complete the form in Documaker Workstation. Once completed, you can resubmit the form for processing by the GenData program.

The GenWIP program uses these files as it prepares incomplete transactions for further processing with the entry system.

- WIP.DBF
- WIP.MDX
- 00000001.DAT files
- 00000001.POL files
- UNIQUE.DBF

### WIP.DBF file

The WIP.DBF file contains information about the incomplete transactions which the GenWIP program extracted from the NAFILE.DAT and POLFILE.DAT file created by the GenData program. The WIP.MDX file serves as an index to this file.

### WIP.MDX file

This file serves as an index to the WIP.DBF file.

### 00000001.DAT file

Using the MANUAL.BCH file produced by the GenData program. The GenWIP program creates from the NAFILE.DAT file, a separate data file for each incomplete transaction. These files are numbered and have the extension DAT. In essence, they are like the NAFILE.DAT except there is only one transaction per file.

### 00000001.POL file

Using the MANUAL.BCH file produced by the GenData program, the GenWIP program creates from the POLFILE.DAT file, a separate POL file for each incomplete transaction. These files are numbered to correspond with their matching data file and contain information about the form set on which the system should place the data. In essence, they are like the POLFILE.DAT except there is only one form set per file.

### UNIQUE.DBF file

The UNIQUE.DBF file contains the last number for WIP file that was created. Whenever a WIP file is created, a number is generated to uniquely identify it to make sure no WIP file is overwritten. You should not modify, rename, or delete this file. The highest number it will generate for WIP files is FFFFFFFF, which is 4,294,967,295. After this number, the counter resets to 00000001.

The GenWIP program uses this information to create separate data and form information files for the incomplete transaction information it receives from the GenData program.

## FILES USED BY THE GENARC PROGRAM

The GenArc program archives forms and data so you can store the information efficiently and retrieve it quickly. This program receives information stored in the APPIDX.DFD. Using this information, the GenArc program creates CAR files to store the information and forms and a DBF files which serves as an index to the data in the CAR files. The GenArc program can create multiple CAR files, as needed.

The GenArc program uses and creates these files as if archives information:

- APPIDX.DBF
- APPIDX.DFD
- ARCHIVE.CAR
- APPIDX.MDX

**APPIDX.DBF file** The APPIDX.DBF file is created by the GenArc program and contains records about the archive information stored in the ARCHIVE.CAR file.

**APPIDX.DFD file** The GenData program creates this file to tell the GenArc program how to store data and forms to be archived. The actual information is stored in ARCHIVE.CAR files.

**ARCHIVE.CAR file** The GenArc program creates CAR files in which it stores archived forms and data. An example of a generated CAR file is ARCHIVE.CAR. You can have multiple CAR files.

**APPIDX.MDX file** This file serves as an index to the APPIDX.DBF file.

**APPIDX.DFD file** The APPIDX.DFD file, or application index file, is used by the GenArc program and the Entry module. The GenArc program writes out the application index file using the APPIDX.DFD. While the entry module reads the application index file using the APPIDX.DFD file.

You can set the name of the APPIDX.DFD file in the ArcRet control group in the FSIUSER.INI file, as shown below:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdxDfd = AppIdx.Dfd
```

However, the APPIDX.DFD name does not have to be set as shown above, provided the system is running in a Windows environment. If the APPIDX.DFD name is not specified as shown, the system automatically appends a DFD extension to the APPIDX name specified in the same group, as shown below:

```
< ArcRet >
  AppIdx = AppIdx
```

This will not work in an environment that does not support file name extensions, such as z/OS systems.



## Glossary

All components of the system use specific terminology. We suggest you familiarize yourself with these terms before you begin using the system. The following terms include definitions of system tools and files as well as commonly-used terms.

---

**NOTE:** The Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file lets you specify many of the file names you want to use. For instance, by modifying the settings in this group, you can change the name of the error file (ERRFILE.DAT) to any file name you want. In this manual, we refer to the default names for these files.

---

### oooooooo1.DAT File

Using the MANUAL.BCH file produced by the GenData program, the GenWIP program creates from the NAFILE.DAT file, a separate data file for each incomplete transaction. These files are numbered and have the extension DAT. In essence, they are like the NAFILE.DAT except there is only one transaction per file.

See also oooooo1.POL and the [GenWIP Program on page 426](#).

### oooooooo1.POL File

Using the MANUAL.BCH file produced by the GenData program, the GenWIP program creates from the POLFILE.DAT file, a separate POL file for each incomplete transaction. These files are numbered to correspond with their matching data file and contain information about the form set on which the system should place the data. In essence, they are like the POLFILE.DAT except there is only one form set per file.

See also oooooo1.DAT and the [GenWIP Program on page 426](#).

---

**AFP**

Advanced Function Printing (AFP), developed by IBM, is a print server language that generates data streams of objects. The data streams merge with print controls and system commands to generate Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS). Your system then sends the IPDS to the AFP printer for printing. The GenPrint program can create spool files for AFP printers.

---

**ARCHIVE.CAR File**

See [.CAR Files on page 420](#).

---

**ARCHIVE.DBF File**

The ARCHIVE.DBF file is created by the GenArc program and contains records about the archive information stored in the ARCHIVE.CAR file.

---

**ARCHIVE.DFD File**

The GenData program creates this file to tell the GenArc program how to store data and forms to be archived. The actual information is stored in ARCHIVE.CAR files.

---

**Base Product**

Any executable modules, source code, resource libraries, and documentation and help delivered to you from the Support Services Group within the normal system release and update cycle are considered part of the base product. All executable modules, source code, resource libraries, and documentation and help which were changed or customized by your internal development team, a third-party development team, or the Professional Services staff, are custom solutions.

---

**.BCH Files**

The GenData program creates files with the extension BCH, called batch files, which list the transactions to be included in each batch. Batches are specified in your FSISYS.INI file settings. Batch files are used as trigger files by the GenPrint and GenWIP programs. Batch files indicate which transactions should be printed in a given batch job. The GenPrint program uses batch files to print completed forms. The GenData program also creates manual batch files which record incomplete transactions. These manual batch files are used by the GenWIP program. Error batch files contain transactions which cannot be processed by the system. Batch files are comma-delimited TEXT files.

See also [MANUAL.BCH File on page 428](#).

---

**Batch Files**

See [.BCH Files on page 420](#).

---

**.CAR Files**

The GenArc program creates CAR files in which it stores archived forms and data. An example of a generated CAR file is ARCHIVE.CAR. You can have multiple CAR files. The GenArc program also creates DBF files which serve as an index to the archived information stored in the CAR file.

---

## Custom Solution

---

All executable modules, source code, resource libraries, and documentation and help which were changed or customized by your internal development team, a third-party development team, or Skywire Software's Professional Services staff, are considered to be a custom solution. Any executable modules, source code, resource libraries, and documentation and help delivered to you from the Support Services Group, within the normal system release cycle, are considered part of the base product.

## DAL

---

Document Automation Language (DAL) is the language you use when you tell the system how to calculate variable fields. This calculation is also called a script. When you select calculation options for a variable field, you can choose one of the following:

**DAL CALC.** Recalculates the value of all fields each time a user tabs to a new field in the image.

**DAL SCRIPT.** Recalculates the value of the fields to which you assign the script only when a user tabs out of that field

---

**NOTE:** You can find detailed information about DAL in the DAL Reference.

---

## .DAT Files

---

Data table (DAT) files define various information the system uses as it processes information. All DAT are text files which have the extension *DAT*. Some DAT files are comma-delimited text files. You can edit DAT files using a text editor.

In many cases, there are graphical tools, such as Form Set Manager, which you can use to edit specific DAT files. For example, the FORM.DAT file tells the system how the various forms are organized in the form set. The SETRCPTB.DAT file contains information about the recipients of a form and the conditions which determine whether or not a form is included in a form set or sent to a recipient. You can edit these files using the Form Set Manager.

The NAFILE.DAT file contains the variable data generated by the GenData program. This file, along with the POLFILE.DAT file, tell the GenPrint program what to print. This file also tells the GenWIP and GenArc programs what to place into WIP and what to archive. These files can only be edited with a text editor.

The GenWIP program also creates DAT files for each incomplete transaction it must process. These files are numbered sequentially and for each file there is a corresponding POL file which contains information about the forms to use.

## .DBF Files

---

Database files (DBF) are used in several places in the system. For each DBF file, there is a corresponding MDX file which serves as its index. Examples of DBF files are FDB.DBF, which is created by the Field Database Editor; ARCHIVE.DBF, which is created by the GenArc program; and WIP.DBF, which is created by the GenWIP program.

See also [Field Database Editor on page 424](#) and [External Database Editor on page 423](#).

## DDT Files

---

The data definition table (DDT) file tells the GenData program what rules it should use as it processes the data. You can edit DDT files using a text editor or by using the Image Editor.

In the DDT file you store comma-delimited information which defines the source and target fields, field length and offset, rules to apply to the field, and optional parameters for the rules.

See also [.JDT Files on page 427](#).

---

### DESKJET.FXR File

This font cross reference file provides information about internal HP fonts for HP Deskjet and compatible printers.

---

### .DFD Files

Data field definition (DFD) files define to the system the file formats of the files generated by the system.

An example of a DFD file is the TRNDFDFL file which the GenTrn program creates. The GenData program uses this file to read the TRNFILE which contains the actual transactions GenTrn creates.

---

### Distributed Resource Library

A *Distributed Resource Library* provides a decentralized repository into which you can place compiled items you select from your master resource library. A distributed resource library provides a unique and customized library of reusable resources for specific users at various locations in your organization. A distributed resource library contains an image library, a variable data dictionary library, a rules library, and a system library.

See also [Master Resource Library on page 428](#).

---

### Duplex

A form printed on both the front and back sides of a sheet of paper is printed in duplex mode.

See also [Simplex on page 430](#).

---

### ERRFILE.DAT

The GenTrn program creates this file to note any transactions it could not process correctly. The other programs, such as GenData, GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc, update this file as they perform their processing activities. This file will help you discover and correct any processing errors you may encounter. Common errors are caused by incorrect or missing data. The system records error information by transaction. You can view this file using a text editor.

---

### Error Batch

The GenData program creates error batch files if it spots an error. In contrast to manual batch files, you cannot correct these errors using the GenWIP program. Instead, you must, for instance, correct the error in the extract file, change the flag to operator required, or change the FAP file and then process the transaction again.

---

### Error Files

See [ERRFILE.DAT on page 422](#).

---

## External Database Editor

---

The External Database Editor provides you with an easy-to-use tool for creating and maintaining information about the extract file being used. The data in the file can be automatically merged onto a form's variable fields using the External Database Editor. The External Database Editor can import DDF, DFD, DBF, and COBOL copy book files. The tool defines customer data or transaction file data, which provides you with a greater ability to apply and modify data, and increase the ease of reusing resources.

See also [Field Database Editor on page 424](#).

## Extract Files

---

Extract files are typically text files which contain the data the system processes. Extract files are created by another program, typically a database program, in a format the system can read. The text file format provides a standard interface into the system. For example, your data may be stored in a DB/2 or VSAM database from which you extract the data you want to process in the system in text format.

You can customize the system to read almost any type of file layout. The GenTrn program first reads the extract file and, using that extract data and TRNDFDFL.DFD file, creates transaction files (TRN files) the GenData program can use as it applies the processing rules and creates batch files, the NAFILE.DAT, and the POLFILE.DAT file.

---

**NOTE:** For use on an MVS platform, the extract file must be converted to EBCDIC format if the file contains international characters.

---

The system includes a base extract file, called EXTRFILE.DAT, which serves as an example of the type of file the base system can read. You can use this file to experiment with the base system and determine how you want to set up your system.

## .FAP Files

---

The information which defines each image is stored in a FAP file. FAP files are text files with the extension *FAP*. You can edit FAP files using a text editor, but they are most commonly created and edited using Image Editor. The FAP file defines the image while the FORM.DAT file defines the images which comprise a form and form set.

See also [Image Editor on page 427](#).

## FDB.DBF File

---

The FDB.DBF file is a database file created by the Field Database Editor which contains a record for each unique variable field you create in the Image Editor. You can add records (variable fields) using the Field Database Editor or as you create images using Image Editor. The FDB.MDX file serves as an index to this file.

See also [Field Database Editor on page 424](#).

## fetype

---

An *fetype* defines the field format type. You can have an input and an output fetype. For example, an input fetype with the fmtnum rule tells the system where the decimal goes in the number. The output fetype tells the system how to format the output amount. An fetype can consist of either one or four characters.

For more information, see the [Rules Reference](#).

---

### Field Database Editor

The Field Database Editor provides you with an easy way to store common variable field information to make setting up and creating FAP files faster and more consistent. When you use this tool, you create a file named FDB.DBF. This file contains a record for each unique variable field name, and is indexed in ascending order.

Use this tool to ensure consistency in forms sets. For example, if you have a Name variable field on a form, you can pull the attributes for that field into the form from the Field Database Editor. The database contains such information as the name of the field, font, type of variable field, and so on.

See also [External Database Editor on page 423](#).

---

### Fixed Data

Fixed data is the same on every copy of the form. This includes items such as logos, headers and titles. This information remains constant regardless of the data entry.

---

### Font Manager

Font Manager is used to organize fonts and font sets. A font is a collection of letters, symbols, and numbers that share a particular design. A font set is a collection of fonts you choose to group together for your image and printing needs. The font set information is stored in the font cross reference file (FXR file) which is created by Font Manager. Font Manager lets you make sure your documents print the same way on different printers.

A well organized font set makes image creation quick and efficient. Forms composers need a variety of fonts for text and field creation. Font Manager does not change the actual printer fonts. This tool is used for defining the appropriate characteristics (bold, size, and so on) about the font so the fonts used to create a particular form set are consistent and easily accessible to the forms composers.

---

### Form

A form is a single document containing one or more pages or images. Most forms contain multiple pages that are usually printed on both sides of a single sheet (duplex). Some forms are printed only on one side (simplex). Typical forms include insurance policies, tax returns, and mortgage documents.

A form includes two types of data: fixed and variable.

- Fixed data is the same on every copy of the form. This includes items such as logos, headers and titles. This information remains constant regardless of the data entry.
- Variable data may differ from form to form. This includes items such as individuals' names, addresses, and policy numbers. This information relates to the specific data processed on each form.

---

### Form Set

A form set is a group of logically related forms required to process a single transaction. A form set may contain one or many forms. You can group forms any way you want as you create form sets.

---

### Form Set Manager

This tool helps you group the individual images and forms you create using Image Editor into a set of related forms. This information is stored in the form set definition table. The Entry module uses the form set definition table to control the data entry, print, work-in-process, and archive/retrieval functions for related forms and images.

---

The system stores the form set information in a semi-colon delimited file named FORM.DAT. This file includes information about the company, line of business, forms, each image in the form, and the names of the person, organization, or entity who receives a copy of each image of the form. Specific information about the recipients of a form is stored in the Set Recipient table which is stored in the SETRCPTB.DAT file.

---

### FORM.DAT File

This file, also known as the Form Set Definition table, contains information about the key fields, such as company, line of business, and policy number, plus information about each image in the form, its recipients, and the form set itself. The information is stored in semicolon-delimited format and you can edit this file using Form Set Manager or a text editor. The information that comprises the individual images is stored in a FAP file.

---

### FSISYS.INI File

The FSISYS.INI file is a one of the initialization (INI) files used by the system to set system parameters and to enable or disable system features. For example, the FSISYS.INI file contains information the GenTrn program uses to determine when a new record starts and other information about the extract files the GenTrn program processes.

---

**NOTE:** The Data control group in the FSISYS.INI file lets you specify many of the file names you want to use in Documaker Server. For instance, by modifying the settings in this group, you can change the name of the error file (ERRFILE.DAT) to any file name you want. In this manual, we refer to the default names for these files.

---

---

### FSIUSER.INI File

The FSIUSER.INI file is one of the initialization (INI) files used by the system to set system parameters. For example, the FSIUSER.INI file contains information specific to each user, such as the location of files and so on.

---

### .FXR Files

Font cross-reference (FXR) files are used by the system so you can make sure your documents print the same way, regardless of which printer you choose. These files contain information about the various fonts you use and their equivalents on various printers.

The system includes several font cross-reference files. You can edit and create font cross-reference files using the Font Manager.

---

### GenArc Program

The GenArc program archives forms and data so you can store the information efficiently and retrieve it quickly. This program receives information stored in the APPIDX.DFD file from the GenData program. Using this information, the GenArc program creates CAR files to store the information and forms and DBF files which serve as an index to the data in the CAR files. The GenArc program can create multiple CAR files, as needed.

Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as genacw32.exe for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

### GenData Program

The GenData program takes information created by the GenTrn program and applies processing rules to those transactions and data. The GenData program creates batch files, the NAFILE.DAT, and the POLFILE.DAT file for the GenPrint program. It also creates a manual batch file for the GenWIP program. The output from the GenData program is also used by the GenArc program to archive forms and data.

Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as gendaw32.exe for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

### GenPrint Program

The GenPrint program takes information produced by the GenData program and creates a printer spool file for use with PCL, AFP, Metacode, and PostScript printers. Specifically, the GenData program produces batch files, an NAFILE.DAT, and a POLFILE.DAT file which the GenPrint program uses to create printed forms.

Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as genptw32.exe for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

### GenTrn Program

The GenTrn program reads data in an extract file and creates transaction records which in turn are processed by the GenData program. The main file created by the GenTrn program is the TRN file which, along with the TRNDFDFL.DFD file, tells the GenData program which transactions to process.

Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as gentnw32.exe for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

### GenWIP Program

The GenWIP program receives information about incomplete transactions from the GenData program. This information is stored in manual batch files. The GenWIP program then creates separate files for each incomplete transaction. The data for these incomplete transactions is stored in a file with the extension *DAT*, such as 00000001.DAT. The corresponding form set information is stored in a file with the extension *POL*, such as 00000001.POL.

The GenWIP program also creates the WIP.DBF file, a database file which contains records of all the incomplete transactions extracted from the NAFILE.DAT file produced by the GenData program. The WIP.MDX file, also created by the GenWIP program, serves as an index to the WIP.DBF file.

This gives the Entry module the information it needs to display the form so you can fill in the missing information and complete the form. Once completed, you can resubmit the form for processing by the GenData program.

Depending on the operating system you use, this program has various names such as genwpw32.exe for 32-bit Windows environments.

---

### Help Editor

The Help Editor is a tool you can use to create user specific help records that are accessible from a variable field during form entry time. You can easily create a help file which contains records for the variable fields on a form. Each help record usually contains an explanation of a description for entering correct data into a variable field. Help files reside in the resource library.

---

## Image

---

An image is a group of text or graphics or both that make up a form or a section of a form. You create images using Image Editor. Each image is stored in a separate file, so you can reuse images in several forms and form sets. Multiple images can comprise a single form. For instance, a three-page form with text and graphics, printed on both sides of each page, could contain a total of six images. Some examples of images include an insurance policy declaration page, the return portion of a bill, and page one of a 1040 Federal tax return form.

You may choose to create a single page containing multiple images, especially if you develop a page with graphics.

## Image Editor

---

The Image Editor lets you create documents, forms, and images that become part of an electronic form or document. It is a full-featured design tool with an easy to learn and use graphical user interface. With Image Editor, you have complete control and flexibility in managing and creating your image. The image and objects that you create are stored in the resource library's image library. Each image is stored in a file with the extension, FAP. Images are also referred to as *FAPs*.

## .INI Files

---

Initialization (INI) files are used by the system to set system parameters and to enable or disable system features. Some examples of system INI files are: FSISYS.INI and FSIUSER.INI. For example, the FSISYS.INI file contains information the GenTrn program uses to determine when a new record starts and other information about the extract files the GenTrn program processes. The FSIUSER.INI file contains information specific to each user, such as the location of files and so on.

## INTL.FXR

---

This font cross reference file includes international characters for producing forms in languages other than English.

## INTLSM.FXR

---

A smaller version of the INTL.FXR font cross reference file, this file includes international characters for producing forms in languages other than English.

## .JDT Files

---

Job Definition Table (JDT) files tell the system which rules to use as it processes a specific job. Rules defined in the JDT file are run before the system runs rules assigned to specific fields. An example of a JDT file is the AFGJOB.JDT file.

See also [DDT Files on page 421](#).

## Library Manager

---

The Library Manager lets you manage documents and logos while maintaining the versions, revisions, and integrity of the images you are developing. You may want to set up a library for a specific client or form set. You can store all images and logos in a resource library. The storage consists of a listing of the image or logo, as well as a snap shot of the image.

When you set up a library, you must define the locations of the library and storage files. Entries made during library setup are automatically saved back to the FSIUSER.INI file when you exit the setup window.

---

### Log Files

When you run GenTrn, the program creates log files which record by transaction each transaction the program processes. You can review these log files using any editor.

---

### .LOG Files

Logos and other graphics, such as scanned signatures, are stored as LOG files in the system. You use Logo Manager to manage and manipulate LOG files. You can view these files using Logo Manager.

---

### Logo Manager

Once you create a graphic object such as a logo or a scanned signature, you can edit it using Logo Manager. This tool lets you resize, reverse, rotate, crop, and otherwise manipulate an image to fit your needs. The system stores these graphic images as LOG files.

---

### MANUAL.BCH File

The GenData program creates this file if it is unable to complete the processing of a form set. Typically, this occurs because the forms are missing information. This file is then used by the GenWIP program so a data entry operator can manually complete the form and resubmit it for processing.

See also [Batch Files on page 420](#) and the [GenWIP Program on page 426](#).

---

### Master Resource Library

Master resource libraries provide a central repository into which you can place all reusable resources such as images, fonts, graphic files, data definitions, processing rules, and processing procedures. A master resource library contains an image library, a variable data dictionary library, a rules library, and a system library.

See also [Distributed Resource Library on page 422](#).

---

### Metacode

A printer definition language developed by Xerox. Metacode is the native language of Xerox's Centralized Printing Systems. The GenPrint program can create spool files for Metacode printers.

---

### .MDX Files

The various system programs create MDX files which serve as indexes to the database files (.DBF files). For example, the GenWIP program creates the WIP.DBF file and the corresponding WIP.MDX file to record the incomplete transactions which were not printed.

The Field Database Editor creates the FDB.MDX file to serve as an index to the FDB.DBF file which contains common variable field definitions.

---

### NAFILE.DAT File

The GenData program creates an NAFILE.DAT file, commonly referred to as the NA file, in which it stores image and variable field information. The GenPrint program uses this file, along with the POLFILE.DAT file, which is also produced by the GenData program to print the forms.

If the data is incomplete and GenData cannot complete the form, it creates a manual batch file. The GenWIP program then creates separate DAT and POL files for each incomplete transaction. These files provide the entry system with the information it needs to open the form so a data entry operator can add the missing data. This is a comma-delimited text file.

---

## NEWTRN.DAT File

---

The GenData program creates the NEWTRN.DAT file. This file tells the GenArc and GenWIP programs where to find data in the NAFILE.DAT file and which forms to use in the POLFILE.DAT file. This is a comma-delimited text file.

## Objects

---

Objects are the individual items which comprise your image. Examples of objects are boxes, bar codes, lines, graphics, and text. All objects have unique attributes within the image. Attributes include items such as position, size, font type, and color. The Image Editor lets you easily create the various objects which comprise an image.

## Overflow

---

Overflow refers to a situation where there is not enough room on the form for all of the data you need to enter. In this situation, you want to have the system automatically place the additional data onto another form or another copy of the same form. The system includes features which let you do this.

For instance, suppose you have a form which records automobiles and the drivers of the automobiles. The form has room to record four different automobiles and drivers. In most cases this will suffice but, in some situations, you need to include information about additional automobiles and drivers. Using the overflow features, you can handle this situation automatically.

## Page

---

Pages are the printed result of an image or a group of images. You can have one image per page, several images per page, or even an image that spans several pages. You determine the size of a page based on the size of your printed output. With the Image Editor, you can design forms for any size page your printer can print.

## PCL

---

PCL (Printer Control Language) is a printer definition language developed by the Hewlett-Packard company. The GenPrint program can create spool files for PCL printers.

## POLFILE.DAT File

---

The POLFILE.DAT file, commonly referred to as the POL file, defines the form set used for a specific transaction. The GenData program creates this file which is used by the GenPrint, GenWIP, and GenArc programs. For instance, if the data is complete, GenData creates an NA file and a POL file. These files are used by GenPrint, along with the batch files, to produce the print-ready file.

If the data is incomplete and GenData cannot prepare the form for printing, it creates a manual batch file. The GenWIP program then creates separate files for each transaction to provide the entry system with the information it needs to open the form so a data entry operator can add the missing data. This is a semicolon-delimited text file.

## PostScript

---

PostScript is a printer definition language developed by Adobe Systems which you can use on various printers. The GenPrint program can create spool files for PostScript printers.

## SETRCPTB.DAT File

---

This file, also known as the Form Set Trigger table, contains information which tells the GenData program which recipients receive which forms or images.

This file also contains the information the GenData program needs to determine whether or not to include or exclude a form. You can define conditions using Form Set Manager or by editing the SETRCPTB file in a text editor.

---

### Simplex

A form printed on only one side of a sheet of paper is printed in simplex mode.

See also [Duplex on page 422](#).

---

### System Releases

To continually improve and support the product, software enhancements and corrections are organized into regularly scheduled system releases. Releases are noted with a major and minor version number, such as 10.3 or 11.0.

---

### System Patches

In certain situations, and on a case by case basis, a correction to the current system release can be made available as a system patch. Corrections to the prior release are handled on a case by case basis, and are made available only as system patches.

---

### Table Editor

The Table Editor lets you create a table of data used to automatically fill a variable field during form data entry. Tables make the entry process quicker and more efficient for the end user. Users can choose from data options within a table format rather than keying information. Using tables reduces data entry errors and increases speed. In the Table Editor, you can create and edit table files, tables, and table entries. Tables are stored in the resource library.

---

### Transaction List

The GenTrn program creates the transaction list which is used by the GenData program as an index to the data in the extract file. The transaction list is stored in the TRN File.

---

### .TRN Files

The GenTrn program creates transaction or TRN files which contains a record for each transaction. The record format for the TRN file can vary to meet your needs. This format is defined in the TRNDFDFL.DFD file. The GenData program uses the TRNDFDFL.DFD file to read the information in the TRN file as it processes the information.

Each record in a TRN file contains a series of offsets or pointers. These offsets define the location of the transaction data. For instance, the offsets in a TRN file tell the GenData program where the transaction begins in the extract file, where the data for the transaction is stored in the NAFILE.DAT file, and where the form set for the transaction is stored in the POLFILE.DAT file.

---

### TRNDFDFL.DFD File

The TRNDFDFL.DFD file tells the GenData program how to read the TRN file. If necessary, you can edit this text file in a text editor.

---

### UFSTSM.FXR File

This is a font cross reference file which provides Times (Roman), Courier, and Univers(al) fonts for Xerox, AFP, PostScript, and PCL printers. This font cross reference file is automatically installed when you install Docucreate.

---

### UNIQUE.DBF File

The UNIQUE.DBF file contains the last number for the WIP file that was created. Whenever a WIP file is created, a number is generated to uniquely identify it to make sure no WIP file is overwritten. You should not modify, rename, or delete this file. The highest number it will generate for WIP files is FFFFFFFF, which is 4,294,967,295. After this number, the counter resets to 0000001.

---

The GenWIP and GenArc programs use this information to create separate data and form information files for the incomplete transactions received from the GenData program and for the individual forms stored in archive.

See also [ooooooo1.DAT File on page 419](#) and [ooooooo1.POL File on page 419](#).

---

### Variable Data

Variable data may differ from form to form. This includes items such as individuals' names, addresses, and policy numbers. This information relates to the specific data processed on each form.

---

### WIP.DBF File

The WIP.DBF file contains information about the incomplete transactions which the GenWIP and GenArc programs extracted from the NAFILE.DAT and POLFILE.DAT file created by the GenData program. The WIP.MDX file serves as an index to this file.

See also the [GenWIP Program on page 426](#).

---

### WIP.MDX

This file serves as an index to the WIP.DBF file.

---

### xBase

A generic term for industry-standard dBase IV file format.



## Index

### SYMBOLS

---

- & (ampersand) 319
- .BCH files 396
- .CAR files 396
- .DAT files 396
- .DBF files 396
- .DDT files 396, 406
- .DFD files 397
- .FAP files 398
- .INI files 398
- .JDT files 398, 407
- .LOG files 398
- .MDX files 398
- ~Encrypted 91
- ~GetEnv function 89
- ~OS function 90
- ~Platform function 90
- ~WIPField built-in function 93

### NUMERICS

---

- 00000001.DAT file 416
- 00000001.POL file 416
- 2-up printing
  - overview 58
  - rule order 64

## A

- A4
  - PaperSize option 224, 241
- ABNORMAL statements 250
- Access databases 353
- Acrobat Reader
  - included fonts 185
- AddBlankPages function 81
- AddComment function 264, 265
- AddDocuSaveComment function 301
- Added\_Fonts control group 61
- AddedOn option 340
- AddForm function
  - banner forms 15
- adding
  - fonts to the font set 190
  - printer fonts to the FXR file 167
  - tables of contents and indexes 84
- AdditionalDJDE option 246
- AddLine rule 62
- ADDPAGES utility 238
- AddTextLabel rule 62
- AdjLeftMargin option 257
- Adobe Acrobat 2
- AFEMAIN program
  - defined 326
  - viewing archives 352
- AfeProcedures control group 355
- AFEW32 355
- AFEWIP2ArchiveRecord 355
- AfeWIP2ArchiveRecord control group 355
- AFG2WIP control group 77
- AFGJOB.JDT file 398, 407
  - and 2-up printing 64
- AFM files 152
- AFP
  - comment records 62
  - fonts 166, 210
  - form-level comments 231
  - record list and the AddTextLabel rule 62
  - using custom fonts 172
- AFP control group 225
- AFP printers
  - fonts 227
  - handling multiple trays 305
  - highlight color printing 226
  - INI options 222
  - overlays 227
  - page segments 227
  - paper size 224
  - resources 227
  - setting up 222
  - TLE records 304
  - troubleshooting 228
- AFPFMDEF utility 227
- AIX
  - archive/retrieval scenarios 329
- AliasPrintBatches option 88
- AllowInput option 282
- AlwaysSQLPrepare option 335
- ampersands
  - in messages 320
- ancestor 100
- ANSI code page
  - for PC platforms 178
- APPIDX file
  - defined 326
- APPIDX.DBF file 417
- APPIDX.DFD file 405, 417
- APPIDX.MDX file 417
- application index file 405
- archive
  - creating print streams for DocuSave 300
  - features 328
  - retrieval 358
  - TLE records 304
  - transaction log 334
- archive index file
  - and WIP 355
- Archive rule 41, 42
- ARCHIVE.CAR file 417
- ArchiveMem option 334, 340
- archiving
  - transactions 29

---

ArcRet control group 334, 359  
ARCVIEW utility 352  
ASCII  
    code pages 157  
Asian languages  
    PCL 6 259  
Auto-size option 228

## B

---

banner forms  
    groups 15  
banner processing  
    custom callback function 14  
    overview 14  
BARR  
    format 254  
    interface attachment 254  
BARR SPOOL  
    OutMode option 235  
BARRWRAP utility 254  
BaseErrors option 32  
baseline 196  
Batch control group 42  
batch files 414  
    and single-step processing 36  
    grouping 88  
BatchBannerBeginForm option 15  
BatchBannerBeginScript option 15  
BatchBannerEndForm option 15  
BatchBannerEndScript option 15  
BatchByPageCount rule 42  
BatchingByRecip control group 42  
BatchingByRecipINI rule 42  
BatchPrint control group 281  
BatchTable option 88  
bitmap fonts  
    defined 153  
    inserting 210  
bitmaps  
    compression for Metacode printers 235  
    highlight color printers 263  
    logos 248  
    scaling 225  
    Xerox images 248  
black rectangles 228  
blank pages 237  
boxes, WriteFrame option 282  
BreakBatch function 71  
BuildMasterFormList rule 42  
built-in functions 89  
byte-serving 280

## C

---

Cabinet option 340  
CacheFAPFiles option 244  
CacheFiles option 245  
CacheMethod option 244  
callback functions  
    InitPageBatchedJob rule 62  
CallbackFunc option  
    RTF driver 285  
CARDData control group 351  
CARFILE  
    defined 326  
CARFILE.DFD file 347  
case toggles 234  
CaseSensitiveKeys option 356  
CATALOG file  
    defined 327  
CD/IG 252  
character sets  
    defined 160  
    determining characters used in a printer font 160  
Character Width field 197  
ChartResolution option  
    AFP printers 222  
    Metacode printers 239

- charts
  - BARRWRAP utility 254
  - compression for Metacode printers 235
  - printing on Metacode printers 235
  - rendering on Metacode printers 239
  - using the Metacode loader 246
- CheckCount option 31
- CheckImageLoaded rule
  - rotated variable fields 229
- CheckZeroFontID option 87
- child 100
- Class option 353
  - AFP printers 224
  - GDI driver 276
  - Metacode printers 246
  - PCL printers 258
  - PostScript printers 268
- class recipient 55
- ClearMsgFile option 312
- CMY palette 262
- code pages
  - ASCII code pages 157
  - code page 1004 156, 158
  - code page 37 159
  - code page 437 156
  - code page 850 156, 157
  - code page names 162
  - converting text files from one code page to another 181
  - EBCDIC code pages 159
  - for EBCDIC platforms 179
  - using the ANSI code page for PC platforms 178
- CODE statement 234
- CODEPAGE.INI file
  - and PostScript fonts 167, 212
  - and the Char Set ID field 200
  - and the CPCNV utility 172, 173
  - defined 185
- ColorCharts option 242
- colors
  - for charts 242
  - PCL support for 256
  - printing 226
  - simple color mode 262
  - specifying ink for Metacode printers 239
  - troubleshooting for Metacode printers 249
- column names 363
- COMM\_RECS column
  - restarting GenArc 338
- commas
  - in search masks 142
- comment records 16
- commit
  - defined 326
- CommitEvery option 338
- CommonFonts control group 240
- CompileInStream option 236
- CompressMode option 235
- concepts
  - setting recipients and copy counts 116
- configuring
  - the message system 311
  - the system 110
- console messages 242
- controlling the message translation process 314
- converting
  - fonts from other vendors 205
  - system fonts 203
  - text files from one code page to another 181
- ConvertWIP rule 41, 42
- copy counts
  - DAL and GVM variables 130
  - example 130
  - setting 115, 116
- copying
  - fonts 201

---

Counter field 119, 403  
counter search mask 133  
CounterDFD option 60  
CounterTbl option 42, 43, 60  
CreateIndex option 350  
CreateTable option 350  
CreateTime field 76  
CreateTime option 340  
creating  
    print spool files (multi-step processing) 25  
    transaction records (multi-step processing) 19  
    transaction records (single-step processing) 35  
creating messages 316  
CRYRU utility 91  
CSTSetMailRecip function 286  
CUSSetMailRecipGVM function 286  
custom callback function in banner processing 14  
custom fonts 171  
Custom Rule field 119  
custom rules  
    field 404

## D

---

DAL functions  
    manipulating file names 72  
DAL scripts  
    and extract files 409  
    banner processing 15  
    creating print streams for DocuSave 301  
    splitting print streams 69  
DALFile option 348  
DALLibraries control group 15, 82  
DALRUN built-in function 91  
DALVAR built-in function 91  
data  
    length validation 253  
Data control group  
    print batches 88

data definition table  
    defined 396  
    file format 406  
data format definition files 397  
data table files 396  
database  
    archiving to 334  
database files 396, 404  
DataPath option 88  
    and message files 312  
    and the TRANSLAT.INI file 313  
date stamps  
    turning off 314  
DB2  
    databases 353  
dBase 431  
DBErrors option 337  
DBHandler option 349, 350, 354  
DBLib tracing 315  
DBLogFile option 315  
DBTable option 349  
DCD files  
    mapping fonts 220  
DDTFile option 349  
Debug option 350, 354  
Debug\_If\_Rule option 86  
Debug\_Switches control group 86  
DefaultTag option 335  
defining  
    output message files 312  
DefLib option  
    and the TRANSLAT.INI file 313  
    PostScript printers 267, 272  
DelBlankPages function 82  
deleting  
    fonts 208  
descendant 100  
Description tab  
    fonts 192, 194  
Deselect All option  
    fonts 189

DestField token 323  
Device field 278  
Device option 236  
    AFP printers 222  
    GDI driver 275  
    PCL printers 256  
    PostScript printers 266  
DeviceName function 71  
DFD file  
    defined 327  
DFD files 404  
    and 2-up printing 61  
    format 409  
Dimensions tab  
    fonts 195  
DJDE command 247  
DJDE statements  
    user-defined 246  
DJDECarrControl option 247  
DJDEIlden option 234  
DJDELevel option 244  
DJDEOffset option 234  
DJDESkip option 234  
DlgTitles control group 359  
DocSetNames control group 39  
Documaker Server  
    resource files 399  
    running via IDS 47  
    system benefits 8  
    system overview 2  
    understanding the system 9  
Documanager  
    categorizing documents 362  
    data types 361  
    using with GenArc 339  
    viewing archives 352  
Document Type Number 144  
Docupresentment 2  
    PDF support 280  
Docusave  
    creating print streams 300  
    retrieving form sets 358

DocusaveScript option 225, 301  
dots per inch  
    Resolution option 222  
DoubleOutputRes option  
    AFP printers 225  
DownloadFAP option 84  
    and the CompileInStream option 236  
DownloadFonts option  
    emailing forms 287  
    GDI driver 275  
    PCL printer resources 265  
    PCL printers 257  
    PostScript printers 267, 272  
DPA files  
    viewing 352  
DPASSWD command line option 335  
DPRAddBlankPages rule 83  
DPRDelBlankPages rule 83  
DSCHeaderComment option  
    PostScript printers 266  
duplex  
    adding and removing pages 81  
    and simplex on Metacode printers 237  
    compressed PCL files 263  
    printing multi-page FAP files 251  
    switching modes 243  
DUSERID command line option 335

## E

---

EBCDIC 397  
EBCDIC platforms  
    and code pages 159  
    using Code Page 37 179  
editing  
    fonts 202  
EjectPage rule  
    multi-page FAP files 251  
email  
    aliases 287  
    sending a print-ready file 284

---

Email Application Servers 287

embedded hex values 234

embedding fonts 185

EMIT\_ERROR type 316

EMIT\_MESSAGE type 316

EMIT\_WARNING type 316

EmptyFooters option 283

EmptyHeaders option 283

Enable\_Debug\_Options option 86, 315

EnableTransBanner option 82

encrypted values 91

end of report conditions 237

EPTLIB 284

EPTSetRecipFunc function 286

ERRFile option 312

ERRFILE.DAT file 310

- and the ImmediateTranslate option 314

error batch 414

error codes 311

error files 397, 412

- turning off the date stamp 314

error messages

- configuring 311
- creating 316
- defining the output file 312
- delaying the translation process 314
- determining where a message originates 322
- disabling 311
- formatting 320
- initializing output files 313
- message tokens 318
- negative left offsets 228
- overview 310
- setting up static text 319

ErrorFileOpenMode option 313

errors

- correcting 36
- using GenArc with Documanage 351

European paper 401

examples

- copy counts and images 130
- of form set definition files and transaction trigger tables 129
- RECIPIF rule 135
- search mask and images 133
- setting search masks and recipients 140
- transaction code 132

Excel spreadsheet databases 353

executive

- PaperSize option 224, 241

executive paper 401

ExportIndex option 334

Expression option 88

Ext option

- Metacode printers 245

EXT\_Length option 61, 351

Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code 159

Extended Document Properties (XDPs) 362

extract files

- and code pages 181
- defined 397
- guidelines for 407
- layout of 408
- NoGenTrnTransactionProc rule 43
- XML files 98

EXTRACT.DAT file 397

## F

---

FAP files

- adding and removing 81
- mapping fonts 220

FAP2CFA utility 249

FAP2FRM utility 248, 253, 254

FAP2MET utility 236, 245, 248, 249

FAP2OVL utility 227

FAPAddBlankPages 81

FAPCOMP.INI file 399

- mapping fonts 220
- Metacode loader 245

- FAPDelBlankPages 81
- FAX drivers 277
- fax, drivers 273
- FEED command 252
- FIELD
  - BatchName control group 88
- Field Description control group 410
- FieldErrors option 32
- FieldList option 88
- fields
  - mapping with XPath 40
- Fields control group 409
  - grouping print batches 88
- file names
  - DAL functions 72
- File option
  - INIFiles control group 90
- file summary
  - GenArc program 30
  - GenData program (multi-step processing) 23
  - GenData program (single-step processing) 38
  - GenPrint program (multi-step processing) 26
  - GenTrn program (multi-step processing) 20
  - GenWIP program (multi-step processing) 28

---

FileDrive function 72  
FileExt function 72  
FileName function 72  
FilePath function 72  
files  
    .CAR files 396  
    .DAT files 396  
    .DBF files 396  
    .DDT files 396, 406  
    .DFD files 397  
    .FAP files 398  
    .JDT files 398  
    .LOG files 398  
    .MDX files 398  
    00000001.DAT file 416  
    00000001.POL file 416  
    APPIDX.DBF file 417  
    APPIDX.DFD file 405, 417  
    APPIDX.MDX file 417  
    ARCHIVE.CAR file 417  
    batch files 414  
    BCH files 396  
    created by the GenData program 413  
    created by the GenTrn program 412  
    created by the GenWIP program 416  
    DFD file format 409  
    DFD files 404  
    error batch files 414  
    error files 397, 412  
    extract files 397, 407  
    FORM.DAT file 117, 399  
    formats of 393  
    FSISYS.INI file 399  
    FSIUSER.INI file 399  
    initialization files 398  
    JDT files 407  
    log files 398, 412  
    MANUAL.BCH file 414  
    NAFILE.DAT file 413  
    NEWTRAN.DAT file 414  
    POLFILE.DAT file 413  
    RCBDFDFL.DFD file 405  
    recipient and copy count files 117  
    resource files 399  
    SETRCPTB.DAT file 402  
    system files 393  
    transaction files 398, 412  
    TRNDFDFL.DFD file 405  
    types of 396  
    UNIQUE.DBF file 416  
    updated log and error files 414, 415  
    used by the GenArc program 417  
    WIP.DBF file 416  
    WIP.MDX file 416  
FileType option 340  
filter list 189  
FinalPrinter option  
    and 2-up printing 59  
FitToWidth option  
    GDI driver 275  
    PCL printers 257  
    PostScript printers 267  
floating image limitations 228  
FolderBy option 339  
folders  
    updating 341  
FON files 197  
font cross-reference files  
    adding printer fonts 167  
    AFP printer resolution 230  
    choosing 176  
    for Monotype fonts 169  
    GDI drivers 274  
    generating 217  
    inserting 210  
Font List window 210  
Font Manager  
    choosing screen fonts 214  
    generating files 216  
    starting 176, 187  
    using 187  
    using FXR files 176  
Font Properties window 176  
    using Like to select screen fonts 214  
FontFamilyMatching control group 220  
FontLib option  
    PCL printers 265  
    PostScript printers 272

fonts

- adding system fonts 190
- AFP 166
- available font types 209
- bitmap fonts 153
- character width 197
- common font lists 240
- converting 203
- converting fonts from other vendors 205
- copying 201
- custom fonts 171
- deleting 208
- Description tab 192, 194
- Deselect All option 189
- Dimensions tab 195
- editing 202
- families 194
- filter list 189
- fixed 195
- FON files 197
- font IDs 194
- Font List window 188
- font substitution in Windows 165
- FXR files 197
- FXR files for Monotype fonts 169
- generating FNT files 216
- generating PFM files 217
- generating XRF files 217
- how computers and printers use fonts 154
- IDs equal to zero 87
- inserting 208
- inserting bitmap fonts 210
- inserting FXR files 210
- inserting PostScript fonts 211
- installing screen fonts in Windows 166
- Metacode 166
- Monotype fonts 168
- naming conventions 186
- PCL 167
- point size 194
- PostScript 154, 167
- PostScript printers 272
- printer fonts 166
- proportional 195
- resetting 192

- scalable fonts 153
- screen fonts 165
- selecting 188
- setting up 149
- styles 195
- terminology 150
- True Type 154
- typefaces 194
- using the Font Manager 187

footer 401

footers

- in RTF files 283

ForceFolderUpdate option 341

ForceNoImages rule 62

form level triggers 117, 124

Form Name field 403

Form name field 118

Form option 48

form set definition table 117, 399

- examples 129

- summary 146

Form Set Manager 116, 243

form set trigger table 402

form sets

- adding and removing pages 81

- PrintFormset rule 43

FORM.DAT file 117, 399

- banner processing 14, 17

- examples 129

- marking forms printer resident 254

- single-step processing 42

format

- DFD files 409

- trigger table record 118

FormDef, AFP resources 227

FormFile option 349

form-level comments 231

FormLib option

- PostScript printers 267

- pre-compiled MET files 236, 245

FormMaker II XRF files

- generating 217

---

- FormNameCR option 231
- forms
  - background 236
  - marking master forms 128
  - requirements 110
  - triggering in XML files 99
- FormSetID field 75
- frames
  - WriteFrame option 282
- FRM files
  - CompileInStream option 236
- FRMFile option 254
- FSIFileName taken 321
- FSIFileName token 323
- FSILineNumber token 321, 323
- FSIPATH environment variable 352
- FSISYS.INI file 399
  - and 2-up printing 59
  - banner processing 17, 18
  - grouping print batches 88
  - single-step processing 36
- FSIUSER.INI file 399
  - INIFiles control group 90
  - single-step processing 36
- FSRSetFileAttachment API 287
- FudgeWidth option
  - AFP printers 223
- FullFileName function 72
- FullSupport option 277
- functions
  - built-in INI functions 89

- FXR File field 197
- FXR files
  - affect on display and print quality 175
  - choosing FXR files 176
  - choosing screen fonts 214
  - insert 210
  - inserting 210

## G

---

- GDI driver
  - GenPrint program 274
  - handling multiple trays 305
  - INI options 275
  - Netware Client 32 for Windows 95 278
  - troubleshooting 278
- GDIDevice option 276
  - and the Device option 277
- GEN\_DEBUG\_DebugSwitchSet function 86
- Gen\_TabUtil\_LoadListFromTable function 86
- GenArc program
  - .CAR files 396
  - APPIDX.DBF file 417
  - APPIDX.DFD file 417
  - APPIDX.MDX file 417
  - ARCHIVE.CAR file 417
  - archiving transactions 29
  - command line options 335
  - description 11
  - file summary 30
  - files used 417
  - output files 22
  - running 334
  - single-step processing 41
  - system scenarios 328
  - using with Documanager 339

- GenData program
  - .BCH files 396
  - .DDT files 396
  - batch files 414
  - command line options 85
  - description 10
  - error batch files 397, 414
  - file summary (multi-step processing) 23
  - file summary (single-step processing) 38
  - files created 413
  - MANUAL.BCH file 414
  - NAFILE.DAT file 396, 413
  - NEWTRAN.DAT file 414
  - processing transactions (multi-step processing) 21
  - restarting 31
  - TRNDFDFL.DFD file 405
  - updated log and error files 414, 415
- GenDataStopOn control group 32
- Generate Font Download File window 216
- Generate FormMaker II XRF File window 217
- GenPrint program
  - banner processing 14
  - command line options 85
  - creating print spool files (multi-step processing) 25
  - creating print streams for Docusave 300
  - description 11
  - file summary (multi-step processing) 26
  - GDI driver 274
  - output files from GenData (multi-step processing) 22
- GenTranStopOn control group 33
- GenTrn
  - controlling processing 33
- GenTrn program
  - and single-step processing 35
  - command line options 86
  - creating transaction records for multi-step processing 19
  - description 10
  - error files 397, 412
  - file summary (multi-step processing) 20
  - files created 412
  - initializing message files 313
  - log files 398, 412
  - transaction files 398, 412
  - TRNDFDFL file 405
- GenWIP program
  - .DAT files 396
  - 00000001.DAT file 416
  - 00000001.POL file 416
  - description 11
  - field assignments 75
  - file summary (multi-step processing) 28
  - files created 416
  - output files from GenData (multi-step processing) 22
  - sending incomplete transactions to WIP 27
  - UNIQUE.DBF file 416
  - WIP.DBF file 416
  - WIP.MDX file 416
- GETENV INI function 76
- GetEnv INI function 357
- GetRCBRec rule 62
- GHO hardware 235
- GOCA charts support 223
- going live 110
- Graphics Device Interface (GDI) print driver 273
- GraphicSupport option
  - AFP printers 223

---

GroupName1 field 118, 403  
GroupName2 field 118, 403  
GVG hardware card 235, 248

## H

---

H2 strings 234  
H6 strings 234  
header 401  
header records  
    and extract files 409  
headers  
    in RTF files 283  
hidden 401  
highlight color printing  
    AFP 226  
HighlightBlackCmd option 263  
HighlightColor option 257  
HighlightColorCmd option 263  
horizontal motion index 248  
HPINTL.FXR file 169  
HPINTLSM.FXR file 169  
HP-UX  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 329

## I

---

IDEN statement 234  
IDS  
    running Documaker Server 47  
    trace file 315  
image level triggers 117, 122  
Image Name field 403  
Image name field 118  
Image option 48  
ImageErrors option 32  
ImageOpt option  
    Metacode printers 235

images  
    marking subordinate images 127  
    master and subordinate 127  
    tokens 318, 323  
    triggering in XML files 98, 99  
imaging systems 264  
    adding PJI comments 264  
ImmediateTranslate option 314  
    and ERRFILE.DAT 314  
implementation methodologies 110  
implementing your system 109  
indexes  
    adding 84  
InfoPak 238  
INI built-in functions 89  
INI command line option 335  
INI files  
    changes for 2-up printing 59  
    logging 312  
    using multiple 90  
INI options  
    logging 312  
INIFiles control group 90  
INIGroup control group 91  
InitArchive rule 41, 43  
InitConvertWIP rule 41, 43  
InitFunc option  
    RTF driver 285  
initialization files 398  
InitMerge rule 62  
InitPageBatchedJob rule 62  
InitPrint rule 43  
    and the NoGenTranTransactionProc rule 43  
InitSetrecipCache rule 43  
ink color 239  
inkjet printers 273  
inline graphics  
    and the CompressMode option 235  
    BARRWRAP utility 254  
    logos 225

Insert Fonts window 208  
inserting  
    bitmap fonts 210  
    fonts 208  
    FXR files 210  
    PostScript fonts 211  
installable functions 237  
installing  
    screen fonts in Windows 166  
    the system 110  
INT\_LENGTH option 61  
INT\_Length option 351  
international language support 178  
Internet Document Server (IDS)  
    compressed PCF files 263  
    paper size 224, 241  
InUse field 75  
ISI.INI file 219

## J

---

JDName option 233  
JDLCode option 234  
JDLData option  
    defined 234  
    Metacode printers 253  
JDLHost option 234  
JDLName option 233  
JDLRPage option 237  
JDLRStack option 237  
JDLs  
    setting up Metacode printers 232  
JES2 format 254, 300  
job definition table 398, 407  
JOBID command line option 335  
JOBID parameter  
    restarting GenArc 337  
jogging pages 238  
JSLs  
    setting up Metacode printers 232

jump to new sheet condition 237

## K

---

KEY  
    BatchName control group 88  
key fields  
    and extract files 409  
    and the InitSetrecipCache rule 43  
Key1  
    CaseSensitiveKeys option 356  
KeyID  
    CaseSensitiveKeys option 356

## L

---

landscape 401  
    AFP limitations 228  
    logo orientation 250  
Landscape option  
    GDI driver 276  
LandscapeSupport option  
    AFP printers 223  
language  
    international language support 178  
    national language terminology 151  
    using international characters 180  
LanguageLevel option 268  
LASTERRORTOKEN token 318, 321  
LASTREC column  
    restarting GenArc 338  
LBYD option 350  
LBYI option 350  
LBYLOG option 350  
LBYLOGFile option 349  
legal  
    PaperSize option 224, 241  
letter  
    PaperSize option 224, 241

---

- letter size paper 401
- Like button 192
- limitations
  - floating image 228
  - multi-page FAPs 229
- line density errors 252
- LINE statement 234
- lists of figures
  - adding 84
- Load PostScript Font File window 212
- Loader:Met control group 245
- LoadFAPBitmap option 250
- LoadListFromTable option 86
- log files
  - configuring 311
  - creating log messages 316
  - defined 398
  - defining the output file 312
  - delaying the translation process 314
  - determining where a message originates 322
  - disabling 311
  - formatting 320
  - GenTrn program 412
  - initializing output files 313
  - message tokens 318
  - of archived transactions 334
  - overview 310
  - setting up static text 319
  - turning off the date stamp 314
- LOG2PSEG utility 227
- LogCaching option 244
- LOGFile option 312
- LOGFILE.DAT file 310
- logging messages 315
- LogINIFileNames option 312
- LogINIOptions option 312
- Logo Manager 242, 248
- LOGO.DAT file
  - printing MET files 246

- LOGOFile option 349
- logos
  - compression for Metacode printers 235
  - orientation 250
  - rendering 242
  - using the Metacode loader 246
- LogToConsole option 334
- LogTransactions option 311
- LookUp rule
  - and extract files 409
- LRECL values 253

## M

---

- Mail control group 287
- MailType option 287
- MANUAL.BCH file 414
- margins
  - added by PCL printers 257
  - setting minimum 283
- marking
  - master forms 128
  - subordinate images 127
- Master and Subordinate Images 127
- master flag
  - and performance 141
- master forms
  - marking 128
- master resource libraries
  - implementation 110
- MasterDDTNotInLibrary option 349
- MasterResource control group
  - PCL resources 265
  - pre-compiled MET files 236
- MaxFonts option 241
- MaxPolLineLength option 413
- MergeAFP rule 63
- message information 284
- Message option
  - RTF driver 285
- message token file
  - using 322

- message token files
  - defining the output file 312
  - overview 311
- messages
  - assigning message numbers 317
  - clearing 312
  - configuring 311
  - creating 316
  - defining output message files 312
  - determining where the originated 321
  - formatting 320
  - initializing output message files 313
  - message numbers and static text 319
  - types 316
  - using tokens 318
- MET files
  - and multi-page FAP files 251
- Metacode
  - fonts 166
- Metacode printers
  - creating print streams for Docusave 300
  - data length validation 253
  - end of report conditions 237
  - handling multiple trays 305
  - JSL INI options 232
  - resources 248
  - setting up 232
  - troubleshooting 249
- methodologies for implementation 110
- METOPT utility
  - common font lists 241
- Mixed Object Document Content Architecture data streams 222
- Mobius InfoPak 238
- ModifyTime field 75
- Module option
  - AFP printers 222
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 256
  - PostScript printers 266
  - RTF driver 285
- Monotype fonts 227
  - FXR files 169
  - using system fonts 168

- MRG2FAP utility
  - paper size 224, 241
- MRG4 format 300
- MSGFile option 312
- MSGFILE.DAT file 310, 322
- msgNO\_MORE\_IMAGES message 62
- multi-file print callback method 69
- MultiFileLog option
  - RTF driver 285
- MultiFilePrint callback function 39, 144
- MultiLinesPerCommand option
  - AFP printers 226
- multi-mail transaction
  - and the EXT\_LENGTH option 61
- multi-mail transactions
  - PageBatchStage1InitTerm rule 43
- multi-page FAP files
  - and pre-compiled MET files 251
  - creating multiple FRM files 254
  - limitations 229
- multi-page forms
  - and 2-up printing 59
- MVS
  - archive/retrieval scenarios 328
- MVS file format 397

---

## N

- NAFILE.DAT file 396, 413
  - and the WriteNAFile rule 44
  - rotated variable fields 229
- NamedColors option 225, 226
- NameDocBy INI option 339
- NameDocBy option 340
- negative left offset 228
- New option
  - fonts 190
- NEWTRAN.DAT file 414
- NEWTRN file
  - Restart option 336
- NEWTRN.DAT file
  - and the WriteNAFile rule 44

---

NoBatchSupport option 281  
NoGenTrnTransactionProc rule 43  
    and the WriteNAFile rule 44  
    mapping fields 40  
non-stapled forms  
    and stapled forms 262  
NOT conditions  
    in search masks 143  
NUBACK statements 238  
NUFRONT statements 238

## O

---

objects  
    negative left offset 228  
Occurrence flag 119, 403  
occurs clauses 408  
Octal strings 234  
ODBC  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 328  
    multiple connections 353  
ODBC\_FieldConvert control group 353  
ODBC\_FileConvert control group 353  
offset, negative left 228  
OMR marks  
    and the AddLine rule 62  
OnDemand command records 224  
OnDemandScript option 224  
OPASSWD command line option 336  
OpSystem option 397  
Opt option 48, 49  
Optimize option 241  
OR conditions  
    in search masks 143  
Oracle  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 328, 329  
    ODBC driver 346  
ORDER BY clause 335  
OS/390  
    generating PostScript output 269  
OT\_Docs table 339, 340  
OTextString option 242  
OUSERID command line option 336  
OutBuff token 318  
OutMode option  
    AFP printers 301  
    Metacode printers 235  
    print streams for Docusave 300  
output files  
    for the GenArc program (Docusave) 22  
    for the GenPrint program (multi-step processing) 22  
    for the GenWIP program (multi-step processing) 22  
OutputBin option 259, 262  
OutputFunc option 263  
OutputHalfRes option 225  
OutputMod option 263  
overflow  
    and class recipients 55  
    defined 408  
    XML files 98  
Overflow flag 119, 403  
OverlayExt option  
    GDI driver 275  
    PCL printers 257  
    PostScript printers 267  
OverlayPath option  
    GDI driver 275  
    PCL printers 257, 265  
    PostScript printers 267, 272  
overlays  
    AFP resources 227  
    landscape pages 228  
    multi-page FAP files 229  
OVLCOMP utility  
    and PCL resources 265  
    and PostScript resources 272

## P

- Page Properties option 229
- page segments 227
- page-at-a-time downloading 280
- PageBatchStage1InitTerm rule 43
- PageNumbers option
  - AFP printers 223
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 257
  - PostScript printers 267
- PageRange option 42
  - and 2-up printing 60
- pages
  - adding and removing 81
  - jogging 238
  - numbering 275
  - starting new pages 237
- paper sizes
  - changing on Metacode printers 248
- paper trays
  - Metacode printers 242
  - on HP 5si printers 260
  - PCL support for 256
  - switching 252
- PaperSize option 224, 241
- parent 100
- parentheses
  - in search masks 143
- pass-through printing 278, 279
- Passwd option 350
- PCL
  - compressed 263
  - custom fonts 173
  - fonts 167
  - simple color mode 262
  - version 5, 5c, and 5e 256
  - version 6 259
- PCL printers
  - adding PJI comments 264
  - bitmap fonts 265
  - handling multiple trays 305
  - INI options 256
  - mixing simplex and duplex 263
  - overlays 265
  - resources 265
  - setting up 256
  - using a staple attachment 262
- PCO interface
  - OutMode option 235
- PDF
  - incompatibilities 171
- PDF files
  - creating 280
  - fonts 185
- PDF format 2
- PDS members
  - caching 244
- performance
  - caching PDS members 244
  - reducing job throughput 314
  - SplitPercent option 230
- PFM files
  - generating 217
- PJLComment option 264
- PJLCommentOn option 258
- PJLCommentScript option 258, 264
- platforms
  - multiple INI files 90
- PMetLib option
  - and the CompileInStream option 236
  - Metacode printers 245
- PMETLIB PDS 236
- PO Handler 339
- PODocument2Field control group 341
- POField2Document control group 341
- point sizes 194
- POLFILE.DAT file 413
  - and the WriteNAFile rule 44

---

- portrait logo orientation 250
- ports, printing to 274
- PostScript
  - custom fonts 173
  - fonts 154, 167
  - inserting fonts 211
- PostScript fonts
  - included with Acrobat Reader 185
- PostScript printers
  - handling multiple trays 305
  - INI options 266
  - PPD files 267, 272
  - resources 272
  - setting up 266
  - Type 1 fonts 272
- PreLoadRequired option 281
- PrePrintedPaper option
  - AFP printers 223
  - GDI driver 276
  - PCL printers 258
  - PostScript printers 268
- print batches
  - banner processing 14
  - grouping 88
- print drivers
  - RTF 281
- Print Services Facility 222
- print spool files
  - creating (multi-step processing) 25
- print streams
  - splitting recipient batch 69
- Print window
  - and the Device field (GDI printing) 278, 279
  - and the PrePrintedPaper option 268
  - and the PrePrintedPaper option (AFP) 223
  - and the PrePrintedPaper option (GDI) 276
  - and the PrePrintedPaper option (PCL) 258
  - and the PrePrintedPaper option (PostScript) 268
  - and the SelectRecipients option 258, 275
  - and the SendColor option 257, 267, 275
  - suppressing 276
- Print\_Batches control group 15, 88
- printer console messages 242
- printer drivers
  - banner processing 14
- Printer Job Language (PCL) comments 264
- Printer option
  - and 2-up printing 59, 60
- Printer Resident field 253
- PrinterInk option
  - and the ColorCharts option 242
  - spot colors 239
  - troubleshooting 250
- PrinterModel option 271
  - Metacode printers 242
  - PostScript printers 267, 272
- printers
  - adding fonts to the FXR file 167
  - AFP fonts 166
  - configuring trays 305
  - default printer 276
  - determining characters used in a printer font 160
  - Metacode fonts 166
  - PCL bitmap fonts 167
  - PostScript fonts 167
  - using custom fonts 172
  - using printer fonts 166
- PrintFormset rule 43
  - and the NoGenTranTransactionProc rule 43
  - splitting recipient batch print streams 69
- PrintFunc option
  - AFP printers 222
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 256
  - PostScript printers 266
  - RTF driver 285
- printing
  - 2-up 58
  - PrintFormset rule 43
  - under Windows NT 260

PrintTimeStamp option 314  
PrintViewOnly option  
    AFP printers 223, 258  
    GDI driver 276  
    Metacode printers 244  
    PostScript printers 267  
ProcessID built-in INI function 92  
processing  
    transactions (multi-step processing) 21  
    transactions (single-step processing) 35  
processing overview 10  
ProcessQueue rule 44  
proportional fonts 195  
PRTLIB data 43  
PrtType option  
    RTF driver 285  
PrtType:AFP control group 222  
PrtType:XER control group  
    installable functions 237  
    required options 232  
PRTZCompressOutPutFunc function 263

## Q

---

Qualifier option 350  
queues  
    ProcessQueue rule 44

## R

---

RCBDFDFL.DAT file  
    and 2-up printing 61  
RCBDFDFL.DFD file 405  
    and the WriteRCBWithPageCount rule 44  
    grouping print batches 88

RecipBatch function 17  
RecipFunc option  
    RTF driver 285  
recipient batch (RCB) transaction fields 75  
recipient batch DFD file  
    and 2-up printing 61  
recipient batch file 405  
recipient batch records  
    PageBatchStage1InitTerm rule 43  
    unique data 48  
Recipient copy count field 119  
Recipient list field 119  
Recipient option  
    and email aliases 287  
    RTF driver 285  
recipients  
    class recipients 55  
    Copy Count field 404  
    key files 117  
    List field 403  
    mapping information 91  
    selecting 116  
    setting 115  
RECIPIF rule  
    and extract files 409  
    and performance 141  
    example 135  
RecipMap2GVM control group 48  
RecipMap2GVM INI control group 56  
RecipMod option  
    RTF driver 285  
RecipName function 17  
records  
    maximum number (Metacode) 250  
    per first image field 403  
    per overflow image 403

---

records per first image field 119  
records per overflow image field 119  
RecordType option 77  
REL95.FXR file 169  
REL95SM.FXR file 169  
RelativeScan option 237  
repeat counts 234  
Req option 48, 49  
requirements definition 110  
reserved message ranges 317  
resetting  
    fonts 192  
Resolution option  
    AFP printers 222  
    GDI driver 275  
    Metacode printers 242  
    PCL printers 256  
    PostScript printers 266  
    rounding errors 230  
resource files 399  
resources  
    for single-step processing 36  
Restart control group 31  
restart file 31  
Restart option 336, 337  
Restart table  
    defined 327  
RestartJob rule 32  
Retrieval  
    options 359  
Retrieval Options window 359  
Retrieve Document window 358  
RightFax 264  
rollback  
    defined 326  
    restarting GenArc 338  
rotated variable fields 229  
rounding errors  
    SplitPercent option 229  
RP Struct 316  
RPAGE command 247  
RPErrProc function 316  
RPLogProc function 316  
RSTACK command 247  
RstFile option 31  
RTF  
    print driver 281, 284  
    separate files 281  
    WriteFrames option 282  
RTF files  
    mapping fonts 220  
    margins 283  
RTFFontMAP control group 220  
RULCheckTransaction rule 31  
RuleFilePool option 244  
rules  
    for 2-up printing 62  
    for single-step processing 41  
    order for 2-up printing 64  
    used in multi-step processing 30  
rules processing  
    using international characters 180  
Rules Processor  
    trace file 315  
Rules Publishing Solution  
    system overview 3  
RULStandardProc rule  
    and the WriteNAFile rule 44  
RunMode control group  
    checking font IDs 87  
    DownloadFAP option 84  
    grouping print batches 88  
    mapping fields with XPath 40  
RunSetRcpTbl rule  
    and the BuildMasterFormList rule 42

## S

- scalable fonts 153
- scaling output 273
- screen fonts
  - choosing 214
  - GDI drivers 274
  - installing in Windows 166
  - using 165
- Search Mask 1 field 119, 403
- Search Mask 2 field 119, 404
- search masks
  - and recipients 140
  - example 133
  - formatting 142
  - RECIPIF rule 135
- selecting
  - fonts 188
- SelectRecipients option
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 258
  - PostScript printers 268
- self 100
- SendColor option 226
  - AFP printers 225
  - and the ColorCharts option 242
  - and the PrinterInk option 239
  - emailing forms 287
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 257
  - PostScript printers 267
  - troubleshooting 249
- SendOverlays option
  - AFP printers 222
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 256, 265
  - PostScript printers 266, 272
- sequence numbers
  - and extract files 408
- Server option 350, 353
- set recipient table
  - and performance 141

- SetDeviceName function 71
- SetOrigin rule
  - floating images 228
- SETRCPTB.DAT file 402
  - and the StandardFieldProc rule 44
  - and the StandardImageProc rule 44
  - examples 129
- SETRECIP table
  - defined 117
  - specifying 120
- SetState rule
  - and extract files 409
- setting
  - fonts 149
- setting up
  - error messages and log files 309
  - message text 319
  - printers 221
  - recipients and copy counts 115
  - transaction trigger tables 120
- Setup Data field
  - example 176
- short binding 401
- Show\_Debug\_Options option 86
- sibling 100
- SIDE statements 238
- simple color mode 257, 262
- simplex
  - adding and removing pages 81
  - and duplex on Metacode printers 237
  - compressed PCL files 263
  - switching modes 243
- single-page forms
  - and 2-up printing 58
- singles-step processing
  - example 45
- single-step processing
  - clearing messages 312
  - overview 35
  - WriteOutput rule 44

---

- SkipChartColorChange option 225
- SkipChartPatternChange option 225
- skipping batch message 62
- SortFormsForRecip callback function 144
- sorting records 335
- SplitPercent option
  - 240 dpi print problems 229
  - defined 223
- SplitText option
  - 240 dpi print problems 229
  - defined 223
- SQL Server
  - archive/retrieval scenarios 328
- SQLID command line option 336
- StandardFieldProc rule 44
  - and the WriteNAFile rule 44
- StandardImageProc rule 44
- StandardJobProc rule 57
- staple attachments
  - and PCL printers 262
- StapleBin option 258, 262
- StapleJDEName option 243
- StapleOff option 268, 270
- StapleOn option 268, 270
- stapling forms
  - Metacode 243
  - PostScript 270
- start new page 237
- Status column
  - restarting GenArc 337, 338
- StatusCode option 77
- STOPREC command line option 336
- SUB INK commands 249
- subject information 284
- Subject option
  - RTF driver 285
- subordinate flags
  - and performance 141
- subordinate images
  - marking 127
  - overview 127

- SuppressBanner function 17
- SuppressDialog option
  - and the SuppressDlg option 277
- SuppressDlg option
  - and the SuppressDialog option 277
  - GDI print driver 276
- SuppressZeroData option
  - AFP printers 226
  - and the MultiLinesPerCommand option 226
- Sybase
  - archive/retrieval scenarios 328
- system files 393
- system implementation methodology 110
- system overview 10
- system resource files
  - uploading 181
- system scenarios
  - GenArc 328
- system settings
  - multi-step processing 36

## T

---

- table names 363
- tables
  - defined 326
- Tag Logical Element (TLE) records 304
- TblLkUp rule
  - and extract files 409
- TEMPIDX file
  - defined 326
- TemplateFields option
  - GDI driver 275
  - PCL printers 257
  - PostScript printers 267
- TermFunc option
  - RTF driver 285
- terminology
  - fonts 150
- testing
  - the system 110

- text files
  - converting from one code page to another 181
- TEXTCommentOn option 265
- TEXTScript option 264
- TicketJobProc rule 57
- tildes
  - in search masks 142
- TL/DL buffers 249
- TLEEveryPage option 224, 304
- TLEScript option 224, 304
- TLESeparator option 224, 304
- token-data pairs 318, 320, 322
- trace files
  - ProcessID built-in INI function 92
- TraceFile option 315
- transaction codes 403
  - example 132
- Transaction codes field 119
- transaction files 398, 412
- transaction records
  - creating for multi-step processing 19
  - creating for single-step processing 35
- transaction trigger table
  - defined 117
  - examples 129
  - how it works 121
  - specifying 120
  - summary 146
- TransactionErrors option 32
  - GenTrn processing 33
- transactions
  - archiving 29
  - log of archived 334
  - processing (multi-step processing) 21
- TransBannerBeginForm option 15
- TransBannerBeginScript option 15, 82
- TransBannerEndForm option 15
- TransBannerEndScript option 15
- transferring files
  - from Xerox format disks 255
- TRANSLAT utility 310, 314
- TRANSLAT.INI file
  - defining the output message file 313
  - determining where messages originate 321
  - formatting messages 320
  - message numbers 317
  - message tokens 318
  - setting up message text 319
- translating messages 314
- TranslationFile option 312
- trays
  - configuring printer trays 305
  - for the HP 5SI printer 260
  - Metacode printers 242
  - selecting 307
  - troubleshooting 252
- trigger levels
  - defined 117
- trigger records
  - levels 117
- Trigger Table Record Format 118
- Trigger2Archive control group 41, 43, 356
- Trigger2WIP control group 75
- triggering logic 146
- triggers
  - and performance 141
  - form level 124
  - image level 122
- TrimWhiteSpace option
  - AFP printers 226
- TRN files 398, 412
- Trn\_Fields control group 40
- TRNDFDFL.DFD file 405
- true/false search mask 133
- TrueType fonts 154
  - Asian languages 259
  - description 167
  - inserting 211

---

TWOUP control group 42, 43  
TwoUp control group 60  
TwoUpStart option 60

## U

---

Unicode 259  
unique data  
    adding 48  
UNIQUE.DBF file 416  
UniqueString function 72  
UniqueTag option 349, 350  
UNIX  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 329  
updated log and error files 414, 415  
UpdatePOLFile rule  
    and the WriteOutput rule 44  
uppercase 363  
UseRestartTable option 340  
UserID option 77, 91, 350  
UseXMLExtract rule 98  
using  
    ANSI code page for PC platforms 178  
    custom fonts 171  
    Font Manager 187  
    printer fonts 166  
    screen fonts 165

## V

---

value-added processes 244  
variable fields  
    in text areas 229  
    rotated 229

VB datasets 253  
VBPrtOptions control group 276  
Virtual Storage Access Method 244  
VSAM control group 244

## W

---

white space  
    suppressing 226  
Windows  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 328  
    font substitution 165  
    installing screen fonts 166  
    PostScript printers 269  
    printer ports 260  
    selecting screen fonts 214  
    using the ANSI code page 178  
WIP  
    and the archive index file 355  
WIP RecType field 77  
WIP StatusCD field 77  
WIP.DBF file 416  
WIP.DFD files 75  
WIP.MDX file 416  
WIPedit plug-in  
    WIPField built-in function 93  
WordDateFormats control group 282  
WordTimeFormats control group 282  
WriteFrames option 282  
WriteNAFile rule  
    and the StandardFieldProc rule 44  
    described 44  
WriteOutput rule 44

## X

---

Xbase 431  
    archive/retrieval scenarios 328  
    DFD files 397, 404  
    maximum length 410

XERDNLD utility 254

Xerox

3700 printers 242

4000 printers 232

4050 printers 252

4135 printers 252

4235 printers 235, 248, 252

4635 printers 252

4850 printers 252

9000 printers 232

9700 printers 249

9790 printers 249, 252

fonts 248

format floppies 255

forms 248, 253

forms and memory 248

highlight color printers 239

images 248

JSL INI options 232

Laser Printing Systems 232

line drawing font 252

logos 248

setting up Metacode printers 232

using custom fonts 173

XML 39

job tickets 57

path locator 100

XML files

as extract files 98

XMLExtract option 40

XMLFileExtract rule 98

XMLTrnFields option 40

XPath 100

mapping fields 40

XPATHW32 utility 100, 103

XRF files

generating 217

inserting 210

---

## Y

Year 2000 compliance

and extract files 409